NORMANDALE COMMUNITY COLLEGE CHEM 1020 INTRODUCTORY CHEMISTRY



Carol Fung Kee Fung
Normandale Community College

LibreTexts™

Normandale Community College Chem 1020
Introductory Chemistry

Welcome to the Chemistry Library. This Living Library is a principal hub of the LibreTexts project, which is a multi-institutional collaborative venture to develop the next generation of open-access texts to improve postsecondary education at all levels of higher learning. The LibreTexts approach is highly collaborative where an Open Access textbook environment is under constant revision by students, faculty, and outside experts to supplant conventional paper-based books.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: The Chemical World

- 1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things
- 1.2: The Scientific Method
- 1.3: What is Matter?
- 1.4: Classification of Matter
- 1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
- 1.6: Energy
- 1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
- 1.8: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms
- 1.9: States of Matter
- 1.10: Phase Changes
- 1.11: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter
- 1.12: Basic Definitions

2: Measurement and Problem Solving

- 2.1: Taking Measurements
- 2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers
- 2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision
- 2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations
- 2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement
- 2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions
- 2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems
- 2.8: Units Raised to a Power
- 2.9: Density

3: Atoms and Elements

- 3.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms
- 3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory
- 3.3: The Nuclear Atom
- 3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
- 3.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons
- 3.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table
- 3.7: Chemical Elements and Symbols
- 3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies
- 3.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms

4: Electrons in Atoms and the Periodic Table

- 4.1: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation
- 4.2: The Electromagnetic Spectrum
- 4.3: Electronic Structure of Atoms
- 4.4: Electron Configurations
- 4.5: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table
- 4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
- 4.7: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model

5: Molecules and Compounds

- 5.1: Compounds Display Constant Composition
- 5.2: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds
- 5.3: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds
- 5.4: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds
- 5.5: Nomenclature- Naming Compounds
- 5.6: Naming Ionic Compounds
- 5.7: Naming Molecular Compounds
- 5.8: Naming Acids
- 5.9: Nomenclature Summary

6: Chemical Reactions

- 6.1: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction
- 6.2: The Chemical Equation
- 6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations
- 6.4: Classifying Chemical Reactions

7: Chemical Composition

- 7.1: Prelude to Chemical Composition - How Much Sodium?
- 7.2: Counting Nails by the Pound
- 7.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram
- 7.4: Counting Molecules by the Gram
- 7.5: Chemical Formulas as Conversion Factors
- 7.6: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions
- 7.7: Making Molecules- Mass-to-Mass Conversions
- 7.8: Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield

8: Chemical Bonding

- 8.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots
- 8.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred
- 8.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared
- 8.4: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds
- 8.5: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule

9: Molecular Compounds

- 9.1: Molecular shapes –Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory
- 9.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity
- 9.3: Polar Molecules
- 9.4: Intermolecular Forces

10: Solutions

- 10.1: Prelude to Solutions
- 10.2: Definitions
- 10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration
- 10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations
- 10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors
- 10.6: Electrolytes
- 10.7: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes

11: Acids and Bases

- 11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions
- 11.2: Acids and Bases
- 11.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases
- 11.4: Neutralization
- 11.5: The pH Scale
- 11.6: Buffers and Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs
- 11.7: Acids and Bases in Industry and in Daily Life

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: The Chemical World

1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things
1.2: The Scientific Method
1.3: What is Matter?
1.4: Classification of Matter
1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
1.6: Energy
1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
1.8: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms
1.9: States of Matter
1.10: Phase Changes
1.11: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter
1.12: Basic Definitions

1: The Chemical World is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things

Chemistry is the branch of science dealing with the structure, composition, properties, and the reactive characteristics of matter. Matter is anything that has mass and occupies space. Thus, chemistry is the study of literally everything around us—the liquids that we drink, the gases we breathe, the composition of everything from the plastic case on your phone to the earth beneath your feet. Moreover, chemistry is the study of the transformation of matter. Crude oil is transformed into more useful petroleum products, such as gasoline and kerosene, by the process of refining. Some of these products are further transformed into plastics. Crude metal ores are transformed into metals, that can then be fashioned into everything from foil to automobiles. Potential drugs are identified from natural sources, isolated and then prepared in the laboratory. Their structures are systematically modified to produce the pharmaceuticals that have led to vast advances in modern medicine. Chemistry is at the center of all of these processes; chemists are the people that study the nature of matter and learn to design, predict, and control these chemical transformations. Within the branches of chemistry you will find several apparent subdivisions. Inorganic chemistry, historically, focused on minerals and metals found in the earth, while organic chemistry dealt with carbon-containing compounds that were first identified in living things. Biochemistry is an outgrowth of the application of organic chemistry to biology and relates to the chemical basis for living things. In the later chapters of this text we will explore organic and biochemistry in a bit more detail and you will notice examples of organic compounds scattered throughout the text. Today, the lines between the various fields have blurred significantly and a contemporary chemist is expected to have a broad background in all of these areas.

In this chapter, we will discuss some of the properties of matter and how chemists measure those properties. We will introduce some of the vocabulary that is used throughout chemistry and the other physical sciences.

Let's begin with matter. **Matter** is defined as any substance that has mass. It is important to distinguish here between weight and mass. Weight is the result of the pull of gravity on an object. On the Moon, an object will weigh less than the same object on Earth because the pull of gravity is less on the Moon. The mass of an object, however, is an inherent property of that object and does not change, regardless of location, gravitational pull, or anything else. It is a property that is solely dependent on the quantity of matter within the object.

Contemporary theories suggests that matter is composed of **atoms**. Atoms themselves are constructed from neutrons, protons and electrons, along with an ever-increasing array of other subatomic particles. We will focus on the neutron, a particle having no charge; the proton, which carries a positive charge; and the electron, which has a negative charge. Atoms are incredibly small. To give you an idea of the size of an atom, a single copper penny contains approximately 28,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 atoms (that's 28 sextillion). Because atoms and subatomic particles are so small, their mass is not readily measured using pounds, ounces, grams or any other scale that we would use on larger objects. Instead, the mass of atoms and subatomic particles is measured using atomic mass units (abbreviated amu). The atomic mass unit is based on a scale that relates the mass of different types of atoms to each other (using the most common form of the element carbon as a standard). The amu scale gives us a convenient means to describe the masses of individual atoms and to do quantitative measurements concerning atoms and their reactions. Within an atom, the neutron and proton both have a mass of one amu; the electron has a much smaller mass (about 0.0005 amu).



Figure 1.1.1: Atoms are incredible small. To give you an idea of the size of an atom, a single copper penny contains approximately 28,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 atoms (that's 28 sextillion).

Atomic theory places the neutron and the proton in the center of the atom in the nucleus. In an atom, the nucleus is very small, very dense, carries a positive charge (from the protons) and contains virtually all of the mass of the atom. Electrons are placed in a diffuse cloud surrounding the nucleus. The electron cloud carries a net negative charge (from the charge on the electrons) and in a neutral atom there are always as many electrons in this cloud as there are protons in the nucleus (the positive charges in the nucleus are balanced by the negative charges of the electrons, making the atom neutral).

An atom is characterized by the number of neutrons, protons and electrons that it possesses. Today, we recognize at least 116 different types of atoms, each type having a different number of protons in its nucleus. These different types of atoms are called

elements. The neutral element hydrogen (the lightest element) will always have one proton in its nucleus and one electron in the cloud surrounding the nucleus. The element helium will always have two protons in its nucleus. It is the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom that defines the identity of an element. Elements can, however, have differing numbers of neutrons in their nucleus. For example, stable helium nuclei exist that contain one, or two neutrons (but they all have two protons). These different types of helium atoms have different masses (3 or 4 amu) and they are called isotopes. For any given isotope, the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons in the nucleus is called the mass number. All elements exist as a collection of isotopes, and the mass of an element that we use in chemistry, the atomic mass, is the average of the masses of these isotopes. For helium, there is approximately one isotope of Helium-3 for every one million isotopes of Helium-4, hence the average atomic mass is very close to 4 (4.002602).

As different elements were discovered and named, abbreviations of their names were developed to allow for a convenient chemical shorthand. The abbreviation for an element is called its chemical symbol. A chemical symbol consists of one or two letters, and the relationship between the symbol and the name of the element is generally apparent. Thus helium has the chemical symbol He, nitrogen is N, and lithium is Li. Sometimes the symbol is less apparent but is decipherable; magnesium is Mg, strontium is Sr, and manganese is Mn. Symbols for elements that have been known since ancient times, however, are often based on Latin or Greek names and appear somewhat obscure from their modern English names. For example, copper is Cu (from cuprum), silver is Ag (from argentum), gold is Au (from aurum), and iron is Fe (from ferrum). Throughout your study of chemistry, you will routinely use chemical symbols and it is important that you begin the process of learning the names and chemical symbols for the common elements. By the time you complete General Chemistry, you will find that you are adept at naming and identifying virtually all of the 116 known elements. Table 1.1.1 contains a starter list of common elements that you should begin learning now!

Table 1.1.1: Names and Chemical Symbols for Common Elements

Element	Chemical Symbol	Element	Chemical Symbol
Hydrogen	H	Phosphorus	P
Helium	He	Sulfur	S
Lithium	Li	Chlorine	Cl
Beryllium	Be	Argon	Ar
Boron	B	Potassium	K
Carbon	C	Calcium	Ca
Nitrogen	N	Iron	Fe
Oxygen	O	Copper	Cu
Fluorine	F	Zinc	Zn
Neon	Ne	Bromine	Br
Sodium	Na	Silver	Ag
Magnesium	Mg	Iodine	I
Aluminum	Al	Gold	Au
Silicon	Si	Lead	Pb

The chemical symbol for an element is often combined with information regarding the number of protons and neutrons in a particular isotope of that atom to give the atomic symbol. To write an atomic symbol, begin with the chemical symbol, then write the atomic number for the element (the number of protons in the nucleus) as a subscript, preceding the chemical symbol. Directly above this, as a superscript, write the mass number for the isotope, that is, the total number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus. Thus, for helium, the atomic number is 2 and there are two neutrons in the nucleus for the most common isotope, making the atomic symbol ${}_{2}^{4}\mathrm{He}$. In the definition of the atomic mass unit, the “most common isotope of carbon”, ${}_{6}^{12}\mathrm{C}$, is defined as having a mass of exactly 12 amu and the atomic masses of the remaining elements are based on their masses relative to this isotope. Chlorine (chemical symbol Cl) consists of two major isotopes, one with 18 neutrons (the most common, comprising 75.77% of

natural chlorine atoms) and one with 20 neutrons (the remaining 24.23%). The atomic number of chlorine is 17 (it has 17 protons in its nucleus), therefore the chemical symbols for the two isotopes are $^{35}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$ and $^{37}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$.

When data is available regarding the natural abundance of various isotopes of an element, it is simple to calculate the average atomic mass. In the example above, $^{35}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$ was the most common isotope with an abundance of 75.77% and $^{37}_{17}\mathrm{Cl}$ had an abundance of the remaining 24.23%. To calculate the average mass, first convert the percentages into fractions; that is, simply divide them by 100. Now, chlorine-35 represents a fraction of natural chlorine of 0.7577 and has a mass of 35 (the mass number). Multiplying these, we get (0.7577 × 35) = 26.51. To this, we need to add the fraction representing chlorine-37, or (0.2423 × 37) = 8.965; adding, (26.51 + 8.965) = 35.48, which is the weighted average atomic mass for chlorine. Whenever we do mass calculations involving elements or compounds (combinations of elements), we always need to use average atomic masses.

Contributions & Attributions

- Paul R. Young, Professor of Chemistry, University of Illinois at Chicago, Wiki: AskTheNerd; PRY@askthenerd.com - pyoung@uic.edu; ChemistryOnline.com

---

1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **1.2: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.2: The Scientific Method

Learning Objectives

- Describe the differences between hypothesis and theory as scientific terms.
- Describe the difference between a theory and scientific law.
- Identify the components of the scientific method.

Although many have taken science classes throughout their course of studies, incorrect or misleading ideas about some of the most important and basic principles in science are still commonplace. Most students have heard of *hypotheses*, *theories*, and *laws*, but what do these terms really mean? Before you read this section, consider what you have learned about these terms previously, and what they mean to you. When reading, notice if any of the text contradicts what you previously thought. What do you read that supports what you thought?

What is a Fact?

A **fact** is a basic statement established by experiment or observation. All facts are true under the specific conditions of the observation.

What is a Hypothesis?

One of the most common terms used in science classes is a "**hypothesis**". The word can have many different definitions, dependent on the context in which it is being used:

- An educated guess: a scientific hypothesis provides a suggested solution based on evidence.
- Prediction: if you have ever carried out a science experiment, you probably made this type of hypothesis, in which you predicted the outcome of your experiment.
- Tentative or proposed explanation: hypotheses can be suggestions about why something is observed. In order for a hypothesis to be scientific, a scientist must be able to test the explanation to see if it works, and if it is able to correctly predict what will happen in a situation. For example, "if my hypothesis is correct, I should see _____ result when I perform _____ test."

> *A hypothesis is tentative; it can be easily changed.*

What is a Theory?

The *United States National Academy of Sciences* describes a theory as:

> "Some scientific explanations are so well established that no new evidence is likely to alter them. The explanation becomes a scientific theory. In everyday language a theory means a hunch or speculation. Not so in science. In science, the word **theory** refers to a comprehensive explanation of an important feature of nature supported by facts gathered over time. Theories also allow scientists to make predictions about as yet unobserved phenomena."
>
> "A scientific theory is a well-substantiated explanation of some aspect of the natural world, based on a body of facts that have been repeatedly confirmed through observation and experimentation. Such fact-supported theories are not "guesses," but reliable accounts of the real world. The theory of biological evolution is more than "just a theory." It is as factual an explanation of the universe as the atomic theory of matter (stating that everything is made of atoms) or the germ theory of disease (which states that many diseases are caused by germs). Our understanding of gravity is still a work in progress. But the phenomenon of gravity, like evolution, is an accepted fact."

Note some key features of theories that are important to understand from this description:

- Theories are explanations of natural phenomenon. They aren't predictions (although we may use theories to make predictions). They are explanations of why something is observed.
- Theories aren't likely to change. They have a lot of support and are able to explain many observations satisfactorily. Theories can, indeed, be facts. Theories can change in some instances, but it is a long and difficult process. In order for a theory to change, there must be many observations or evidence that the theory cannot explain.
- Theories are not guesses. The phrase "just a theory" has no room in science. To be a scientific theory carries a lot of weight—it is not just one person's idea about something

> *Theories aren't likely to change.*

What is a Law?

Scientific **laws** are similar to scientific theories in that they are principles that can be used to predict the behavior of the natural world. Both scientific laws and scientific theories are typically well-supported by observations and/or experimental evidence. Usually, scientific laws refer to rules for how nature will behave under certain conditions, frequently written as an equation. Scientific theories are overarching explanations of how nature works, and why it exhibits certain characteristics. As a comparison, theories explain why we observe what we do, and laws describe what happens.

For example, around the year 1800, Jacques Charles and other scientists were working with gases to, among other reasons, improve the design of the hot air balloon. These scientists found, after numerous tests, that certain patterns existed in their observations of gas behavior. If the temperature of the gas increased, the volume of the gas increased. This is known as a natural law. A law is a relationship that exists between variables in a group of data. Laws describe the patterns we see in large amounts of data, but do not describe why the patterns exist.

Laws vs Theories

A common misconception is that scientific theories are rudimentary ideas that will eventually graduate into scientific laws when enough data and evidence has been accumulated. A theory does not change into a scientific law with the accumulation of new or better evidence. Remember, theories are explanations; laws are patterns seen in large amounts of data, frequently written as an equation. A theory will always remain a theory, a law will always remain a law.



Video 1.2.1 *What is the difference between scientific law and theory?*

The Scientific Method

Scientists search for answers to questions and solutions to problems by using a procedure called the **scientific method**. This procedure consists of making observations, formulating hypotheses, and designing experiments, which in turn lead to additional observations, hypotheses, and experiments in repeated cycles (Figure 1.2.1).

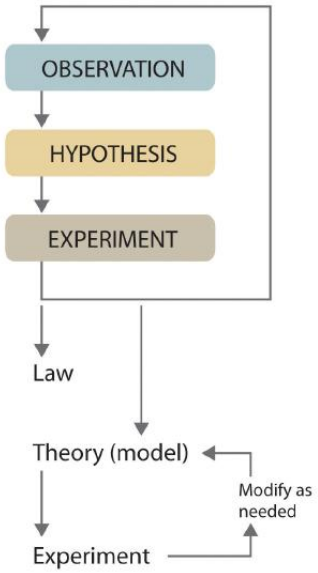


Figure 1.2.1 *The steps in the scientific method.*

Step 1: Make observations.

Observations can be qualitative or quantitative. **Qualitative observations** describe properties or occurrences in ways that do not rely on numbers. Examples of qualitative observations include the following: "the outside air temperature is cooler during the winter season," "table salt is a crystalline solid," "sulfur crystals are yellow," and "dissolving a penny in dilute nitric acid forms a blue solution and a brown gas." **Quantitative observations** are measurements, which by definition consist of both a number and a unit. Examples of quantitative observations include the following: "the melting point of crystalline sulfur is 115.21° Celsius," and "35.9 grams of table salt—the chemical name of which is sodium chloride—dissolve in 100 grams of water at 20° Celsius." For the question of the dinosaurs' extinction, the initial observation was quantitative: iridium concentrations in sediments dating to 66 million years ago were 20–160 times higher than normal.

Step 2: Formulate a hypothesis.

After deciding to learn more about an observation or a set of observations, scientists generally begin an investigation by forming a hypothesis, a tentative explanation for the observation(s). The hypothesis may not be correct, but it puts the scientist's understanding of the system being studied into a form that can be tested. For example, the observation that we experience alternating periods of light and darkness which correspond to observed movements of the sun, moon, clouds, and shadows, is consistent with either of two hypotheses:

1. Earth rotates on its axis every 24 hours, alternately exposing one side to the sun.
2. The sun revolves around Earth every 24 hours.

Suitable experiments can be designed to choose between these two alternatives. In the case of disappearance of the dinosaurs, the hypothesis was that the impact of a large extraterrestrial object caused their extinction. Unfortunately (or perhaps fortunately), this hypothesis does not lend itself to direct testing by any obvious experiment, but scientists can collect additional data that either supports or refutes it.

Step 3: Design and perform experiments.

After a hypothesis has been formed, scientists conduct experiments to test its validity. Experiments are systematic observations or measurements, preferably made under controlled conditions—that is, under conditions in which a single variable changes.

Step 4: Accept or modify the hypothesis.

A properly designed and executed experiment enables a scientist to determine whether the original hypothesis is valid. In the case of validity, the scientist can proceed to step 5. In other cases, experiments may demonstrate that the hypothesis is incorrect or that it must be modified, thus requiring further experimentation.

Step 5: Development of a law and/or theory.

More experimental data are then collected and analyzed, at which point a scientist may begin to think that the results are sufficiently reproducible (i.e., dependable) to merit being summarized in a law—a verbal or mathematical description of a phenomenon that allows for general predictions. A law simply states what happens; it does not address the question of why.

One example of a law, the law of definite proportions (discovered by the French scientist Joseph Proust [1754–1826]), states that a chemical substance always contains the same proportions of elements by mass. Thus, sodium chloride (table salt) always contains the same proportion by mass of sodium to chlorine—in this case, 39.34% sodium and 60.66% chlorine by mass. Sucrose (table sugar) is always 42.11% carbon, 6.48% hydrogen, and 51.41% oxygen by mass.

Whereas a law states only what happens, a theory attempts to explain why nature behaves as it does. Laws are unlikely to change greatly over time, unless a major experimental error is discovered. A theory, in contrast, is incomplete and imperfect; it evolves with time to explain new facts as they are discovered.

Because scientists can enter the cycle shown in Figure 1.2.1 at any point, the actual application of the scientific method to different topics can take many different forms. For example, a scientist may start with a hypothesis formed by reading about work done by others in the field, rather than by making direct observations.

✔ Example 1.2.1

Classify each statement as a law, theory, experiment, hypothesis, or observation.

1. Ice always floats on liquid water.
2. Birds evolved from dinosaurs.
3. Hot air is less dense than cold air, probably because the components of hot air are moving more rapidly.
4. When 10 g of ice was added to 100 mL of water at 25°C, the temperature of the water decreased to 15.5°C after the ice melted.
5. The ingredients of Ivory soap were analyzed to see whether it really is 99.44% pure, as advertised.

Solution

1. This is a general statement of a relationship between the properties of liquid and solid water, so it is a law.
2. This is a possible explanation for the origin of birds, so it is a hypothesis.
3. This is a statement that tries to explain the relationship between the temperature and the density of air based on fundamental principles, so it is a theory.
4. The temperature is measured before and after a change is made in a system, so these are observations.
5. This is an analysis designed to test a hypothesis (in this case, the manufacturer's claim of purity), so it is an experiment.

? Exercise 1.2.1

Classify each statement as a law, theory, experiment, hypothesis, qualitative observation, or quantitative observation.

1. Measured amounts of acid were added to a Rolaids tablet to see whether it really "consumes 47 times its weight in excess stomach acid."
2. Heat always flows from hot objects to cooler ones, not in the opposite direction.
3. The universe was formed by a massive explosion that propelled matter into a vacuum.
4. Michael Jordan is the greatest pure shooter ever to play professional basketball.
5. Limestone is relatively insoluble in water, but dissolves readily in dilute acid with the evolution of a gas.

Answer 1:

experiment

Answer 2:

law

Answer 3:

theory

Answer 4:

hypothesis

Answer 5:

observation

Summary

- A hypothesis is a tentative explanation that can be tested by further investigation.
- A theory is a well-supported explanation of observations.
- A scientific law is a statement that summarizes the relationship between variables.
- An experiment is a controlled method of testing a hypothesis.
- The scientific method is a method of investigation involving experimentation and observation to acquire new knowledge, solve problems, and answer questions. The key steps in the scientific method are:
  - Step 1: Make observations.
  - Step 2: Formulate a hypothesis.
  - Step 3: Test the hypothesis through experimentation.
  - Step 4: Accept or modify the hypothesis.
  - Step 5: Development of a law and/or theory.

Contributors and Attributions

-
- Wikipedia
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

1.2: The Scientific Method is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.2: Science- Reproducible, Testable, Tentative, Predictive, and Explanatory** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1.3: What is Matter?

Learning Objectives

- Define matter and explain how it is composed of building blocks known as "atoms".

We are all familiar with matter. The definition of **Matter** is anything that has mass and volume (takes up space). For most common objects that we deal with every day, it is fairly simple to demonstrate that they have mass and take up space. You might be able to imagine, however, the difficulty for people several hundred years ago to demonstrate that air had mass and volume. Air (and all other gases) are invisible to the eye, have very small masses compared to equal amounts of solids and liquids, and are quite easy to compress (change volume). Without sensitive equipment, it would have been difficult to convince people that gases are matter. Today, we can measure the mass of a small balloon when it is deflated and then blow it up, tie it off, and measure its mass again to detect the additional mass due to the air inside. The mass of air, under room conditions, that occupies a one quart jar is approximately 0.0002 pounds. This small amount of mass would have been difficult to measure in times before balances were designed to accurately measure very small masses. Later, scientists were able to compress gases into such a small volume that the gases turned into liquids, which made it clear that gases are matter.



Figure 1.3.1: Everything from an ant, to a truck, to the earth, and even the entire galaxy is composed of matter. Images used with permission from Wikipedia (CC_SA-BY-3.0; credit High Contrast).

Even though the universe consists of "things" as wildly different as ants and galaxies, the matter that makes up all of these "things" is composed of a very limited number of building blocks. These building blocks are known as **atoms**, and so far, scientists have discovered or created a grand total of 118 different types of atoms. Scientists have given a name to each different type of atom. A substance that is composed of only one type of atom is called an element. At this point, what should amaze you is that all forms of matter in our universe are made with only 118 different building blocks. In some ways, it's sort of like cooking a gourmet, five-course meal using only three ingredients! How is it possible? To answer that question, you have to understand the ways in which different elements are put together to form matter.

The most important method that nature uses to organize atoms into matter is the formation of **molecules**. Molecules are groups of two or more atoms that have been bonded together. There are millions of different ways to bond atoms together, which means that there are millions of different possible molecules. Each of these molecules has its own set of chemical properties, and it's these

properties with which chemists are most concerned. You will learn a lot more about atoms and molecules, including how they were discovered, in a later part of the textbook.

Summary

All matter has mass and occupies space. All physical objects are made of matter. Matter itself is composed of tiny building blocks known as "atoms". There are only 118 different types of atoms known to man. Frequently, atoms are bonded together to form "molecules".

Contributions & Attributions

- Wikipedia

1.3: What is Matter? is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.2: What is Matter?** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.4: Classification of Matter

Learning Objectives

- Categorize different types of matter as a pure substances or mixtures.
- Explain the difference between an element and a compound.
- Explain the difference between a homogeneous mixture and a heterogeneous mixture.

One useful way of organizing our understanding of matter is to think of a hierarchy that extends down from the most general and complex substances to the simplest and most fundamental (Figure 1.4.1). At the top of this hierarchy is two broad categories into which all matter can be classified: pure substances and mixtures. A **pure substance** is a form of matter that has a constant composition (meaning that all samples of this substance have uniform composition) and properties that are constant throughout the sample (meaning that there is only one set of properties such as melting point, color, boiling point, etc. throughout the matter). If we take two or more pure substances and physically mix them together, we refer to this as a **mixture**. A mixture does not have constant composition or properties throughout.

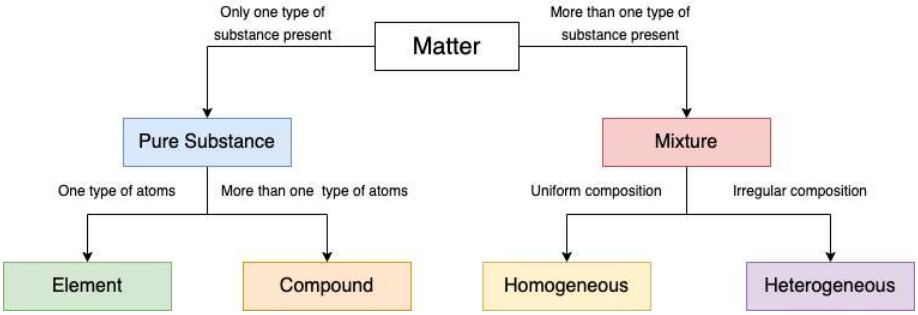


Figure 1.4.1: The Classification of Matter. Matter can be classified in a variety of ways, depending on its properties.

Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. A substance that cannot be broken down into chemically simpler components is an **element**. Oxygen, O, and hydrogen, H, are each examples of elements. A pure substance that can be broken down into chemically simpler components (because it made up of more than one element) is a **compound**. For example, the compound water, H_2O, is formed when hydrogen and oxygen chemically combine in a fixed ratio of 2 hydrogen atoms for every 1 oxygen atom.

Compounds may have different chemical and physical properties from the individual elements that they are composed of. Mixtures, on the other hand, are physical blends of two or more components, each of which retains its own identity and properties. Mixtures can always be separated again into the component pure substances, because bonding among the atoms of the constituent substances does not occur. For example sodium is a soft shiny metal and chlorine is a pungent green gas. These two elements chemically combine to form the *compound*, sodium chloride (table salt) which is a white, crystalline solid having *none* of the properties of either sodium or chlorine. If, however, you *mixed* table salt with ground pepper, you would still be able to see the individual grains of each of them and, if you were patient, you could take tweezers and carefully separate them back into pure salt and pure pepper.

Mixtures fall into two categories, based on the uniformity of their composition (Figure 1.4.1). The first, called a **heterogeneous mixture**, is distinguished by the fact that different samples of the mixture may have a different composition. For example, if you open a container of mixed nuts and pull out a series of small samples and examine them, the exact ratio of peanuts-to-almonds in the samples will always be slightly different, no matter how carefully you mix them. Common examples of heterogeneous mixtures include dirt, gravel, and vegetable soup.

In a **homogeneous mixture,** on the other hand, any sample that you examine will have exactly the *same* composition as any other sample. Within chemistry, the most common type of homogeneous mixture is a **solution** which is one substance dissolved completely within another. Think of a solution of pure sugar dissolved in pure water. Any sample of the solution that you examine will have *exactly* the same ratio of sugar-to-water, which means that it is a homogeneous mixture. Even in a homogeneous mixture, the properties of the components are generally recognizable. Thus, sugar-water tastes sweet (like sugar) and is wet (like water). Unlike a compound, which has a fixed, definite ratio, in a mixture the amounts of each component can vary. For example, when you add a little sugar to one cup of tea and a lot of sugar to another, each cup will contain a homogeneous mixture of tea and sugar but they will have a different ratio of sugar-to-tea and a different taste. If you add so much sugar that some does not dissolve and

stays on the bottom, however, the mixture is no longer homogeneous, it is heterogeneous; you could easily separate the two components (Figure 1.4.1).

Example 1.4.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. filtered tea
b. freshly squeezed orange juice
c. a compact disc
d. aluminum oxide, a white powder that contains a 2:3 ratio of aluminum and oxygen atoms
e. selenium

Given: a chemical substance

Asked for: its classification

Strategy:

I. Decide whether a substance is chemically pure. If it is pure, the substance is either an element or a compound. If a substance can be separated into its elements, it is a compound.
II. If a substance is not chemically pure, it is either a heterogeneous mixture or a homogeneous mixture. If its composition is uniform throughout, it is a homogeneous mixture.

Solution

a. I. Tea is a solution of compounds in water, so it is not chemically pure. It is usually separated from tea leaves by filtration.
II. Because the composition of the solution is uniform throughout, it is ***a homogeneous mixture***.
b. I. Orange juice contains particles of solid (pulp) as well as liquid; it is not chemically pure.
II. Because its composition is not uniform throughout, orange juice is ***a heterogeneous mixture***.
c. I. A compact disc is a solid material that contains more than one element, with regions of different compositions visible along its edge. Hence a compact disc is not chemically pure.
II. The regions of different composition indicate that a compact disc is ***a heterogeneous mixture.***
d. I. Aluminum oxide is a single, chemically ***pure compound***.
e. I. Selenium is one of the known ***elements***.

Exercise 1.4.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. white wine
b. mercury
c. ranch-style salad dressing
d. table sugar (sucrose)

Answer a:

homogeneous mixture (solution)

Answer b:

element

Answer c:

heterogeneous mixture

Answer d:

compound

Example 1.4.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. saltwater
b. soil
c. water
d. oxygen

Solution

a. Saltwater acts as if it were a single substance even though it contains two substances—salt and water. Saltwater is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution.
b. Soil is composed of small pieces of a variety of different materials, so it is a heterogeneous mixture.
c. Water is a substance; more specifically, because water is composed of a fixed ratio hydrogen and oxygen atoms, it is a compound.
d. Oxygen, a substance, is an element.

Exercise 1.4.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. coffee
b. hydrogen
c. an egg

Answer a:

Coffee, assuming it is filtered, is a variety of substances dissolved in water, therefore, it is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution.

Answer b:

Hydrogen is a known element.

Answer c:

An egg is composed of many different substances with different compositions between the yolk and white, it is a heterogeneous mixture.

Summary

Matter can be classified into two broad categories: pure substances and mixtures. A pure substance is a form of matter that has a constant composition and properties that are constant throughout the sample. Mixtures are physical combinations of two or more elements and/or compounds. Mixtures can be classified as homogeneous or heterogeneous. Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. Compounds are substances that are made up of more than one type of atom. Elements are the simplest substances made up of only one type of atom.

Contributors and Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)
- Paul R. Young, Professor of Chemistry, University of Illinois at Chicago, Wiki: AskTheNerd; PRY@askthenerd.com - pyoung@uic.edu; ChemistryOnline.com

1.4: Classification of Matter is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

Learning Objectives

To separate physical from chemical properties.

All matter has physical and chemical properties. Physical properties are characteristics that scientists can measure without changing the composition of the sample under study, such as mass, color, and volume (the amount of space occupied by a sample). Chemical properties describe the characteristic ability of a substance to react to form new substances; they include its flammability and susceptibility to corrosion. All samples of a pure substance have the same chemical and physical properties. For example, pure copper is always a reddish-brown solid (a physical property) and always dissolves in dilute nitric acid to produce a blue solution and a brown gas (a chemical property).

Physical Property

A *physical property* is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Silver is a shiny metal that conducts electricity very well. It can be molded into thin sheets, a property called malleability. Salt is dull and brittle and conducts electricity when it has been dissolved into water, which it does quite easily. Physical properties of matter include color, hardness, malleability, solubility, electrical conductivity, density, melting point, and boiling point.

For the elements, color does not vary much from one element to the next. The vast majority of elements are colorless, silver, or gray. Some elements do have distinctive colors: sulfur and chlorine are yellow, copper is (of course) copper-colored, and elemental bromine is red. However, density can be a very useful parameter for identifying an element. Of the materials that exist as solids at room temperature, iodine has a very low density compared to zinc, chromium, and tin. Gold has a very high density, as does platinum. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25°C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table 1.5.1. Notice that corn oil has a lower mass to volume ratio than water. This means that when added to water, corn oil will “float.”

Table 1.5.1: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
whole milk	1.030
corn oil	0.922
mayonnaise	0.910
honey	1.420

Hardness helps determine how an element (especially a metal) might be used. Many elements are fairly soft (silver and gold, for example) while others (such as titanium, tungsten, and chromium) are much harder. Carbon is an interesting example of hardness. In graphite, (the "lead" found in pencils) the carbon is very soft, while the carbon in a diamond is roughly seven times as hard.



Figure 1.5.1: Pencil (left) and Diamond ring (right). Both are a form of carbon, but exhibit very different physical properties.

Melting and boiling points are somewhat unique identifiers, especially of compounds. In addition to giving some idea as to the identity of the compound, important information can be obtained about the purity of the material.

Chemical Properties

Chemical properties of matter describe its potential to undergo some chemical change or reaction by virtue of its composition. The elements, electrons, and bonds that are present give the matter potential for chemical change. It is quite difficult to define a chemical property without using the word "change". Eventually, after studying chemistry for some time, you should be able to look at the formula of a compound and state some chemical property. For example, hydrogen has the potential to ignite and explode given the right conditions—this is a chemical property. Metals in general have the chemical property of reacting with an acid. Zinc reacts with hydrochloric acid to produce hydrogen gas—this is a chemical property.



Figure 1.5.2: Heavy rust on the links of a chain near the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco; it was continuously exposed to moisture and salt spray, causing surface breakdown, cracking, and flaking of the metal. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Marlith).

A chemical property of iron is its capability of combining with oxygen to form iron oxide, the chemical name of rust (Figure 1.5.2). The more general term for rusting and other similar processes is corrosion. Other terms that are commonly used in descriptions of chemical changes are burn, rot, explode, decompose, and ferment. Chemical properties are very useful in identifying substances. However, unlike physical properties, chemical properties can only be observed as the substance is in the process of being changed into a different substance.

Table 1.5.2: Contrasting Physical and Chemical Properties

Physical Properties	Chemical Properties
Gallium metal melts at 30 ^{o}C.	Iron metal rusts.
Mercury is a very dense liquid.	A green banana turns yellow when it ripens.
Gold is shiny.	A dry piece of paper burns.

Example 1.5.1

Which of the following is a chemical property of iron?

a. Iron corrodes in moist air.
b. Density = 7.874 g/cm^3
c. Iron is soft when pure.
d. Iron melts at 1808 K.

Solution

"Iron corrodes in moist air" is the only chemical property of iron from the list.

Exercise 1.5.1A

Which of the following is a physical property of matter?

a. corrosiveness
b. pH (acidity)
c. density
d. flammability

Answer

c

Exercise 1.5.1B

Which of the following is a chemical property?

a. flammability
b. melting point
c. boiling point
d. density

Answer

a

Summary

A physical property is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Physical properties include color, density, hardness, and melting and boiling points. A chemical property describes the ability of a substance to undergo a specific chemical change. To identify a chemical property, we look for a chemical change. A chemical change always produces one or more types of matter that differ from the matter present before the change. The formation of rust is a chemical change because rust is a different kind of matter than the iron, oxygen, and water present before the rust formed.

1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.6: Energy

Learning Objectives

- Define heat and work.
- Distinguish between kinetic energy and potential energy.
- State the law of conservation of matter and energy.

Just like matter, energy is a term that we are all familiar with and use on a daily basis. Before you go on a long hike, you eat an *energy* bar; every month, the *energy* bill is paid; on TV, politicians argue about the *energy* crisis. But what is energy? If you stop to think about it, energy is very complicated. When you plug a lamp into an electric socket, you see energy in the form of light, but when you plug a heating pad into that same socket, you only feel warmth. Without energy, we couldn't turn on lights, we couldn't brush our teeth, we couldn't make our lunch, and we couldn't travel to school. In fact, without energy, we couldn't even wake up because our bodies require energy to function. We use energy for every single thing that we do, whether we are awake or asleep.

Ability to Do Work or Produce Heat

When we speak of *using* energy, we are really referring to *transferring* energy from one place to another. When you use energy to throw a ball, you transfer energy from your body to the ball, and this causes the ball to fly through the air. When you use energy to warm your house, you transfer energy from the furnace to the air in your home, and this causes the temperature in your house to rise. Although energy is used in many kinds of different situations, all of these uses rely on energy being transferred in one of two ways. Energy can be transferred as *heat* or as *work*.

When scientists speak of ***heat***, they are referring to energy that is transferred from an object with a higher temperature to an object with a lower temperature, as a result of the temperature difference. Heat will "flow" from the hot object to the cold object until both end up at the same temperature. When you cook with a metal pot, you witness energy being transferred in the form of heat. Initially, only the stove element is hot—the pot and the food inside the pot are cold. As a result, heat moves from the hot stove element to the cold pot. After a while, enough heat is transferred from the stove to the pot, raising the temperature of the pot and all of its contents (Figure 1.6.1).



Figure 1.6.1: Energy is transferred as heat from the hot stove element to the cooler pot until the pot and its contents become just as hot as the element. The energy that is transferred into the pot as heat is then used to cook the food.

Heat is only one way in which energy can be transferred. Energy can also be transferred as **work**. The scientific definition of work is *force (any push or pull) applied over a distance*. When you push an object and cause it to move, you do work, and you transfer some of *your* energy to the object. At this point, it's important to warn you of a common misconception. Sometimes we think that the amount of work done can be measured by the amount of effort put in. This may be true in everyday life, but it is not true in science. By definition, scientific work requires that force be applied *over a distance*. It does not matter how hard you push or how hard you pull. If you have not moved the object, you haven't done any work.

So far, we've talked about the two ways in which energy can be transferred from one place, or object, to another. Energy can be transferred as heat, and energy can be transferred as work. But the question still remains—*what IS energy*?

Kinetic Energy

Machines use energy, our bodies use energy, energy comes from the sun, energy comes from volcanoes, energy causes forest fires, and energy helps us to grow food. With all of these seemingly different types of energy, it's hard to believe that there are really only

two different *forms* of energy: kinetic energy and potential energy. **Kinetic energy** is energy associated with motion. When an object is moving, it has kinetic energy. When the object stops moving, it has no kinetic energy. While all moving objects have kinetic energy, not all moving objects have the same amount of kinetic energy. The amount of kinetic energy possessed by an object is determined by its mass and its speed. The heavier an object is and the faster it is moving, the more kinetic energy it has.

Kinetic energy is very common, and it's easy to spot examples of it in the world around you. Sometimes we even try to capture kinetic energy and use it to power things like our home appliances. If you are from California, you might have driven through the Tehachapi Pass near Mojave or the Montezuma Hills in Solano County and seen the windmills lining the slopes of the mountains (Figure 1.6.2). These are two of the larger wind farms in North America. As wind rushes along the hills, the kinetic energy of the moving air particles turns the windmills, trapping the wind's kinetic energy so that people can use it in their houses and offices.



Figure 1.6.2: A wind farm in Solano County harnesses the kinetic energy of the wind. (CC BY-SA 3.0 Unported; BDS2006 at Wikipedia)

Potential Energy

Potential energy is *stored* energy. It is energy that remains available until we choose to use it. Think of a battery in a flashlight. If left on, the flashlight battery will run out of energy within a couple of hours, and the flashlight will die. If, however, you only use the flashlight when you need it, and turn it off when you don’t, the battery will last for days or even months. The battery contains a certain amount of energy, and it will power the flashlight for a certain amount of time, but because the battery stores *potential* energy, you can choose to use the energy all at once, or you can save it and only use a small amount at a time.

Any stored energy is potential energy. There are a lot of different ways in which energy can be stored, and this can make potential energy very difficult to recognize. In general, an object has potential energy because of its *position relative to another object*. For example, when a rock is held above the earth, it has potential energy because of its position relative to the ground. This is *potential energy* because the energy is *stored* for as long as the rock is held in the air. Once the rock is dropped, though, the stored energy is released as kinetic energy as the rock falls.

Chemical Energy

There are other common examples of potential energy. A ball at the top of a hill stores potential energy until it is allowed to roll to the bottom. When two magnets are held next to one another, they store potential energy too. For some examples of potential energy, though, it's harder to see how "position" is involved. In chemistry, we are often interested in what is called **chemical potential energy**. Chemical potential energy is energy stored in the atoms, molecules, and chemical bonds that make up matter. How does this depend on position?

As you learned earlier, the world, and all of the chemicals in it are made up of atoms and molecules. These store potential energy that is dependent on their positions relative to one another. Of course, you can't see atoms and molecules. Nevertheless, scientists do know a lot about the ways in which atoms and molecules interact, and this allows them to figure out how much potential energy is stored in a specific quantity (like a cup or a gallon) of a particular chemical. *Different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy* because they are made up of different atoms, and those atoms have different positions relative to one another.

> Since different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy, scientists will sometimes say that potential energy depends not only on ***position***, but also on ***composition***. Composition affects potential energy because it determines which

> molecules and atoms end up next to one another. For example, the total potential energy in a cup of pure water is different than the total potential energy in a cup of apple juice, because the cup of water and the cup of apple juice are *composed* of different amounts of different chemicals.

At this point, you may wonder just how useful chemical potential energy is. If you want to release the potential energy stored in an object held above the ground, you just drop it. But how do you get potential energy out of chemicals? It's actually not difficult. Use the fact that different chemicals have *different amounts of potential energy*. If you start with chemicals that have a lot of potential energy and allow them to react and form chemicals with less potential energy, all the extra energy that was in the chemicals at the beginning, but not at the end, is released.

Units of Energy

Energy is measured in one of two common units: the calorie and the joule. The joule (J) is the SI unit of energy. The calorie is familiar because it is commonly used when referring to the amount of energy contained within food. A **calorie** (cal) is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water by $1^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. For example, raising the temperature of $100\ \mathrm{g}$ of water from $20^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ to $22^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ would require $100 \times 2 = 200\ \mathrm{cal}$.

Calories contained within food are actually kilocalories (kcal). In other words, if a certain snack contains 85 food calories, it actually contains $85\ \mathrm{kcal}$ or $85,000\ \mathrm{cal}$ In order to make the distinction, the dietary calorie is written with a capital C.

$$1\ \text{kilocalorie} = 1\ \text{Calorie} = 1000\ \text{calories}$$

To say that the snack "contains" 85 Calories means that $85\ \mathrm{kcal}$ of energy are released when that snack is processed by your body.

Heat changes in chemical reactions are typically measured in joules rather than calories. The conversion between a joule and a calorie is shown below.

$$1\ \mathrm{J} = 0.2390\ \mathrm{cal} \text{ or } 1\ \mathrm{cal} = 4.184\ \mathrm{J}$$

We can calculate the amount of heat released in kilojoules when a 400 Calorie hamburger is digested.

$$400\ \mathrm{Cal} = 400\ \mathrm{kcal} \times \frac{4.184\ \mathrm{kJ}}{1\ \mathrm{kcal}} = 1.67 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Summary

- Any time we use energy, we transfer energy from one object to another.
- Energy can be transferred in one of two ways: as heat, or as work.
- Heat is the term given to energy that is transferred from a hot object to a cooler object due to the difference in their temperatures.
- Work is the term given to energy that is transferred as a result of a force applied over a distance.
- Energy comes in two fundamentally different forms: kinetic energy and potential energy.
- Kinetic energy is the energy of motion.
- Potential energy is stored energy that depends on the position of an object relative to another object.
- Chemical potential energy is a special type of potential energy that depends on the positions of different atoms and molecules relative to one another.
- Chemical potential energy can also be thought of according to its dependence on chemical composition.
- Energy can be converted from one form to another. The total amount of mass and energy in the universe is conserved.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Wikibooks

1.6: Energy is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.8: Energy** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

Learning Objectives

- Define endothermic and exothermic reactions.
- Describe how heat is transferred in endothermic and exothermic reactions.
- Determine whether a reaction is endothermic or exothermic through observations, temperature changes, or an energy diagram.

So far, we have talked about how energy exists as either *kinetic energy* or *potential energy* and how energy can be transferred as either *heat* or *work*. While it's important to understand the difference between kinetic energy and potential energy and the difference between heat and work, the truth is, energy is constantly changing. Kinetic energy is constantly being turned into potential energy, and potential energy is constantly being turned into kinetic energy. Likewise, energy that is transferred as work might later end up transferred as heat, while energy that is transferred as heat might later end up being used to do work.

Even though energy can change form, it must still follow one fundamental law: *Energy cannot be created or destroyed, it can only be changed from one form to another*. This law is known as the **Law of Conservation of Energy**. In a lot of ways, energy is like money. You can exchange quarters for dollar bills and dollar bills for quarters, but no matter how often you convert between the two, you will not end up with any more or any less money than you started with. Similarly, you can transfer (or spend) money using cash, or transfer money using a credit card; but you still spend the same amount of money, and the store still makes the same amount of money.

A campfire is an example of basic thermochemistry. The reaction is initiated by the application of heat from a match. The reaction converting wood to carbon dioxide and water (among other things) continues, releasing heat energy in the process. This heat energy can then be used to cook food, roast marshmallows, or just keep warm when it's cold outside.



An image of a campfire with colored flames, made by the burning of a garden hose in a copper pipe. (CC SA-BY 3.0; Jared)

Exothermic and Endothermic Processes

When physical or chemical changes occur, they are generally accompanied by a transfer of energy. The **law of conservation of energy** states that in any physical or chemical process, energy is neither created nor destroyed. In other words, the entire energy in the universe is conserved. In order to better understand the energy changes taking place during a reaction, we need to define two parts of the universe: *the system* and *the surroundings*. The **system** is the specific portion of matter in a given space that is being studied during an experiment or an observation. The **surroundings** are everything in the universe that is not part of the system. In practical terms for a laboratory chemist, the system is the particular chemicals being reacted, while the surroundings are the immediate vicinity within the room. During most processes, energy is exchanged between the system and the surroundings. If the system loses a certain amount of energy, that same amount of energy is gained by the surroundings. If the system gains a certain amount of energy, that energy is supplied by the surroundings.

A chemical reaction or physical change is **endothermic** if heat is absorbed by the system from the surroundings. In the course of an endothermic process, the system gains heat from the surroundings and so the temperature of the surroundings decreases. The quantity of heat for a process is represented by the letter q. The sign of q for an endothermic process is positive because the system

is gaining heat. A chemical reaction or physical change is **exothermic** if heat is released by the system into the surroundings. Because the surroundings are gaining heat from the system, the temperature of the surroundings increases. The sign of q for an exothermic process is negative because the system is losing heat.

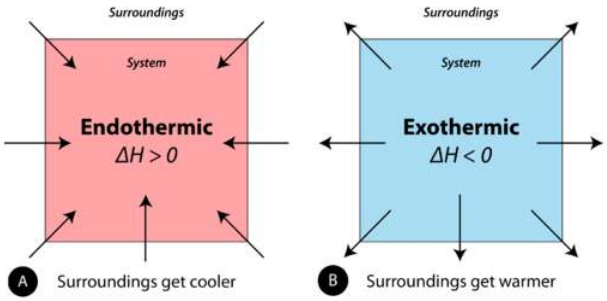


Figure 1.7.1: (A) Endothermic reaction. (B) Exothermic reaction.

Endothermic reaction: surroundings get cooler and delta H is greater than 0, Exothermic reaction: surroundings get warmer and delta H is less than 0

During phase changes, energy changes are usually involved. For example, when solid dry ice vaporizes (physical change), carbon dioxide molecules absorb energy. When liquid water becomes ice, energy is released. Remember that all chemical reactions involve a change in the bonds of the reactants. The bonds in the reactants are broken and the bonds of the products are formed. Chemical bonds have **potential energy** or "stored energy". Because we are changing the bonding, this means we are also changing how much of this "stored energy" there is in a reaction.

Energy changes are frequently shown by drawing an energy diagram. Energy diagrams show the stored/hidden energy of the reactants and products as well as the activation energy. If, on an energy diagram, the products have more stored energy than the reactants started with, the reaction is endothermic. You had to give the reaction energy. If, on the energy diagram, the products have less stored energy than the reactants started with, the reaction is exothermic.

✔ Example 1.7.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water boiling
b. gasoline burning
c. ice forming on a pond

Solution

a. Endothermic—you must put a pan of water on the stove and give it heat in order to get water to boil. Because you are adding heat/energy, the reaction is endothermic.
b. Exothermic—when you burn something, it feels hot to you because it is giving off heat into the surroundings.
c. Exothermic—think of ice forming in your freezer instead. You put water into the freezer, which takes heat out of the water, to get it to freeze. Because heat is being pulled out of the water, it is exothermic. Heat is leaving.

? Exercise 1.7.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water vapor condensing
b. gold melting

Answer (a)

exothermic

Answer (b)

endothermic

Summary

Phase changes involve changes in energy. All chemical reactions involve changes in energy. This may be a change in heat, electricity, light, or other forms of energy. Reactions that absorb energy are endothermic. Reactions that release energy are exothermic.

1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.9: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.8: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Identify the different between temperature and heat.
- Recognize the different scales used to measure temperature

The concept of temperature may seem familiar to you, but many people confuse temperature with heat. **Temperature** is a measure of how hot or cold an object is relative to another object (its thermal energy content), whereas **heat** is the flow of thermal energy between objects with different temperatures. Temperature is a measure of the average kinetic energy of the particles in matter. In everyday usage, temperature indicates a measure of how hot or cold an object is. Temperature is an important parameter in chemistry. When a substance changes from solid to liquid, it is because there was in increase in the temperature of the material. Chemical reactions usually proceed faster if the temperature is increased. Many unstable materials (such as enzymes) will be viable longer at lower temperatures.



Figure 1.8.1: The glowing charcoal on the left represents high kinetic energy, while the snow and ice on the right are of much lower kinetic energy.

Three different scales are commonly used to measure temperature: Fahrenheit (expressed as °F), Celsius (°C), and Kelvin (K). Thermometers measure temperature by using materials that expand or contract when heated or cooled. Mercury or alcohol thermometers, for example, have a reservoir of liquid that expands when heated and contracts when cooled, so the liquid column lengthens or shortens as the temperature of the liquid changes.



Figure 1.8.2: Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit (left), Anders Celsius (center), and Lord Kelvin (right).

The Fahrenheit Scale

The first thermometers were glass and contained alcohol, which expanded and contracted as the temperature changed. The German scientist, Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit used mercury in the tube, an idea put forth by Ismael Boulliau. The Fahrenheit scale was first developed in 1724 and tinkered with for some time after that. The main problem with this scale is the arbitrary definitions of temperature. The freezing point of water was defined as $32^{\circ}\mathrm{F}$ and the boiling point as $212^{\circ}\mathrm{F}$. The Fahrenheit scale is typically not used for scientific purposes.

The Celsius Scale

The Celsius scale of the metric system is named after Swedish astronomer Anders Celsius (1701-1744). The Celsius scale sets the freezing point and boiling point of water at $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ and $100^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ respectively. The distance between those two points is divided into 100 equal intervals, each of which is one degree. Another term sometimes used for the Celsius scale is "centigrade" because there are 100 degrees between the freezing and boiling points of water on this scale. However, the preferred term is "Celsius".

The Kelvin Scale

The Kelvin temperature scale is named after Scottish physicist and mathematician Lord Kelvin (1824-1907). It is based on molecular motion, with the temperature of 0 K, also known as absolute zero, being the point where all molecular motion ceases. The freezing point of water on the Kelvin scale is 273.15 K, while the boiling point is 373.15 K. Notice that there is no "degree" used in the temperature designation. Unlike the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales where temperatures are referred to as "degrees F" or "degrees C", we simply designate temperatures in the Kelvin scale as kelvins.

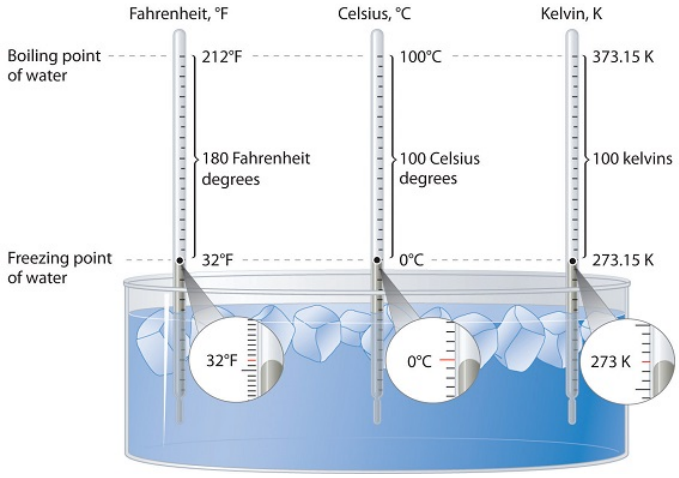


Figure 1.8.1: A Comparison of the Fahrenheit, Celsius, and Kelvin Temperature Scales. Because the difference between the freezing point of water and the boiling point of water is 100° on both the Celsius and Kelvin scales, the size of a degree Celsius (°C) and a kelvin (K) are precisely the same. In contrast, both a degree Celsius and a kelvin are 9/5 the size of a degree Fahrenheit (°F). (CC BY-SA-NC 3.0; anonymous)

Converting Between Scales

The Kelvin is the same size as the Celsius degree, so measurements are easily converted from one to the other. The freezing point of water is 0°C = 273.15 K; the boiling point of water is 100°C = 373.15 K. The Kelvin and Celsius scales are related as follows:

$$T\,(\text{in }^\circ\text{C}) + 273.15 = T\,(\text{in K}) \tag{3.10.1}$$

$$T\ \ (\text{in K}) - 273.15 = T\ (\text{in }^\circ\text{C}) \tag{3.10.2}$$

Degrees on the Fahrenheit scale, however, are based on an English tradition of using 12 divisions, just as 1 ft = 12 in. The relationship between degrees Fahrenheit and degrees Celsius is as follows: where the coefficient for degrees Fahrenheit is exact. (Some calculators have a function that allows you to convert directly between °F and °C.) There is only one temperature for which the numerical value is the same on both the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales: −40°C = −40°F. The relationship between the scales is as follows:

$$^\circ C = \frac{(^\circ F - 32)}{1.8} \tag{3.10.3}$$

$$^\circ F = 1.8 \times (^\circ C) + 32 \tag{3.10.4}$$

Example 1.8.1: Temperature Conversions

A student is ill with a temperature of 103.5°F. What is her temperature in °C and K?

Solution

Converting from Fahrenheit to Celsius requires the use of Equation 3.10.3:

$$^\circ C = \frac{(103.5^\circ F - 32)}{1.8} \tag{1.8.1}$$

$$= 39.7\,^\circ C \tag{1.8.2}$$

Converting from Celsius to Kelvin requires the use of Equation 3.10.1:

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/531411

$$K = 39.7\ ^{\circ}C + 273.15 \quad (1.8.3)$$
$$= 312.9\ K \quad (1.8.4)$$

? Exercise 1.8.1

Convert each temperature to °C and °F.

a. the temperature of the surface of the sun (5800 K)
b. the boiling point of gold (3080 K)
c. the boiling point of liquid nitrogen (77.36 K)

Answer (a)

5527 K, 9980 °F

Answer (b)

2807 K, 5084 °F

Answer (c)

-195.79 K, -320.42 °F

Summary

Three different scales are commonly used to measure temperature: Fahrenheit (expressed as °F), Celsius (°C), and Kelvin (K).

Contributions & Attributions

1.8: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.10: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.9: States of Matter

Learning Objectives

- Describe the different physical states of matter; solid, liquid, and gas.
- Understand how external conditions can affect the states of matter.

Water can take many forms. At low temperatures (below $0^{o}C$), it is a solid. When at "normal" temperatures (between $0^{o}C$ and $100^{o}C$), it is a liquid. While at temperatures above $100^{o}C$, water is a gas (steam). The state the water is in depends upon the temperature. Each state (solid, liquid, and gas) has its own unique set of physical properties.

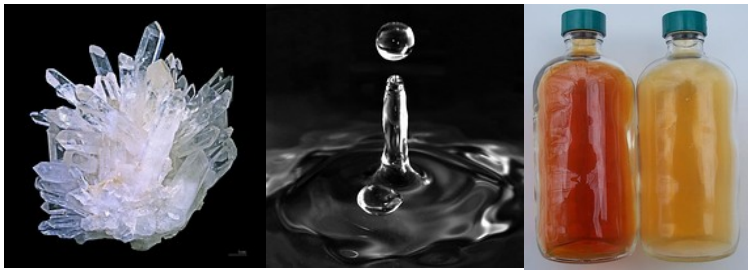


Figure 1.9.1: Matter is usually classified into three classical states. From left to right: quartz (solid), water (liquid), nitrogen dioxide (gas).

Matter typically exists in one of three states: **solid**, **liquid**, or **gas** and these different states of matter have different properties (Table 1.9.1):

- A **gas** is a state of matter in which atoms or molecules have enough energy to move freely. The molecules come into contact with one another only when they randomly collide. Forces between atoms or molecules are not strong enough to hold them together.
- A **liquid** is a state of matter in which atoms or molecules are constantly in contact but have enough energy to keep changing positions relative to one another. Forces between atoms or molecules are strong enough to keep the molecules relatively close together but not strong enough to prevent them from moving past one another.
- A **solid** is a state of matter in which atoms or molecules do not have enough energy to move. They are constantly in contact and in fixed positions relative to one another. Forces between atoms or molecules are strong enough to keep the molecules together and to prevent them from moving past one another.

The state a given substance exhibits is a physical property. Some substances exist as gases at room temperature (oxygen and carbon dioxide), while others, like water and mercury metal, exist as liquids. Most metals exist as solids at room temperature. All substances can exist in any of these three states. Figure 1.9.2 shows the differences among solids, liquids, and gases at the molecular level. A solid has definite volume and shape, a liquid has a definite volume but no definite shape, and a gas has neither a definite volume nor shape (Table 1.9.1).

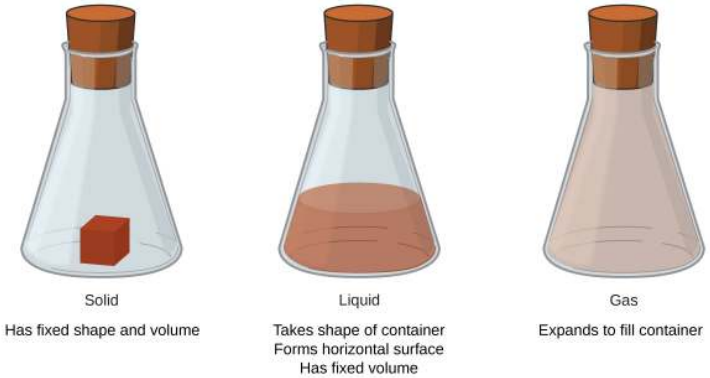


Figure 1.9.2: The three most common states or phases of matter are solid, liquid, and gas. (CC BY-4.0; OpenStax)

A beaker labeled solid contains a cube of red matter and says has fixed shape and volume. A beaker labeled liquid contains a brownish-red colored liquid. This beaker says takes shape of container, forms horizontal surfaces, has fixed volume. The beaker labeled gas is filled with a light brown gas. This beaker says expands to fill container.

These three descriptions each imply that the matter has certain physical properties when in these states. A solid has a definite shape and a definite volume. Liquids ordinarily have a definite volume but not a definite shape; they take the shape of their containers. Gases have neither a definite shape nor a definite volume, and they expand to fill their containers. We encounter matter in each phase every day; in fact, we regularly encounter water in all three phases: ice (solid), water (liquid), and steam (gas).

Table 1.9.1: Characteristics of each Phase of Matter

	Gas	Liquid	Solid
Shape	no definite shape (takes the shape of its container)	no definite shape (takes the shape of its container)	definite shape (rigid)
Volume	particles move in random motion with little or no attraction to each other	has definite volume	definite volume
Mobility	particles move in random motion with little or no attraction to each other	particles are free to move over each other, but are still attracted to each other	particles vibrate around fixed axes
Compressibility	highly compressible	weakly compressible	weakly compressible

Adding energy to matter gives its atoms or molecules the ability to resist some of the forces holding them together. For example, heating ice to its **melting point** gives its molecules enough energy to move. The ice melts and becomes liquid water. Similarly, heating liquid water to its **boiling point** gives its molecules enough energy to pull apart from one another so they no longer have contact. The liquid water vaporizes and becomes water vapor.

State of Matter Depends on the External Conditions

The temperature of the melting and boiling points depend on the identity of the substance and the atmospheric pressure. Each substance has its own boiling and melting points that depend on the properties of the substance. As an example, the values for water are given in Table 1.9.2. Note how the boiling point of water varies greatly with pressure.

Table 1.9.1: Boiling point of water as a function of pressure

Altitude (ft)	Pressure (atm)	Boiling Point (^{o}C)
-500	1.05	100.5
0	1.00	100
4000	0.892	96
7000	0.797	93

✔ Example 1.9.1

Isopropyl alcohol is a colorless, flammable chemical compound with a strong odor. Its melting point is –89°C and it boiling point is 82.5°C. Is isopropyl alcohol a solid, liquid or gas at room temperature (25°C)?

Solution

Room temperature (25°C) is above the melting point of isopropyl alcohol (–89°C), but lower than its boiling point (82.5°C), therefore, it is a **liquid** at room temperature.

? Exercise 1.9.1

Freon-12 is used as a refrigerant and aerosol spray propellant. Its melting point is –157.7°C and it boiling point is –29.8 °C. Is Freon-12 a solid, liquid or gas at room temperature (25°C).

Answer

> Freon-12 is a **gas** at room temperature

Key Takeaways

- Matter exists in different physical states.
- Changes in conditions such as temperature and pressure can allow matter to change state.

Contributors and Attributions

-
- Allison Soult, Ph.D. (Department of Chemistry, University of Kentucky)

1.9: States of Matter is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.10: Phase Changes

Learning Objectives

- Determine the heat associated with a phase change.

Matter can exist in one of several different states, including a gas, liquid, or solid state. The amount of energy in molecules of matter determines the **state of matter**.

- A **gas** is a state of matter in which atoms or molecules have enough energy to move freely. The molecules come into contact with one another only when they randomly collide.
- A **liquid** is a state of matter in which atoms or molecules are constantly in contact but have enough energy to keep changing positions relative to one another.
- A **solid** is a state of matter in which atoms or molecules do not have enough energy to move. They are constantly in contact and in fixed positions relative to one another.

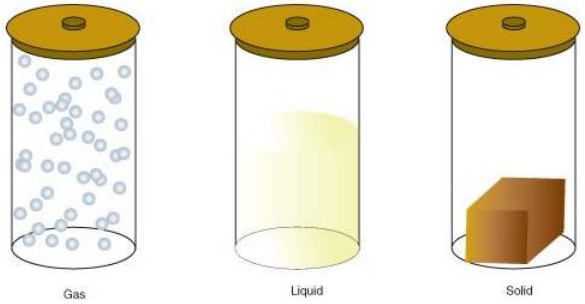


Figure 1.10.1: States of Matter. All three containers contain a substance with the same mass, but the substances are in different states. In the left-hand container, the substance is a gas, which has spread to fill its container. It takes both the shape and volume of the container. In the middle container, the substance is a liquid, which has spread to take the shape of its container but not the volume. In the right-hand container, the substance is a solid, which takes neither the shape nor the volume of its container.

The following are the changes of state:

Solid → Liquid	Melting or fusion
Liquid → Gas	Vaporization
Liquid → Solid	Freezing
Gas → Liquid	Condensation
Solid → Gas	Sublimation

- If heat is added to a substance, such as in melting, vaporization, and sublimation, the process is **endothermic**. In this instance, heat is increasing the speed of the molecules causing them move faster (examples: solid to liquid; liquid to gas; solid to gas).
- If heat is removed from a substance, such as in freezing and condensation, then the process is **exothermic**. In this instance, heat is decreasing the speed of the molecules causing them move slower (examples: liquid to solid; gas to liquid). These changes **release heat** to the surroundings.
- The amount of heat needed to change a sample from solid to liquid would be the same to reverse from liquid to solid. The only difference is the direction of heat transfer.

Example 1.10.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water boiling
b. ice forming on a pond

Solution

a. endothermic - you must put a pan of water on the stove and give it heat in order to get water to boil. Because you are adding heat/energy, the reaction is endothermic.
b. exothermic - think of ice forming in your freezer instead. You put water into the freezer, which takes heat out of the water, to get it to freeze. Because heat is being pulled out of the water, it is exothermic. Heat is leaving.

Exercise 1.10.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water vapor condensing
b. gold melting

Answer

a. exothermic

b. endothermic

A phase change is a physical process in which a substance goes from one phase to another. Usually the change occurs when adding or removing heat at a particular temperature, known as the melting point or the boiling point of the substance. The melting point is the temperature at which the substance goes from a solid to a liquid (or from a liquid to a solid). The boiling point is the temperature at which a substance goes from a liquid to a gas (or from a gas to a liquid). The nature of the phase change depends on the direction of the heat transfer. Heat going *into* a substance changes it from a solid to a liquid or a liquid to a gas. Removing heat *from* a substance changes a gas to a liquid or a liquid to a solid.

Two key points are worth emphasizing. First, at a substance's melting point or boiling point, two phases can exist simultaneously. Take water (H_2O) as an example. On the Celsius scale, H_2O has a melting point of 0°C and a boiling point of 100°C. At 0°C, both the solid and liquid phases of H_2O can coexist. However, if heat is added, some of the solid H_2O will melt and turn into liquid H_2O. If heat is removed, the opposite happens: some of the liquid H_2O turns into solid H_2O. A similar process can occur at 100°C: adding heat increases the amount of gaseous H_2O, while removing heat increases the amount of liquid H_2O (Figure 1.10.1).

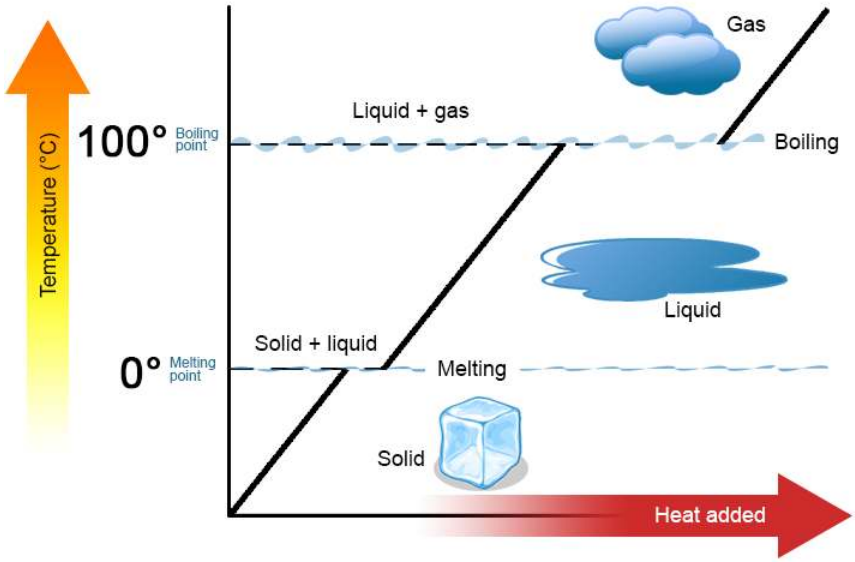


Figure 1.10.2: Heating curve for water. As heat is added to solid water, the temperature increases until it reaches 0 °C, *the melting point. At this point, the phase change, added heat goes into changing the state from a solid to liquid. Only when this phase change is complete, the temperature can increase. (CC BY 3.0 Unported; Community College Consortium for Bioscience Credentials).*

Water is a good substance to use as an example because many people are already familiar with it. Other substances have melting points and boiling points as well.

Second, as shown in Figure 1.10.1, **the temperature of a substance does not change** as the substance goes **from one phase to another**. In other words, phase changes are isothermal (isothermal means "constant temperature"). Again, consider H_2O as an example. Solid water (ice) can exist at 0°C. If heat is added to ice at 0°C, some of the solid changes phase to make liquid, which is also at 0°C. Remember, the solid and liquid phases of H_2O can coexist at 0°C. Only after all of the solid has melted into liquid does the addition of heat change the temperature of the substance.

1. What is the direction of heat transfer in boiling water?
2. What is the direction of heat transfer in freezing water?
3. What is the direction of heat transfer in sweating?

Answers

1. Boiling. Heat is being added to the water to get it from the liquid state to the gas state.

2. Freezing. Heat is exiting the system in order to go from liquid to solid. Another way to look at it is to consider the opposite process of melting. Energy is consumed (endothermic) to melt ice (solid to liquid) so the opposite process (liquid to solid) must be exothermic.

3. Sweating. Heat is consumed to evaporate the moisture on your skin which lowers your temperature.

Key Takeaway

- There is an energy change associated with any phase change.

1.10: Phase Changes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.11: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter

It may seem as though burning destroys matter, but the same amount, or mass, of matter still exists after a campfire as before. Look at Figure 1.11.1 below. It shows that when wood burns, it combines with oxygen and changes not only to ashes, but also to carbon dioxide and water vapor. The gases float off into the air, leaving behind just the ashes. Suppose you had measured the mass of the wood before it burned and the mass of the ashes after it burned. Also suppose you had been able to measure the oxygen used by the fire and the gases produced by the fire. What would you find? The total mass of matter after the fire would be the same as the total mass of matter before the fire.

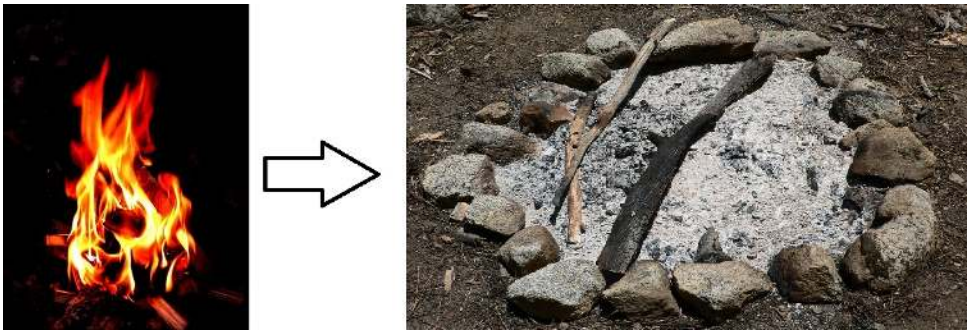


Figure 1.11.1: Burning is a chemical process. The flames are caused as a result of a fuel undergoing combustion (burning). (CC BY-SA 2.5; Einar Helland Berger for fire and Walter Siegmund for ash).

Law of Conservation of Mass

The law of conservation of mass was created in 1789 by a French chemist, Antoine Lavoisier. The **law of conservation of mass** states that matter cannot be created or destroyed in a chemical reaction. For example, when wood burns, the mass of the soot, ashes, and gases equals the original mass of the charcoal and the oxygen when it first reacted. So the mass of the product equals the mass of the reactant. A reactant is the chemical reaction of two or more elements to make a new substance, and a product is the substance that is formed as the result of a chemical reaction (Video 1.11.1). Matter and its corresponding mass may not be able to be created or destroyed, but can change forms to other substances like liquids, gases, and solids.



Video 1.11.1: This is a nice little demonstration showing the Conservation of Mass in action.

If you witness a 300 kg tree burn to the ground, there are only ashes left after the burn, and all of them together weigh 10 kg. It may make you wonder where the other 290 kg went. The missing 290 kg was released into the atmosphere as smoke, so the only thing left that you can see is the 10 kg of ash. If you know the law of conservation of mass, then you know that the other 290 kg has to go somewhere, because it has to equal the mass of the tree before it burnt down.

Example 1.11.1

If heating 10.0 grams of calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) produces 4.4 g of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and 5.6 g of calcium oxide (CaO), show that these observations are in agreement with the law of conservation of mass.

Solution

$$\text{Mass of the reactants} = \text{Mass of the products}$$

$$10.0\ \text{g of } CaCO_3 = 4.4\ \text{g of } CO_2 + 5.6\ \text{g of } CaO$$

$$10.0\ \text{g of reactant} = 10.0\ \text{g of products}$$

Because the mass of the reactant is equal to the mass of the products, the observations are in agreement with the law of conservation of mass.

? Exercise 1.11.1

Potassium hydroxide (KOH) readily reacts with carbon dioxide (CO_2) to produce potassium carbonate (K_2CO_3) and water (H_2O). How many grams of potassium carbonate are produced if 224.4 g of KOH reacts with 88.0 g of CO_2? The reaction also produces 36.0 g of water.

Answer

276.4 g of potassium carbonate

The Law is also applicable to both chemical and physical changes. For example, if you have an ice cube that melts into a liquid and you heat that liquid up, it becomes a gas. It will appear to have disappeared, but is still there.

Summary

- Burning and other changes in matter do not destroy matter.
- The mass of matter is always the same before and after the changes occur.
- The law of conservation of mass states that matter cannot be created or destroyed.

Contributions & Attributions

- Binod Shrestha (University of Lorraine)

1.11: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **3.7: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.12: Basic Definitions

Learning Objective

- Learn the basic terms used to describe matter

The definition of chemistry—the study of the interactions of matter with other matter and with energy—uses some terms that should also be defined. We start the study of chemistry by defining basic terms.

Matter

Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space. A book is matter, a computer is matter, food is matter, and dirt in the ground is matter. Sometimes matter may be difficult to identify. For example, air is matter, but because it is so thin compared to other matter (e.g., a book, a computer, food, and dirt), we sometimes forget that air has mass and takes up space. Things that are not matter include thoughts, ideas, emotions, and hopes.

Example 1.12.1

Which of the following is matter and not matter?

a. a hot dog
b. love
c. a tree

Solution

a. A hot dog has mass and takes up space, so it is matter.
b. Love is an emotion, and emotions are not matter.
c. A tree has mass and takes up space, so it is matter.

Exercise 1.12.1

Which of the following is matter and not matter?

a. the moon
b. an idea for a new invention

Answer a

The moon is matter.

Answer b

The invention itself may be matter, but the idea for it is not.

To understand matter and how it changes, we need to be able to describe matter. There are two basic ways to describe matter: physical properties and chemical properties.

Physical properties

Physical properties are characteristics that describe matter as it exists. Some physical characteristics of matter are shape, color, size, and temperature. An important physical property is the **phase** (or **state**) of matter. The three fundamental phases of matter are solid, liquid, and gas (Figure 1.12.1).



Figure 1.12.1: The Phases of Matter. Chemistry recognizes three fundamental phases of matter: solid (left), liquid (middle), and gas (right). (CC BY-SA 3.0; Spirit469). The solid state depicted is an ice sculpture of an angel, the liquid state is a drop of water, and the gas is clouds made of water vapor.

Chemical Properties

Chemical properties are characteristics of matter that describe how matter changes form in the presence of other matter. Does a sample of matter burn? Burning is a chemical property. Does it behave violently when put in water? This reaction is a chemical property as well (Figure 1.12.2). In the following chapters, we will see how descriptions of physical and chemical properties are important aspects of chemistry.



Figure 1.12.2: Chemical Properties. The fact that this match burns is a chemical property of the match. (Sebastian Ritter (Rise0011)).

Physical Change

A physical change occurs when a sample of matter changes one or more of its physical properties. For example, a solid may melt (Figure 1.12.3), or alcohol in a thermometer may change volume as the temperature changes. A physical change does not affect the chemical composition of matter.



Figure 1.12.2: Physical Changes: The solid ice melts into liquid water—a physical change. A time-lapse animation of ice cubes melting in a glass over 50 minutes. (Public Domain; Moussa).

Chemical Change

Chemical change is the process of demonstrating a chemical property, such as the burning match in Figure 1.12.2 "Chemical Properties". As the matter in the match burns, its chemical composition changes, and new forms of matter with new physical properties are created. Note that chemical changes are frequently accompanied by physical changes, as the new matter will likely have different physical properties from the original matter.

Example 1.12.2

Describe each process as a physical change or a chemical change.

a. Water in the air turns into snow.
b. A person's hair is cut.
c. Bread dough becomes fresh bread in an oven.

Solution

a. Because the water is going from a gas phase to a solid phase, this is a physical change.
b. Your long hair is being shortened. This is a physical change.
c. Because of the oven's temperature, chemical changes are occurring in the bread dough to make fresh bread. These are chemical changes. (In fact, a lot of cooking involves chemical changes.)

Exercise 1.12.2

Identify each process as a physical change or a chemical change.

a. A fire is raging in a fireplace.
b. Water is warmed to make a cup of coffee.

Answer a

chemical change

Answer b

physical change

Substance

A sample of matter that has the same physical and chemical properties throughout is called a substance. Sometimes the phrase *pure substance* is used, but the word *pure* isn't needed. The definition of the term *substance* is an example of how chemistry has a specific definition for a word that is used in everyday language with a different, vaguer definition. Here, we will use the term *substance* with its strict chemical definition.

> *Chemistry recognizes two different types of substances: elements and compounds.*

Element

An element is the simplest type of chemical substance; it cannot be broken down into simpler chemical substances by ordinary chemical means. There are 118 elements known to science, of which 80 are stable. (The other elements are radioactive, a condition we will consider in Chapter 15.) Each element has its own unique set of physical and chemical properties. Examples of elements include iron, carbon, and gold.

Compound

A compound is a combination of more than one element. The physical and chemical properties of a compound are different from the physical and chemical properties of its constituent elements; that is, it behaves as a completely different substance. There are over 50 million compounds known, and more are being discovered daily. Examples of compounds include water, penicillin, and sodium chloride (the chemical name for common table salt).

Mixtures

Physical combinations of more than one substance are called mixtures. Elements and compounds are not the only ways in which matter can be present. We frequently encounter objects that are physical combinations of more than one element or compound—mixtures. There are two types of mixtures.

Heterogeneous Mixture

A heterogeneous mixture is a mixture composed of two or more substances. It is easy to tell, sometimes by the naked eye, that more than one substance is present.

Homogeneous Mixture/ Solution

A homogeneous mixture is a combination of two or more substances that is so intimately mixed, that the mixture behaves as a single substance. Another word for a homogeneous mixture is a solution. Thus, a combination of salt and steel wool is a heterogeneous mixture because it is easy to see which particles of the matter are salt crystals and which are steel wool. On the other hand, if you take salt crystals and dissolve them in water, it is very difficult to tell that you have more than one substance present just by looking—even if you use a powerful microscope. The salt dissolved in water is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution (Figure 1.12.3).



Figure 1.12.3: Types of Mixtures © Thinkstock. On the left, the combination of two substances is a heterogeneous mixture because the particles of the two components look different. On the right, the salt crystals have dissolved in the water so finely that you cannot tell that salt is present. The homogeneous mixture appears like a single substance.

Example 1.12.3

Identify the following combinations as heterogeneous mixtures or homogenous mixtures.

a. soda water (carbon dioxide is dissolved in water)
b. a mixture of iron metal filings and sulfur powder (both iron and sulfur are elements)

Solution

a. Because carbon dioxide is dissolved in water, we can infer from the behavior of salt crystals dissolved in water that carbon dioxide dissolved in water is (also) a homogeneous mixture.
b. Assuming that the iron and sulfur are simply mixed together, it should be easy to see what is iron and what is sulfur, so this is a heterogeneous mixture.

Exercise 1.12.3

a. the human body
b. an amalgam, a combination of some other metals dissolved in a small amount of mercury

Answer a

heterogeneous mixture

Answer b

homogeneous mixture

There are other descriptors that we can use to describe matter, especially elements. We can usually divide elements into metals and nonmetals, and each set shares certain (but not always all) properties.

Metal

A metal is an element that conducts electricity and heat well and is shiny, silvery, solid, ductile, and malleable. At room temperature, metals are solid (although mercury is a well-known exception). A metal is ductile because it can be drawn into thin wires (a property called *ductility*); and malleable because it can be pounded into thin sheets (a property called *malleability*).

Nonmetal

A non-metal is an element that is brittle when solid, and does not conduct electricity or heat very well. Non-metals cannot be made into thin sheets or wires (Figure 1.12.4). Nonmetals also exist in a variety of phases and colors at room temperature.

Semi-metals

Some elements have properties of both metals and nonmetals and are called semi-metals (or metalloids). We will see later how these descriptions can be assigned rather easily to various elements.



Figure 1.12.4: Semimetals © Thinkstock. On the left is some elemental mercury, the only metal that exists as a liquid at room temperature. It has all the other expected properties of a metal. On the right, elemental sulfur is a yellow nonmetal that usually is found as a powder.

Describing Matter Flowchart

"Describing Matter" is a flowchart of the relationships among the different ways of describing matter.

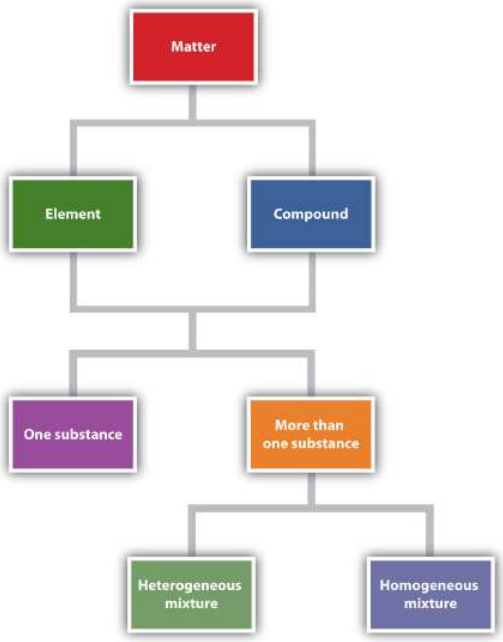


Figure 1.12.5: Describing Matter. This flowchart shows how matter can be described. Matter forks into element & compound which fork into 1 substance & more than 1 substance. More than 1 substance is homogenous or heterogenous.

Example 1.12.1: Chemistry is Everywhere: In the Morning

Most people have a morning ritual, a process that they go through every morning to get ready for the day. Chemistry appears in many of these activities.

- If you take a shower or bath in the morning, you probably use soap, shampoo, or both. These items contain chemicals that interact with the oil and dirt on your body and hair to remove them and wash them away. Many of these products also contain chemicals that make you smell good; they are called *fragrances*.
- When you brush your teeth in the morning, you usually use toothpaste, a form of soap, to clean your teeth. Toothpastes typically contain tiny, hard particles called *abrasives* that physically scrub your teeth. Many toothpastes also contain fluoride, a substance that chemically interacts with the surface of the teeth to help prevent cavities.
- Perhaps you take vitamins, supplements, or medicines every morning. Vitamins and other supplements contain chemicals your body needs in small amounts to function properly. Medicines are chemicals that help combat diseases and promote health.
- Perhaps you make some fried eggs for breakfast. Frying eggs involves heating them enough so that a chemical reaction occurs to cook the eggs.
- After you eat, the food in your stomach is chemically reacted so that the body (mostly the intestines) can absorb food, water, and other nutrients.
- If you drive or take the bus to school or work, you are using a vehicle that probably burns gasoline, a material that burns fairly easily and provides energy to power the vehicle. Recall that burning is a chemical change.

These are just a few examples of how chemistry impacts your everyday life. And we haven't even made it to lunch yet!



Figure 1.12.6: Chemistry in Real Life © Thinkstock. Examples of chemistry can be found everywhere—in personal hygiene products, food, and motor vehicles. Personal hygiene products (left), food (middle), and motor vehicles (right) images next to one another.

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry is the study of matter and its interactions with other matter and energy.
- Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space.
- Matter can be described in terms of physical properties and chemical properties.
- Physical properties and chemical properties of matter can change.
- Matter is composed of elements and compounds.
- Combinations of different substances are called mixtures.
- Elements can be described as metals, nonmetals, and semi-metals.

This page titled 1.12: Basic Definitions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.2: Basic Definitions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Measurement and Problem Solving

Chemistry, like all sciences, is quantitative. It concerns quantities, things that have amounts and units. Dealing with quantities and relating them to one another is very important in chemistry. In this chapter, we will discuss how we deal with numbers and units, including how they are combined and manipulated.

2.1: Taking Measurements
2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers
2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision
2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations
2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement
2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions
2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems
2.8: Units Raised to a Power
2.9: Density

2: Measurement and Problem Solving is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

2.1: TAKING MEASUREMENTS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Express quantities properly, using a number and a unit.

A coffee maker's instructions tell you to fill the coffee pot with 4 cups of water and to use 3 scoops of coffee. When you follow these instructions, you are measuring. When you visit a doctor's office, a nurse checks your temperature, height, weight, and perhaps blood pressure (Figure 2.1.1); the nurse is also measuring.



Figure 2.1.1: Measuring Blood Pressure. A nurse or a doctor measuring a patient's blood pressure is taking a measurement. (GFDL; Pia von Lützau).

Chemists measure the properties of matter and express these measurements as quantities. A quantity is an amount of something and consists of a number and a unit. The number tells us how many (or how much), and the unit tells us what the scale of measurement is. For example, when a distance is reported as "5 kilometers," we know that the quantity has been expressed in units of kilometers and that the number of kilometers is 5. If you ask a friend how far they walk from home to school, and the friend answers "12" without specifying a unit, you do not know whether your friend walks 12 kilometers, 12 miles, 12 furlongs, or 12 yards. *Both a number and a unit must be included to express a quantity properly.*

To understand chemistry, we need a clear understanding of the units chemists work with and the rules they follow for expressing numbers. The next two sections examine the rules for expressing numbers.

EXAMPLE 2.1.1

Identify the number and the unit in each quantity.

a. one dozen eggs
b. 2.54 centimeters
c. a box of pencils
d. 88 meters per second

SOLUTION

a. The number is one, and the unit is a dozen eggs.
b. The number is 2.54, and the unit is centimeter.
c. The number 1 is implied because the quantity is only *a* box. The unit is box of pencils.
d. The number is 88, and the unit is meters per second. Note that in this case the unit is actually a combination of two units: meters and seconds.

KEY TAKE AWAY

- Identify a quantity properly with a number and a unit.

2.1: Taking Measurements is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.1: Taking Measurements** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

Learning Objectives

- Express a large number or a small number in scientific notation.
- Carry out arithmetical operations and express the final answer in scientific notation

Chemists often work with numbers that are exceedingly large or small. For example, entering the mass in grams of a hydrogen atom into a calculator would require a display with at least 24 decimal places. A system called **scientific notation** avoids much of the tedium and awkwardness of manipulating numbers with large or small magnitudes. In scientific notation, these numbers are expressed in the form

$$N \times 10^n$$

where N is greater than or equal to 1 and less than 10 ($1 \le N < 10$), and n is a positive or negative integer ($10^0 = 1$). The number 10 is called the base because it is this number that is raised to the power n. Although a base number may have values other than 10, the base number in scientific notation is always 10.

A simple way to convert numbers to scientific notation is to move the decimal point as many places to the left or right as needed to give a number from 1 to 10 (N). The magnitude of n is then determined as follows:

- If the decimal point is moved to the left n places, n is positive.
- If the decimal point is moved to the right n places, n is negative.

Another way to remember this is to recognize that as the number N decreases in magnitude, the exponent increases and vice versa. The application of this rule is illustrated in Example 2.2.1.

Example 2.2.1: Expressing Numbers in Scientific Notation

Convert each number to scientific notation.

a. 637.8
b. 0.0479
c. 7.86
d. 12,378
e. 0.00032
f. 61.06700
g. 2002.080
h. 0.01020

Solution

Solutions to Example 2.2.1

	Explanation	Answer
a	To convert 637.8 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the left: 637.8 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the left, n = 2.	6.378×10^2
b	To convert 0.0479 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the right: 0.0479 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = −2.	4.79×10^{-2}
c	This is usually expressed simply as 7.86. (Recall that $10^0 = 1$.)	7.86×10^0
d	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the left, n = 4.	1.2378×10^4

	Explanation	Answer
e	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the right, n = −4.	3.2×10^{-4}
f	Because the decimal point was moved one place to the left, n = 1.	6.106700×10^{1}
g	Because the decimal point was moved three places to the left, n = 3.	2.002080×10^{3}
h	Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = -2.	1.020×10^{-2}

Addition and Subtraction

Before numbers expressed in scientific notation can be added or subtracted, they must be converted to a form in which all the exponents have the same value. The appropriate operation is then carried out on the values of N. Example $2.2.2$ illustrates how to do this.

Example 2.2.2: Expressing Sums and Differences in Scientific Notation

Carry out the appropriate operation and then express the answer in scientific notation.

a. $(1.36 \times 10^{2}) + (4.73 \times 10^{3})$
b. $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4})$

Solution

Solutions to Example 2.2.2.

	Explanation	Answer
a	Both exponents must have the same value, so these numbers are converted to either $(1.36 \times 10^{2}) + (47.3 \times 10^{2}) =$ $(1.36 + 47.3) \times 10^{2} = 48.66 \times 10^{2}$ or $(0.136 \times 10^{3}) + (4.73 \times 10^{3}) =$ $(0.136 + 4.73) \times 10^{3}) = 4.87 \times 10^{3}$. Choosing either alternative gives the same answer, reported to two decimal places. In converting 48.66 × 10^{2} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	4.8
b	Converting the exponents to the same value gives either $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (0.8756 \times 10^{-3}) =$ $(6.923 - 0.8756) \times 10^{-3}$ or $(69.23 \times 10^{-4}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4}) =$ $(69.23 - 8.756) \times 10^{-4} = 60.474 \times 10^{-4}$. In converting 60.474 × 10^{-4} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	6.0

Multiplication and Division

When multiplying numbers expressed in scientific notation, we multiply the values of N and add together the values of n. Conversely, when dividing, we divide N in the dividend (the number being divided) by N in the divisor (the number by which we are dividing) and then

subtract n in the divisor from n in the dividend. In contrast to addition and subtraction, the exponents do not have to be the same in multiplication and division. Examples of problems involving multiplication and division are shown in Example 2.2.3.

Example 2.2.3: Expressing Products and Quotients in Scientific Notation

Perform the appropriate operation and express your answer in scientific notation.

a. $(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2})$

b. $\dfrac{1.67 \times 10^{-24}}{9.12 \times 10^{-28}}$

c. $\dfrac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34})(6.0 \times 10)}{8.52 \times 10^{-2}}$

Solution

Solution to Example 2.2.3

	Explanation	
a	In multiplication, we add the exponents: $(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2}) = (6.022)(6.42) \times 10^{[23+(-2)]} = 38.7 \times 10^{21}$ In converting 38.7×10^{21} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	3.87×10^{22}
b	In division, we subtract the exponents: $\frac{1.67 \times 10^{-24}}{9.12 \times 10^{-28}} = \frac{1.67}{9.12} \times 10^{[-24-(-28)]} = 0.183 \times 10^{4}$ In converting 0.183×10^{4} to scientific notation, n has become more negative by 1 because the value of N has increased.	1.83×10^{3}
c	This problem has both multiplication and division: $\frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34})(6.0 \times 10)}{(8.52 \times 10^{-2})} = \frac{39.78}{8.52} \times 10^{[-34+1-(-2)]}$	4.7×10^{-31}

2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

Learning Objectives

- Identify the number of significant figures in a reported value.

The **significant figures** in a measurement consist of all the certain digits in that measurement plus one uncertain or estimated digit. In the ruler illustration below, the bottom ruler gave a length with 2 significant figures, while the top ruler gave a length with 3 significant figures. In a correctly reported measurement, the final digit is significant but not certain. Insignificant digits are not reported. With either ruler, it would not be possible to report the length at $2.553\ \text{cm}$ as there is no possible way that the thousandths digit could be estimated. The 3 is not significant and would not be reported.

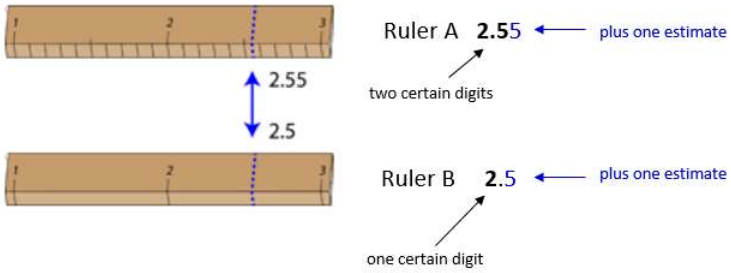


Figure 2.3.1: Measurement with two different rulers.
Ruler A's measurement can be rounded to 2.55, with 2 certain digits, while Ruler B's measurement of 2.5 has 1 certain digit

Measurement Uncertainty

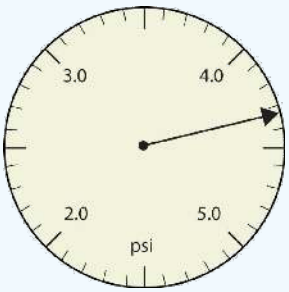
Some error or **uncertainty** always exists in any measurement. The amount of uncertainty depends both upon the skill of the measurer and upon the quality of the measuring tool. While some balances are capable of measuring masses only to the nearest $0.1\ \text{g}$, other highly sensitive balances are capable of measuring to the nearest $0.001\ \text{g}$ or even better. Many measuring tools such as rulers and graduated cylinders have small lines which need to be carefully read in order to make a measurement. Figure 2.3.1 shows two rulers making the same measurement of an object (indicated by the blue arrow).

With either ruler, it is clear that the length of the object is between 2 and $3\ \text{cm}$. The bottom ruler contains no millimeter markings. With that ruler, the tenths digit can be estimated and the length may be reported as $2.5\ \text{cm}$. However, another person may judge that the measurement is $2.4\ \text{cm}$ or perhaps $2.6\ \text{cm}$. While the 2 is known for certain, the value of the tenths digit is uncertain.

The top ruler contains marks for tenths of a centimeter (millimeters). Now the same object may be measured as $2.55\ \text{cm}$. The measurer is capable of estimating the hundredths digit because he can be certain that the tenths digit is a 5. Again, another measurer may report the length to be $2.54\ \text{cm}$ or $2.56\ \text{cm}$. In this case, there are two certain digits (the 2 and the 5), with the hundredths digit being uncertain. Clearly, the top ruler is a superior ruler for measuring lengths as precisely as possible.

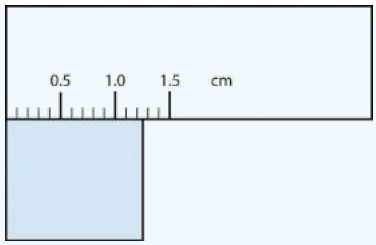
Example 2.3.1: Reporting Measurements to the Proper Number of Significant Figures

Use each diagram to report a measurement to the proper number of significant figures.



a.

b.



Ruler measuring a rectangle in units of centimeters, with the rectangle's edge between 1.2 and 1.3 cm marks

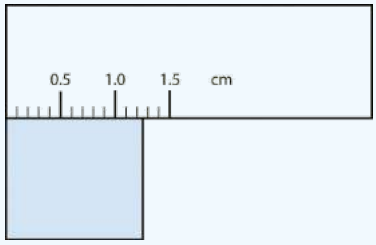
Solutions

Solutions to Example 2.3.1

	Explanation	Answer
a.	The arrow is between 4.0 and 5.0, so the measurement is at least 4.0. The arrow is between the third and fourth small tick marks, so it's at least 0.3. We will have to estimate the last place. It looks like about one-third of the way across the space, so let us estimate the hundredths place as 3. The symbol psi stands for "pounds per square inch" and is a unit of pressure, like air in a tire. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	4.33 psi
b.	The rectangle is at least 1.0 cm wide but certainly not 2.0 cm wide, so the first significant digit is 1. The rectangle's width is past the second tick mark but not the third; if each tick mark represents 0.1, then the rectangle is at least 0.2 in the next significant digit. We have to estimate the next place because there are no markings to guide us. It appears to be about halfway between 0.2 and 0.3, so we will estimate the next place to be a 5. Thus, the measured width of the rectangle is 1.25 cm. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	1.25 cm

? Exercise 2.3.1

What would be the reported width of this rectangle?



Answer

1.25 cm

When you look at a reported measurement, it is necessary to be able to count the number of significant figures. The table below details the rules for determining the number of significant figures in a reported measurement. For the examples in the table, assume that the quantities are correctly reported values of a measured quantity.

Table 2.3.1: Significant Figure Rules

Rule	Examples
1. All nonzero digits in a measurement are significant.	• 237 has three significant figures. • 1.897 has four significant figures.
2. Zeros that appear between other nonzero digits (middle zeros) are always significant.	• 39,004 has five significant figures. • 5.02 has three significant figures.
3. Zeros that appear in front of all of the nonzero digits are called leading zeros. Leading zeros are never significant.	• 0.008 has one significant figure. • 0.000416 has three significant figures.
4. Zeros that appear after all nonzero digits are called trailing zeros. A number with trailing zeros that lacks a decimal point may or may not be significant. **Use scientific notation to indicate the appropriate number of significant figures.**	• 1400 is ambiguous. ◦ 1.4×10^3 has two significant figures. ◦ 1.40×10^3 three significant figures. ◦ 1.400×10^3 has four significant figures.
5. Trailing zeros in a number with a decimal point are significant. This is true whether the zeros occur before or after the decimal point.	• 620.0 has four significant figures. • 19.000 has five significant figures.

Exact Numbers

Integers obtained either by counting objects or from definitions are exact numbers, which are considered to have infinitely many significant figures. If we have counted four objects, for example, then the number 4 has an infinite number of significant figures (i.e., it represents 4.000…). Similarly, 1 foot (ft) is defined to contain 12 inches (in), so the number 12 in the following equation has infinitely many significant figures:

Example 2.3.2

Give the number of significant figures in each. Identify the rule for each.

a. 5.87
b. 0.031
c. 52.90
d. 00.2001
e. 500
f. 6 atoms

Solution

Solution to Example 2.3.2

	Explanation	Answer
a	All three numbers are significant (rule 1).	5.87, three significant figures
b	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 3 and the 1 are significant (rule 1).	0.031, two significant figures
c	The 5, the 2 and the 9 are significant (rule 1). The trailing zero is also significant (rule 5).	52.90, four significant figures

	Explanation	Answer
d	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 2 and the 1 are significant (rule 1) and the middle zeros are also significant (rule 2).	00.2001, four significant figures
e	The number is ambiguous. It could have one, two or three significant figures.	500, ambiguous
f	The 6 is a counting number. A counting number is an exact number.	6, infinite

? Exercise 2.3.2

Give the number of significant figures in each.

a. 36.7 m
b. 0.006606 s
c. 2,002 kg
d. 306,490,000 people
e. 3,800 g

Answer a

three significant figures

Answer b

four significant figures

Answer c

four significant figures

Answer d

infinite (exact number)

Answer e

Ambiguous, could be two, three or four significant figures.

Accuracy and Precision

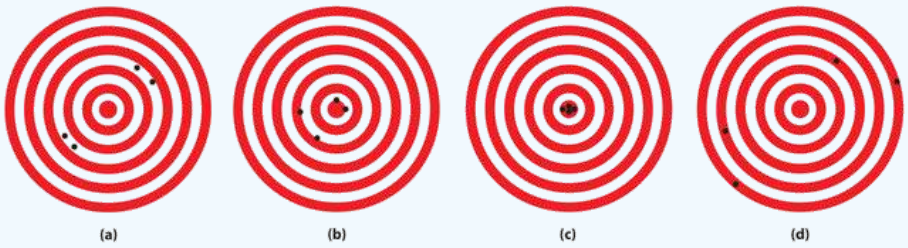
Measurements may be accurate, meaning that the measured value is the same as the true value; they may be precise, meaning that multiple measurements give nearly identical values (i.e., reproducible results); they may be both accurate and precise; or they may be neither accurate nor precise. The goal of scientists is to obtain measured values that are both accurate and precise. The video below demonstrates the concepts of accuracy and precision.



Video 2.3.1: Difference between precision and accuracy.

Example 2.3.3

The following archery targets show marks that represent the results of four sets of measurements.



Which target shows

a. a precise, but inaccurate set of measurements?
b. a set of measurements that is both precise and accurate?
c. a set of measurements that is neither precise nor accurate?

Solution

a. Set **(a)** is precise, but inaccurate.
b. Set **(c)** is both precise and accurate.
c. Set **(d)** is neither precise nor accurate.

Summary

Uncertainty exists in all measurements. The degree of uncertainty is affected in part by the quality of the measuring tool. Significant figures give an indication of the certainty of a measurement. Rules allow decisions to be made about how many digits to use in any given situation.

2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Henry Agnew, Sridhar Budhi, & Sridhar Budhi.

- **2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Sridhar Budhi is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations

Learning Objectives

- Use significant figures correctly in arithmetical operations.

Rounding

Before dealing with the specifics of the rules for determining the significant figures in a calculated result, we need to be able to round numbers correctly. To **round** a number, first decide how many significant figures the number should have. Once you know that, round to that many digits, starting from the left. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is less than 5, it is dropped and the value of the last significant digit remains the same. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is greater than or equal to 5, the last significant digit is increased by 1.

Consider the measurement 207.518 m Right now, the measurement contains six significant figures. How would we successively round it to fewer and fewer significant figures? Follow the process as outlined in Table $2.4.1$.

Table 2.4.1: Rounding examples

Number of Significant Figures	Rounded Value	Reasoning
6	207.518	All digits are significant
5	207.52	8 rounds the 1 up to 2
4	207.5	2 is dropped
3	208	5 rounds the 7 up to 8
2	210	8 is replaced by a 0 and rounds the 0 up to 1
1	200	1 is replaced by a 0

Notice that the more rounding that is done, the less reliable the figure is. An approximate value may be sufficient for some purposes, but scientific work requires a much higher level of detail.

It is important to be aware of significant figures when you are mathematically manipulating numbers. For example, dividing 125 by 307 on a calculator gives 0.4071661238… to an infinite number of digits. But do the digits in this answer have any practical meaning, especially when you are starting with numbers that have only three significant figures each? When performing mathematical operations, there are two rules for limiting the number of significant figures in an answer—one rule is for addition and subtraction, and one rule is for multiplication and division.

> *In operations involving significant figures, the answer is reported in such a way that it reflects the reliability of the **least precise** operation. An answer is no more precise than the least precise number used to get the answer.*

Multiplication and Division

For multiplication or division, the rule is to count the number of significant figures in each number being multiplied or divided and then limit the significant figures in the answer to the lowest count. An example is as follows:

$$\underbrace{38.65}_{\text{4 sig figs}} \times \underbrace{105.93}_{\text{5 sig figs}} = \underbrace{4{,}094.1945}_{\text{reduce to 4 sig figs}}$$

The final answer, limited to four significant figures, is 4,094. The first digit dropped is 1, so we do not round up.

Scientific notation provides a way of communicating significant figures without ambiguity. You simply include all the significant figures in the leading number. For example, the number 450 has two significant figures and would be written in scientific notation

as 4.5×10^2, whereas 450.0 has four significant figures and would be written as 4.500×10^2. In scientific notation, all significant figures are listed explicitly.

Example 2.4.1

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 23.096×90.300
b. 125×9.000

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 2,085.5688, but we need to round it to five significant figures. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the tenths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 2,085.6.	2.0856×10^3

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 1,125 as the answer, but we limit it to three significant figures.	1.13×10^3

Addition and Subtraction

How are significant figures handled in calculations? It depends on what type of calculation is being performed. If the calculation is an addition or a subtraction, the rule is as follows: limit the reported answer to the rightmost column that all numbers have significant figures in common. For example, if you were to add 1.2 and 4.71, we note that the first number stops its significant figures in the tenths column, while the second number stops its significant figures in the hundredths column. We therefore limit our answer to the tenths column.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1.2 \\ +\ 4.41 \\ \hline 5.61 \end{array}$$

↑ limit final answer to the tenths column: 5.6

We drop the last digit—the 1—because it is not significant to the final answer.

The dropping of positions in sums and differences brings up the topic of rounding. Although there are several conventions, in this text we will adopt the following rule: the final answer should be rounded up if the first dropped digit is 5 or greater, and rounded down if the first dropped digit is less than 5.

$$\begin{array}{r} 77.2 \\ +\ 10.46 \\ \hline 87.66 \end{array}$$

↑ limit final answer to the tenths column and round up: 87.7

Example 2.4.2

a. 13.77 + 908.226
b. 1,027 + 611 + 363.06

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 921.996, but because 13.77 has its farthest-right significant figure in the hundredths place, we need to round the final answer to the hundredths position. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the thousandths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 922.00	$922.00 = 9.2200 \times 10^2$

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 2,001.06 as the answer, but because 611 and 1027 has its farthest-right significant figure in the ones place, the final answer must be limited to the ones position.	$2,001.06 = 2.001 \times 10^3$

Exercise 2.4.2

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 217 ÷ 903
b. 13.77 + 908.226 + 515
c. 255.0 − 99
d. 0.00666 × 321

Answer a:

$0.240 = 2.40 \times 10^{-1}$

Answer b:

$1,437 = 1.437 \times 10^3$

Answer c:

$156 = 1.56 \times 10^2$

Answer d:

$2.14 = 2.14 \times 10^0$

Remember that calculators do not understand significant figures. *You* are the one who must apply the rules of significant figures to a result from your calculator.

Calculations Involving Multiplication/Division and Addition/Subtraction

In practice, chemists generally work with a calculator and carry all digits forward through subsequent calculations. When working on paper, however, we often want to minimize the number of digits we have to write out. Because successive rounding can compound inaccuracies, intermediate rounding needs to be handled correctly. When working on paper, always round an intermediate result so as to retain at least one more digit than can be justified and carry this number into the next step in the calculation. The final answer is then rounded to the correct number of significant figures at the very end.



Video 2.4.1: Significant figures in mixed operations (https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yBntMndXQWA).



Video 2.4.2: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=__csP0NtlGI

In the worked examples in this text, we will often show the results of intermediate steps in a calculation. In doing so, we will show the results to only the correct number of significant figures allowed for that step, in effect treating each step as a separate calculation. This procedure is intended to reinforce the rules for determining the number of significant figures, but in some cases it may give a final answer that differs in the last digit from that obtained using a calculator, where all digits are carried through to the last step.

Example 2.4.3

a. 2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g
b. 137.3 s + 2(35.45 s)
c. $\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g$

Solution

a.

Explanation	Answer

Explanation	Answer
2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g = Perform multiplication first. 2 (1.008 g *4 sig figs*) = **2.016 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 1.008 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures*. **Then, perform the addition.** **2.016 g** *thousandths place* + 15.99 g *hundredths place (least precise)* = 18.006 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the hundredths place since 15.99 has its farthest right significant figure in the hundredths place (least precise).	18.01 g (rounding up)

b.

Explanation	Answer
137.3 s + 2(35.45 s) = **Perform multiplication first.** 2(35.45 s *4 sig figs*) = **70.90 s** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 35.45; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Then, perform the addition.** 137.3 s *tenths place (least precise)* + **70.90 s** *hundredths place* = 208.20 s **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 137.3 s.	208.2 s

c.

Explanation	Answer
$\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g =$ **Perform division first.** $\frac{118.7g}{2}$ *4 sig figs* = **59.35 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 118.7 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Perform subtraction next.** **59.35 g** *hundredths place* − 35.5 g *tenths place (least precise)* = 23.85 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 35.5 g.	23.9 g (rounding up)

Exercise 2.4.3

Complete the calculations and report your answers using the correct number of significant figures.

a. 5(1.008s) - 10.66 s
b. 99.0 cm+ 2(5.56 cm)

Answer a

-5.62 s

Answer b

110.2 cm

Summary

- Rounding
  - If the number to be dropped is greater than or equal to 5, increase the number to its left by 1 (e.g. 2.9699 rounded to three significant figures is 2.97).
  - If the number to be dropped is less than 5, there is no change (e.g. 4.00443 rounded to four significant figures is 4.004).
- The rule in multiplication and division is that the final answer should have the same number of significant figures as there are in the number with the fewest significant figures.
- The rule in addition and subtraction is that the answer is given the same number of decimal places as the term with the fewest decimal places.

2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement

Learning Objectives

- State the different measurement systems used in chemistry.
- Describe how prefixes are used in the metric system and identify how the prefixes milli-, centi-, and kilo- compare to the base unit.

How long is a yard? It depends on whom you ask and when you asked the question. Today we have a standard definition of the yard, which you can see marked on every football field. If you move the ball ten yards, you get a first down and it does not matter whether you are playing in Los Angeles, Dallas, or Green Bay. But at one time that yard was arbitrarily defined as the distance from the tip of the king's nose to the end of his outstretched hand. Of course, the problem there is simple: new king, new distance (and then you have to re-mark all of those football fields).

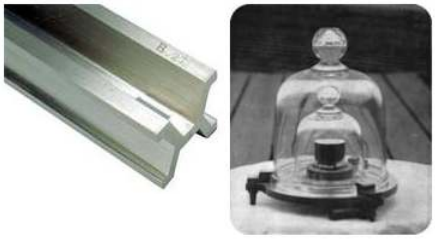


Figure 2.5.1: Meter standard (left) and Kilogram standard (right).

SI Base Units

All measurements depend on the use of units that are well known and understood. The **English system** of measurement units (inches, feet, ounces, etc.) are not used in science because of the difficulty in converting from one unit to another. The **metric system** is used because all metric units are based on multiples of 10, making conversions very simple. The metric system was originally established in France in 1795. **The International System of Units** is a system of measurement based on the metric system. The acronym **SI** is commonly used to refer to this system and stands for the French term, *Le Système International d'Unités*. The SI was adopted by international agreement in 1960 and is composed of seven base units in Table 2.5.1.

Table 2.5.1: SI Base Units of Measurement

Quantity	SI Base Unit	Symbol
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Temperature	kelvin	K
Time	second	s
Amount of a Substance	mole	mol
Electric Current	ampere	A
Luminous Intensity	candela	cd

The first units are frequently encountered in chemistry. All other measurement quantities, such as volume, force, and energy, can be derived from these seven base units.

Unfortunately, the Metric System is Not Ubiquitous

The map below shows the adoption of the SI units in countries around the world. The United States has legally adopted the metric system for measurements, but does not use it in everyday practice. Great Britain and much of Canada use a combination of metric and imperial units.

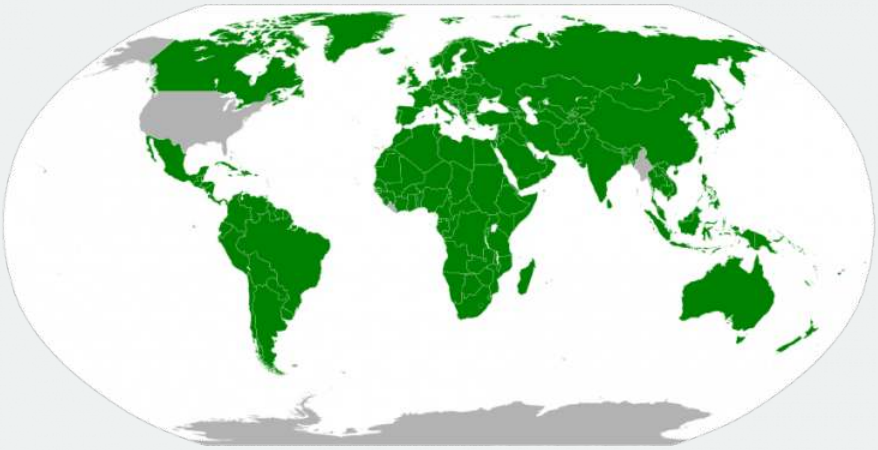


Figure 2.5.1: Areas of world using metric system (in green). Only a few countries are slow or resistant to adoption including the United States.

Prefix Multipliers

Conversions between metric system units are straightforward because the system is based on powers of ten. For example, meters, centimeters, and millimeters are all metric units of length. There are 10 millimeters in 1 centimeter and 100 centimeters in 1 meter. **Metric prefixes** are used to distinguish between units of different size. These prefixes all derive from either Latin or Greek terms. For example, *mega* comes from the Greek word $\mu\varepsilon\gamma\alpha\varsigma$, meaning "great". Table $2.5.2$ lists the most common metric prefixes and their relationship to the central unit that has no prefix. Length is used as an example to demonstrate the relative size of each prefixed unit.

Table 2.5.2: SI Prefixes

Prefix	Unit Abbreviation	Meaning	Example
giga	G	1,000,000,000	1 gigameter $(\mathrm{Gm}) = 10^9$ m
mega	M	1,000,000	1 megameter $(\mathrm{Mm}) = 10^6$ m
kilo	k	1,000	1 kilometer $(\mathrm{km}) = 1,000$ m
hecto	h	100	1 hectometer $(\mathrm{hm}) = 100$ m
deka	da	10	1 dekameter $(\mathrm{dam}) = 10$ m
		1	1 meter (m)
deci	d	1/10	1 decimeter $(\mathrm{dm}) = 0.1$ m
centi	c	1/100	1 centimeter $(\mathrm{cm}) = 0.01$ m
milli	m	1/1,000	1 millimeter $(\mathrm{mm}) = 0.001$ m
micro	μ	1/1,000,000	1 micrometer $(\mu\mathrm{m}) = 10^{-6}$ m
nano	n	1/1,000,000,000	1 nanometer $(\mathrm{nm}) = 10^{-9}$ m
pico	p	1/1,000,000,000,000	1 picometer $(\mathrm{pm}) = 10^{-12}$ m

There are a couple of odd little practices with the use of metric abbreviations. Most abbreviations are lowercase. We use "m" for meter and not "M". However, when it comes to volume, the base unit "liter" is abbreviated as "L" and not "l". So we would write 3.5 milliliters as 3.5 mL.

As a practical matter, whenever possible you should express the units in a small and manageable number. If you are measuring the weight of a material that weighs 6.5 kg, this is easier than saying it weighs 6500 g or 0.65 dag. All three are correct, but the kg

units in this case make for a small and easily managed number. However, if a specific problem needs grams instead of kilograms, go with the grams for consistency.

Example 2.5.1: Unit Abbreviations

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kiloliter
b. microsecond
c. decimeter
d. nanogram

Solutions

Solutions to Example 2.5.1

	Explanation	Answer
a	The prefix kilo means “1,000 ×,” so 1 kL equals 1,000 L.	kL
b	The prefix micro implies 1/1,000,000th of a unit, so 1 µs equals 0.000001 s.	µs
c	The prefix deci means 1/10th, so 1 dm equals 0.1 m.	dm
d	The prefix nano means 1/1000000000, so a nanogram is equal to 0.000000001 g.	ng

Exercise 2.5.1

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kilometer
b. milligram
c. nanosecond
d. centiliter

Answer a:

km

Answer b:

mg

Answer c:

ns

Answer d:

cL

Summary

- Metric prefixes derive from Latin or Greek terms. The prefixes are used to make the units manageable.
- The SI system is based on multiples of ten. There are seven basic units in the SI system. Five of these units are commonly used in chemistry.

2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.6: PROBLEM SOLVING AND UNIT CONVERSIONS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- To convert a value reported in one unit to a corresponding value in a different unit using conversion factors.

During your studies of chemistry (and physics also), you will note that mathematical equations are used in many different applications. Many of these equations have a number of different variables with which you will need to work. You should also note that these equations will often require you to use measurements with their units. Algebra skills become very important here!

CONVERTING BETWEEN UNITS WITH CONVERSION FACTORS

A **conversion factor** is a factor used to convert one unit of measurement into another. A simple conversion factor can convert meters into centimeters, or a more complex one can convert miles per hour into meters per second. Since most calculations require measurements to be in certain units, you will find many uses for conversion factors. Always remember that a conversion factor has to represent a fact; this fact can either be simple or more complex. For instance, you already know that 12 eggs equal 1 dozen. A more complex fact is that the speed of light is 1.86×10^5 miles/sec. Either one of these can be used as a conversion factor depending on what type of calculation you are working with (Table 2.6.1).

Table 2.6.1: Conversion Factors from SI units to English Units

English Units	Metric Units	Quantity
1 ounce (oz)	28.35 grams (g)	*mass
1 fluid once (oz)	29.6 mL	volume
2.205 pounds (lb)	1 kilogram (kg)	*mass
1 inch (in)	2.54 centimeters (cm)	length
0.6214 miles (mi)	1 kilometer (km)	length
1 quarter (qt)	0.95 liters (L)	volume

*Pounds and ounces are technically units of force, not mass, but this fact is often ignored by the non-scientific community.

Of course, there are other ratios which are not listed in Table 2.6.1. They may include:

- Ratios embedded in the text of the problem (using words such as *per* or *in each*, or using symbols such as / or %).
- Conversions in the metric system, as covered earlier in this chapter.
- Common knowledge ratios (such as 60 seconds = 1 minute).

If you learned the SI units and prefixes described, then you know that 1 cm is 1/100th of a meter.

$$1\ \text{cm} = \frac{1}{100}\ \text{m} = 10^{-2}\text{m}$$

or

$$100\ \text{cm} = 1\ \text{m}$$

Suppose we divide both sides of the equation by 1m (both the number *and* the unit):

$$\frac{100\ \text{cm}}{1\ \text{m}} = \frac{1\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{m}}$$

As long as we perform the same operation on both sides of the equals sign, the expression remains an equality. Look at the right side of the equation; it now has the same quantity in the numerator (the top) as it has in the denominator (the bottom). Any fraction that has the same quantity in the numerator and the denominator has a value of 1:

$$\frac{100\ \text{cm}}{1\ \text{m}} = \frac{1000\ \text{mm}}{1\ \text{m}} = \frac{1 \times 10^6 \mu\text{m}}{1\ \text{m}} = 1$$

We know that 100 cm *is* 1 m, so we have the same quantity on the top and the bottom of our fraction, although it is expressed in different units.

PERFORMING DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS

Dimensional analysis is amongst the most valuable tools that physical scientists use. Simply put, it is the conversion between an amount in one unit to the corresponding amount in a desired unit using various conversion factors. This is valuable because certain measurements are

more accurate or easier to find than others. The use of units in a calculation to ensure that we obtain the final proper units is called *dimensional analysis*.

Here is a simple example. How many centimeters are there in 3.55 m? Perhaps you can determine the answer in your head. If there are 100 cm in every meter, then 3.55 m equals 355 cm. To solve the problem more formally with a conversion factor, we first write the quantity we are given, 3.55 m. Then we multiply this quantity by a conversion factor, which is the same as multiplying it by 1. We can write 1 as $\frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$ and multiply:

$$3.55\text{ m} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$$

The 3.55 m can be thought of as a fraction with a 1 in the denominator. Because m, the abbreviation for meters, occurs in both the numerator *and* the denominator of our expression, they cancel out:

$$\frac{3.55\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{1} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\ \cancel{\text{m}}}$$

The final step is to perform the calculation that remains once the units have been canceled:

$$\frac{3.55}{1} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1} = 355\text{ cm}$$

In the final answer, we omit the 1 in the denominator. Thus, by a more formal procedure, we find that 3.55 m equals 355 cm. A generalized description of this process is as follows:

quantity (in old units) × conversion factor = quantity (in new units)

You may be wondering why we use a seemingly complicated procedure for a straightforward conversion. In later studies, the conversion problems you encounter *will not always be so simple*. If you master the technique of applying conversion factors, you will be able to solve a large variety of problems.

In the previous example, we used the fraction $\frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$ as a conversion factor. Does the conversion factor $\frac{1\text{ m}}{100\text{ cm}}$ also equal 1? Yes, it does; it has the same quantity in the numerator as in the denominator (except that they are expressed in different units). Why did we not use *that* conversion factor? If we had used the second conversion factor, the original unit would not have canceled, and the result would have been meaningless. Here is what we would have gotten:

$$3.55\text{ m} \times \frac{1\text{ m}}{100\text{ cm}} = 0.0355\frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{cm}}$$

For the answer to be meaningful, we have to *construct the conversion factor in a form that causes the original unit to cancel out*. Figure 2.6.1 shows a concept map for constructing a proper conversion.

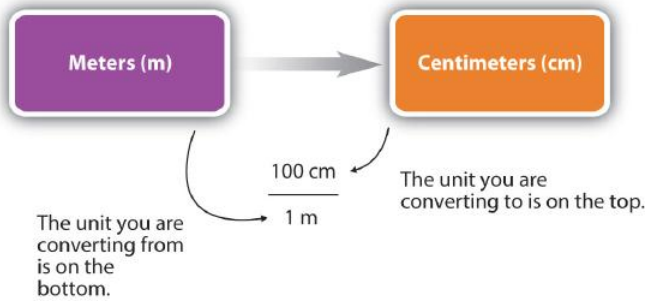


Figure 2.6.1: A Concept Map for Conversions. This is how you construct a conversion factor to convert from one unit to another. Converting meters to centimeters: the unit you are converting is on the bottom of the fraction, and the unit to convert to is on top

GENERAL STEPS IN PERFORMING DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS

1. Identify the "**given**" information in the problem. Look for a number with units to start this problem with.
2. What is the problem asking you to "**find**"? In other words, what unit will your answer have?
3. Use **ratios** and conversion factors to cancel out the units that aren't part of your answer, and leave you with units that are part of your answer.
4. When your units cancel out correctly, you are ready to do the **math**. You are multiplying fractions, so you multiply the top numbers and divide by the bottom numbers in the fractions.

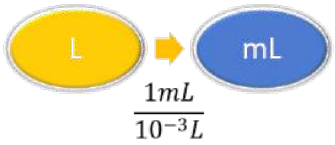
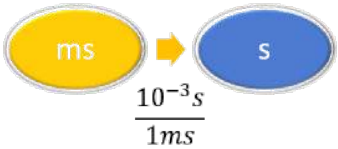
SIGNIFICANT FIGURES IN CONVERSIONS

How do conversion factors affect the determination of significant figures?

- Numbers in conversion factors based on prefix changes, such as kilograms to grams, are *not* considered in the determination of significant figures in a calculation because the numbers in such conversion factors are exact.
- Exact numbers are defined or counted numbers, not measured numbers, and can be considered as having an infinite number of significant figures. (In other words, 1 kg is exactly 1,000 g, by the definition of kilo-.)
- Counted numbers are also exact. If there are 16 students in a classroom, the number 16 is exact.
- In contrast, conversion factors that come from measurements (such as density, as we will see shortly) or that are approximations have a limited number of significant figures and should be considered in determining the significant figures of the final answer.

EXAMPLE 2.6.1

Steps for Problem Solving for Example 2.6.1 and 2.6.2

	Example 2.6.1	**Example 2.6.2**
Steps for Problem Solving	The average volume of blood in an adult male is 4.7 L. What is this volume in milliliters?	A hummingbird can flap its wings once in 18 ms. How many seconds are in 18 ms?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 4.7 L Find: mL	Given: 18 ms Find: s
List other known quantities.	$1\,mL = 10^{-3}L$	$1\,ms = 10^{-3}s$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1mL}{10^{-3}L}$	 $\frac{10^{-3}s}{1ms}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.7\ \cancel{\text{L}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mL}}{10^{-3}\ \cancel{\text{L}}} = 4,700\ \text{mL}$ or $4.7\ \cancel{\text{L}} \times \frac{1,000\ \text{mL}}{1\ \cancel{\text{L}}} = 4,700\ \text{mL}$ or 4.7 x 10^3 2SF, not ambiguous	$18\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{10^{-3}\ \text{s}}{1\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} = 0.018\ \text{s}$ or $18\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{1\ \text{s}}{1,000\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} = 0.018\ \text{s}$
Think about your result.	The amount in mL should be 1000 times larger than the given amount in L.	The amount in s should be 1/1000 the given amount in ms.

EXERCISE 2.6.1

Perform each conversion.

a. 101,000 ns to seconds
b. 32.08 kg to grams
c. 1.53 grams to cg

Answer a:

$1.01000x10^{-4}s$

Answer b:

$3.208x10^{4}g$

Answer c:

$1.53x10^{2}cg$

SUMMARY

- Conversion factors are used to convert one unit of measurement into another.
- Dimensional analysis (unit conversions) involves the use of conversion factors that will cancel unwanted units and produce the appropriate units.

2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

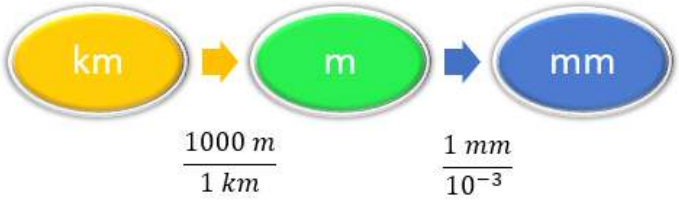
2.7: SOLVING MULTI-STEP CONVERSION PROBLEMS

MULTIPLE CONVERSIONS

Sometimes you will have to perform more than one conversion to obtain the desired unit. For example, suppose you want to convert 54.7 km into millimeters. We will set up a series of conversion factors so that each conversion factor produces the next unit in the sequence. We first convert the given amount in km to the base unit, which is meters. We know that 1,000 m =1 km.

Then we convert meters to mm, remembering that 1 mm = 10^{-3} m.

CONCEPT MAP



Convert kilometers to meters to millimeters: use conversion factors 1000 meters per 1 kilometer and 1 millimeter per 0.001 meter

CALCULATION

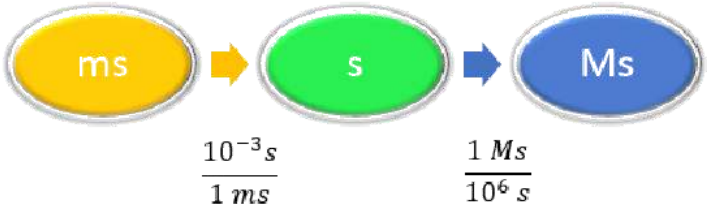
$$54.7\ \cancel{\text{km}} \times \frac{1{,}000\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{km}}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mm}}{10^{-3}\cancel{\text{m}}} = 54{,}700{,}000\ \text{mm}$$
$$= 5.47 \times 10^{7}\ \text{mm}$$

> *In each step, the previous unit is canceled and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.*

✔ EXAMPLE 2.7.1: UNIT CONVERSION

Convert 58.2 ms to megaseconds in one multi-step calculation.

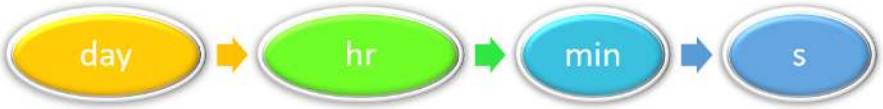
SOLUTION

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 58.2 ms Find: Ms
List other known quantities	$1ms = 10^{-3}s$ $1Ms = 10^{6}s$
Prepare a concept map.	 Convert milliseconds to seconds to microseconds: use conversion factors 0.001 second per millisecond and 1 microsecond per 1 million seconds
Calculate.	$58.2\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{10^{-3}\ \cancel{\text{s}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} \times \frac{1\ \text{Ms}}{1{,}000{,}000\ \cancel{\text{s}}} = 0.0000000582\ \text{Ms}$ $= 5.82 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{Ms}$ Neither conversion factor affects the number of significant figures in the final answer.

EXAMPLE 2.7.2: UNIT CONVERSION

How many seconds are in a day?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 1 day Find: s
List other known quantities.	1 day = 24 hours 1 hour = 60 minutes 1 minute = 60 seconds
Prepare a concept map.	 $\frac{24\text{hr}}{1\text{ day}}$ $\frac{60\text{min}}{1\text{ hr}}$ $\frac{60\text{ s}}{1\ min}$ Convert day to hour to minute to second: use conversion factors 24 hours per day, 60 minutes per hour, and 60 seconds per minute
Calculate.	$1\text{ d} \times \frac{24\text{ hr}}{1\text{ d}} \times \frac{60\text{ min}}{1\text{ hr}} \times \frac{60\text{ s}}{1\text{ min}} = 86,400\text{ s}$

EXERCISE 2.7.1

Perform each conversion in one multi-step calculation.

a. 43.007 ng to kg
b. 1005 in to ft
c. 12 mi to km

Answer a

$4.3007 \times 10^{-11} kg$

Answer b

$83.75\ ft$

Answer c

$19\ km$

CAREER FOCUS: PHARMACIST

A pharmacist dispenses drugs that have been prescribed by a doctor. Although that may sound straightforward, pharmacists in the United States must hold a doctorate in pharmacy and be licensed by the state in which they work. Most pharmacy programs require four years of education in a specialty pharmacy school. Pharmacists must know a lot of chemistry and biology so they can understand the effects that drugs (which are chemicals, after all) have on the body. Pharmacists can advise physicians on the selection, dosage, interactions, and side effects of drugs. They can also advise patients on the proper use of their medications, including when and how to take specific drugs properly. Pharmacists can be found in drugstores, hospitals, and other medical facilities. Curiously, an outdated name for pharmacist is *chemist*, which was used when pharmacists formerly did a lot of drug preparation, or *compounding*. In modern times, pharmacists rarely compound their own drugs, but their knowledge of the sciences, including chemistry, helps them provide valuable services in support of everyone's health.



A woman consulting with a pharmacist. (Public Domain; Rhoda Baer via National Cancer Institute, an agency that is part of the National Institutes of Health.)

SUMMARY

In multi-step conversion problems, the previous unit is canceled for each step and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.

2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

2.8: Units Raised to a Power

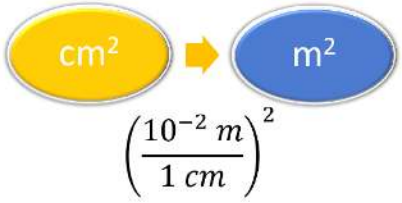
Learning Objectives

- To convert a value reported in one unit raised to a power of 10, to a corresponding value in a different unit raised to the same power of 10, using conversion factors.

Conversion factors for area and volume can also be produced by the dimensional analysis method. Just remember that if a quantity is raised to a power of 10, both the number and the unit must be raised to the same power of 10. For example, to convert 1500 cm^2 to m^2, we need to start with the relationship between centimeter and meter. We know that 1 cm = 10^{-2} m or 100 cm =1 m, but since we are given the quantity in 1500 cm^2, then we have to use the relationship:

$$1\,cm^2 = (10^{-2}\,m)^2 = 10^{-4}\,m^2$$

CONCEPT MAP



To convert centimeters squared to meters squared, use the conversion factor 0.01 meters per 1 centimeter, squared overall

CALCULATION

$$1500\ \text{cm}^2 \times \left(\frac{10^{-2}\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{cm}}\right)^2 = 0.15\ \text{m}^2$$

or

$$1500\ \text{cm}^2 \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{m}}{100\ \text{cm}}\right)^2 = 0.15\ \text{m}^2$$

or

$$1500\ \text{cm}^2 \times \frac{1\ \text{m}^2}{10,000\ \text{cm}^2} = 0.15\ \text{m}^2$$

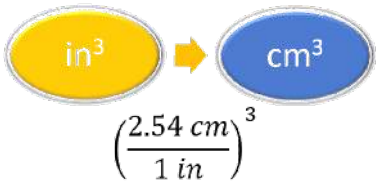
Example 2.8.1: Volume of a Sphere

What is the volume of a sphere (radius 4.30 inches) in cubic cm (cm^3)?

Solution

Solution for Example 2.8.1

Steps for Problem Solving	What is the volume of a sphere (radius 4.30 inches) in cubic cm (cm^3)?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: radius = 4.30 in Find: cm^3 (volume)
Determine other known quantities.	Volume of a sphere: V = $\frac{4}{3} \times \pi \times r^3$ = $\frac{4}{3} \times 3.1416 \times (4.30\underline{in})^3$ = $333.04 in^3$

Steps for Problem Solving	What is the volume of a sphere (radius 4.30 inches) in cubic cm (cm^3)?
Prepare a concept map.	 To convert inches cubed to centimeters cubed, use conversion factor 2.54 centimeters per 1 inch, cubed overall
Calculate.	$333.04\ \cancel{in^3}\left(\frac{2.54cm}{1\ \cancel{in}}\right)^3 = 5.46 \times 10^3 cm^3$
Think about your result.	A centimeter is a smaller unit than an inch, so the answer in cubic centimeters is larger than the given value in cubic inches.

? Exercise 2.8.1

Lake Tahoe has a surface area of 191 square miles. What is the area in square km (km^2)?

Answer

495 km^2

Contributions & Attributions

2.8: Units Raised to a Power is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.8: Units Raised to a Power** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.9: Density

Learning Objectives

- Define density.
- Use density as a conversion factor.

Density (ρ) is a physical property found by dividing the mass of an object by its volume. Regardless of the sample size, density is always constant. For example, the density of a pure sample of tungsten is always 19.25 grams per cubic centimeter. This means that whether you have one gram or one kilogram of the sample, the density will never vary. The equation, as we already know, is as follows:

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{Mass}}{\text{Volume}}$$

or just

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \tag{2.9.1}$$

Based on this equation, it's clear that density can, and does, vary from element to element and substance to substance due to differences in the relationship of mass and volume. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25° C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table 2.9.1. Notice that corn oil has a lower mass to volume ratio than water. This means that when added to water, corn oil will "float."

Table 2.9.1: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
whole milk	1.030
corn oil	0.922
mayonnaise	0.910
honey	1.420

Density can be measured for all substances—solids, liquids and gases. For solids and liquids, density is often reported using the units of g/cm^3. Densities of gases, which are significantly lower than the densities of solids and liquids, are often given using units of g/L.

Example 2.9.1: Ethyl Alcohol

Calculate the density of a 30.2 mL sample of ethyl alcohol with a mass of 23.71002 g

Solution

This is a direct application of Equation 2.9.1:

$$\rho = \frac{23.71002\,g}{30.2\,mL} = 0.785\,g/mL$$

Exercise 2.9.1

a. Find the density (in kg/L) of a sample that has a volume of 36.5 L and a mass of 10.0 kg.
b. If you have a 2.130 mL sample of acetic acid with mass 0.002234 kg, what is the density in kg/L?

Answer a

$0.274\ kg/L$

Answer b

$1.049\ kg/L$

Density as a Conversion Factor

Conversion factors can also be constructed for converting between different kinds of units. For example, density can be used to convert between the mass and the volume of a substance. Consider mercury, which is a liquid at room temperature and has a density of 13.6 g/mL. The density tells us that 13.6 g of mercury have a volume of 1 mL. We can write that relationship as follows:

13.6 g mercury = 1 mL mercury

This relationship can be used to construct two conversion factors:

$$\frac{13.6\ g}{1\ mL} = 1$$

and

$$\frac{1\ mL}{13.6\ g} = 1$$

Which one do we use? It depends, as usual, on the units we need to cancel and introduce. For example, suppose we want to know the mass of 2.0 mL of mercury. We would use the conversion factor that has milliliters on the bottom (so that the milliliter unit cancels) and grams on top, so that our final answer has a unit of mass:

$$2.0\ \cancel{\text{mL}} \times \frac{13.6\ \text{g}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mL}}} = 27.2\ \text{g} = 27\ \text{g}$$

In the last step, we limit our final answer to two significant figures because the volume quantity has only two significant figures; the 1 in the volume unit is considered an exact number, so it does not affect the number of significant figures. The other conversion factor would be useful if we were given a mass and asked to find volume, as the following example illustrates.

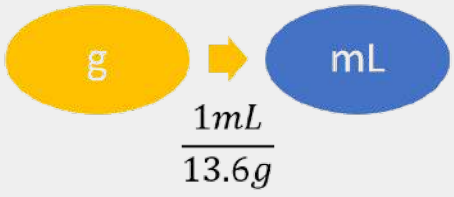
> *Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.*

Example 2.9.2: Mercury Thermometer Steps for Problem Solving

A mercury thermometer for measuring a patient's temperature contains 0.750 g of mercury. What is the volume of this mass of mercury?

Solution

Solution to Example 2.9.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 0.750 g Find: mL
List other known quantities.	13.6 g/mL (density of mercury)
Prepare a concept map.	
Calculate.	$0.750\ \cancel{\text{g}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mL}}{13.6\ \cancel{\text{g}}} = 0.055147\ldots\ \text{mL} \approx 0.0551\ \text{mL}$ We have limited the final answer to three significant figures.

? Exercise 2.9.2

What is the volume of 100.0 g of air if its density is 1.3 g/L?

Answer

$77\ L$

Summary

- Density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume.
- Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.

Contributions & Attributions

2.9: Density is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **2.9: Density** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Atoms and Elements

3.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms
3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory
3.3: The Nuclear Atom
3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
3.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons
3.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table
3.7: Chemical Elements and Symbols
3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies
3.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element’s Atoms

3: Atoms and Elements is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

3.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms

Take some aluminum foil. Cut it in half. Now there are two smaller pieces of aluminum foil. Cut one of the pieces in half again. Cut one of those smaller pieces in half again. Continue cutting, making smaller and smaller pieces of aluminum foil. It should be obvious that the pieces are still aluminum foil; they are just becoming smaller and smaller. But how far can this exercise be taken, at least in theory? Can one continue cutting the aluminum foil into halves forever, making smaller and smaller pieces? Or is there some limit, some absolute smallest piece of aluminum foil? Thought experiments like this—and the conclusions based on them—were debated as far back as the fifth century BC by Democritus and other ancient Greek philosophers (Figure 3.1.1).

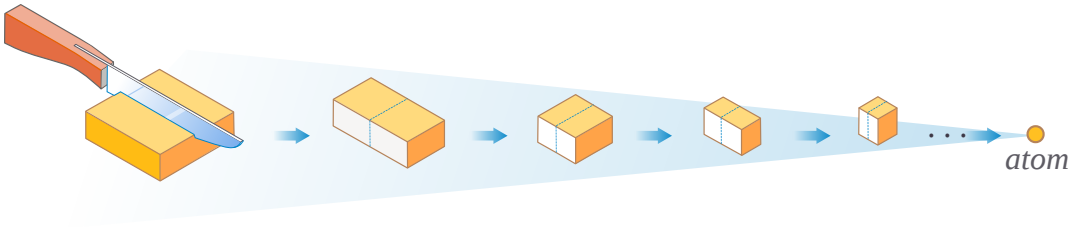


Figure 3.1.1: Democritus argued that matter, like an aluminum block, cannot be repeatedly cut in half perpetually. At some point, a limit is reached before the substance can no longer be called "aluminum"; this is the atomic limit. (CC BY-NC; Ümit Kaya via LibreTexts)

Most elements in their pure form exist as individual atoms. For example, a macroscopic chunk of iron metal is composed, microscopically, of individual atoms. Some elements, however, exist as groups of atoms called molecules. Several important elements exist as two-atom combinations and are called diatomic molecules. In representing a diatomic molecule, we use the symbol of the element and include the subscript 2 to indicate that two atoms of that element are joined together. The elements that exist as diatomic molecules are hydrogen (H_2), oxygen (O_2), nitrogen (N_2), fluorine (F_2), chlorine (Cl_2), bromine (Br_2), and iodine (I_2).

3.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

- Give a short history of the concept of the atom.
- Describe the contributions of Democritus and Dalton to atomic theory.
- Summarize Dalton's atomic theory and explain its historical development.

You learned earlier that all matter in the universe is made out of tiny building blocks called atoms. All modern scientists accept the concept of the atom, but when the concept of the atom was first proposed about 2,500 years ago, ancient philosophers laughed at the idea. It has always been difficult to convince people of the existence of things that are too small to see. We will spend some time considering the evidence (observations) that convince scientists of the existence of atoms.

Democritus and the Greek Philosophers

About 2,500 years ago, early Greek philosophers believed the entire universe was a single, huge, entity. In other words, "everything was one." They believed that all objects, all matter, and all substances were connected as a single, big, unchangeable "thing." One of the first people to propose "atoms" was a man known as Democritus. As an alternative to the beliefs of the Greek philosophers, he suggested that **atomos**, or atomon—tiny, indivisible, solid objects—make up all matter in the universe.



Figure 3.2.1: (left) Democritus by Hendrick ter Brugghen, 1628. Democritus was known as the "laughing philosopher." It was a good thing he liked to laugh, because most other philosophers were laughing at his theories. (right) British physicist and chemist John Dalton (1766-1844). Unlike the Greek philosophers, John Dalton believed in both logical thinking and experimentation.

Democritus then reasoned that changes occur when the many atomos in an object were reconnected or recombined in different ways. Democritus even extended this theory, suggesting that there were different varieties of atomos with different shapes, sizes, and masses. He thought, however, that shape, size, and mass were the only properties differentiating the different types of atomos. According to Democritus, other characteristics, like color and taste, did not reflect properties of the atomos themselves, but rather, resulted from the different ways in which the atomos were combined and connected to one another.

The early Greek philosophers tried to understand the nature of the world through reason and logic, but not through experiment and observation. As a result, they had some very interesting ideas, but they felt no need to justify their ideas based on life experiences. In a lot of ways, you can think of the Greek philosophers as being "all thought and no action." It's truly amazing how much they achieved using their minds, but because they never performed any experiments, they missed or rejected a lot of discoveries that they could have made otherwise. Greek philosophers dismissed Democritus' theory entirely. Sadly, it took over two millennia before the theory of atomos (or "atoms," as they are known today) was fully appreciated.

Greeks: "All Thought and No Action"

Greek philosophers were "all thought and no action" and did not feel the need to test their theories with reality. In contrast, Dalton's efforts were based on experimentation and testing ideas against reality.

While it must be assumed that many more scientists, philosophers, and others studied composition of matter after Democritus, a major leap forward in our understanding of the composition of matter took place in the 1800's with the work of the British scientists John Dalton. He started teaching school at age twelve, and was primarily known as a teacher. In his twenties, he moved to

the growing city of Manchester, where he was able to pursue some scientific studies. His work in several areas of science brought him a number of honors. When he died, over 40,000 people in Manchester marched at his funeral.

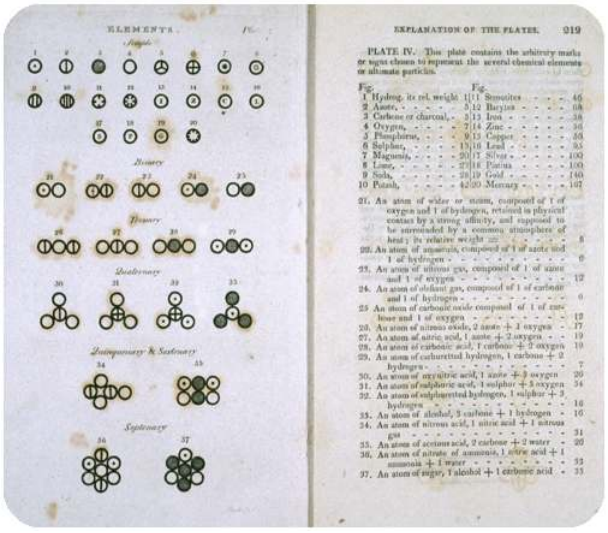
The modern atomic theory, proposed about 1803 by the English chemist John Dalton (Figure 3.2.1), is a fundamental concept that states that all elements are composed of atoms. Previously, we defined an atom as the smallest part of an element that maintains the identity of that element. Individual atoms are extremely small; even the largest atom has an approximate diameter of only 5.4×10^{-10} m. With that size, it takes over 18 million of these atoms, lined up side by side, to equal the width of your little finger (about 1 cm).

Dalton studied the weights of various elements and compounds. He noticed that matter always combined in fixed ratios based on weight, or volume in the case of gases. Chemical compounds always contain the same proportion of elements by mass, regardless of amount, which provided further support for Proust's law of definite proportions. Dalton also observed that there could be more than one combination of two elements.

From his experiments and observations, as well as the work from peers of his time, Dalton proposed a new theory of the **atom**. This later became known as Dalton's **atomic theory**. The general tenets of this theory were as follows:

- All matter is composed of extremely small particles called atoms.
- Atoms of a given element are identical in size, mass, and other properties. Atoms of different elements differ in size, mass, and other properties.
- Atoms cannot be subdivided, created, or destroyed.
- Atoms of different elements can combine in simple whole number ratios to form chemical compounds.
- In chemical reactions, atoms are combined, separated, or rearranged.

Dalton's atomic theory has been largely accepted by the scientific community, with the exception of three changes. We know now that (1) an atom can be further subdivided, (2) all atoms of an element are not identical in mass, and (3) using nuclear fission and fusion techniques, we can create or destroy atoms by changing them into other atoms.


ELEMENTS.

EXPLANATION OF THE PLATES. 219

PLATE IV. This plate contains the arbitrary marks or signs chosen to represent the several chemical elements or ultimate particles.

Figure 3.2.2: Dalton's symbols from his text "A New System of Chemical Philosophy."

The evidence for atoms is so great that few doubt their existence. In fact, individual atoms are now routinely observed with state-of-the art technologies. Moreover, they can even be used for making pretty images; or as IBM research demonstrates in Video 3.2.1, control of individual atoms can be use used create animations.



Video 3.2.1: A Boy And His Atom: The World's Smallest Movie.

A Boy and His Atom is a 2012 stop-motion animated short film released by IBM Research. The movie tells the story of a boy and a wayward atom who meet and become friends. It depicts a boy playing with an atom that takes various forms. It was made by moving carbon monoxide molecules viewed with a scanning tunneling microscope, a device that magnifies them 100 million times. These molecules were moved to create images, which were then saved as individual frames to make the film.

Summary

- 2,500 years ago, Democritus suggested that all matter in the universe was made up of tiny, indivisible, solid objects he called "atomos." However, other Greek philosophers disliked Democritus' "atomos" theory because they felt it was illogical.
- Dalton's Atomic Theory is the first scientific theory to relate chemical changes to the structure, properties, and behavior of the atom. The general tenets of this theory are:
  - All matter is composed of extremely small particles called atoms.
  - Atoms of a given element are identical in size, mass, and other properties. Atoms of different elements differ in size, mass, and other properties.
  - Atoms cannot be subdivided, created, or destroyed.
  - Atoms of different elements can combine in simple whole number ratios to form chemical compounds.
  - In chemical reactions, atoms are combined, separated, or rearranged.

3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.3: The Nuclear Atom

Learning Objectives

- Explain the observations that led to Thomson's discovery of the electron.
- Describe Thomson's "plum pudding" model of the atom and the evidence for it.
- Draw a diagram of Thomson's "plum pudding" model of the atom and explain why it has this name.
- Describe Rutherford's gold foil experiment and explain how this experiment altered the "plum pudding" model.
- Draw a diagram of the Rutherford model of the atom and label the nucleus and the electron cloud.

Dalton's Atomic Theory held up well to a lot of the different chemical experiments that scientists performed to test it. In fact, for almost 100 years, it seemed as if Dalton's Atomic Theory was the whole truth. However, in 1897, a scientist named J. J. Thomson conducted some research that suggested that Dalton's Atomic Theory was not the entire story. He suggested that the small, negatively charged particles making up the cathode ray were actually pieces of atoms. He called these pieces "corpuscles," although today we know them as **electrons**. Thanks to his clever experiments and careful reasoning, J. J. Thomson is credited with the discovery of the electron.



Figure 3.3.1: J. J. Thomson (center) concluded experiments that suggested that Dalton's (left) atomic theory was not telling the entire story. Ernest Rutherford (right) later built on Thomson's work to argue for the model nuclear atom.

Electrons and Plums

The electron was discovered by J. J. Thomson in 1897. The existence of protons was also known, as was the fact that atoms were neutral in charge. Since the intact atom had no net charge and the electron and proton had opposite charges, the next step after the discovery of subatomic particles was to figure out how these particles were arranged in the atom. This was a difficult task because of the incredibly small size of the atom. Therefore, scientists set out to design a model of what they believed the atom could look like. The goal of each **atomic model** was to accurately represent all of the experimental evidence about atoms in the simplest way possible.

Following the discovery of the electron, J.J. Thomson developed what became known as the "**plum pudding**" model in 1904. Plum pudding is an English dessert similar to a blueberry muffin. In Thomson's plum pudding model of the atom, the electrons were embedded in a uniform sphere of positive charge like blueberries stuck into a muffin. The positive matter was thought to be jelly-like or similar to a thick soup. The electrons were somewhat mobile. As they got closer to the outer portion of the atom, the positive charge in the region was greater than the neighboring negative charges, and the electron would be pulled back more toward the center region of the atom.

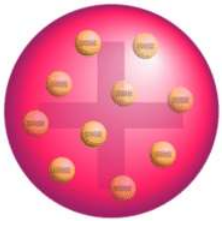


Figure 3.3.2: The "plum pudding" model.

However, this model of the atom soon gave way to a new model developed by New Zealander Ernest Rutherford (1871-1937) about five years later. Thomson did still receive many honors during his lifetime, including being awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1906 and a knighthood in 1908.

Atoms and Gold

In 1911, Rutherford and coworkers Hans Geiger and Ernest Marsden initiated a series of groundbreaking experiments that would completely change the accepted model of the atom. They bombarded very thin sheets of gold foil with fast moving **alpha particles**. Alpha particles, a type of natural radioactive particle, are positively charged particles with a mass about four times that of a hydrogen atom.

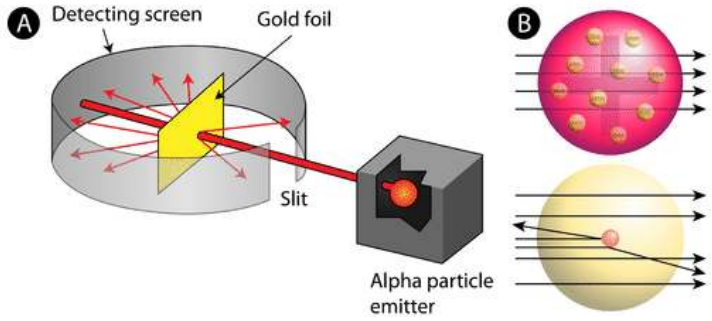


Figure 3.3.3: (A) The experimental setup for Rutherford's gold foil experiment: A radioactive element that emitted alpha particles was directed toward a thin sheet of gold foil that was surrounded by a screen which would allow detection of the deflected particles. (B) According to the plum pudding model (top), all of the alpha particles should have passed through the gold foil with little or no deflection. Rutherford found that a small percentage of alpha particles were deflected at large angles, which could be explained by an atom with a very small, dense, positively-charged nucleus at its center (bottom).

According to the accepted atomic model, in which an atom's mass and charge are uniformly distributed throughout the atom, the scientists expected that all of the alpha particles would pass through the gold foil with only a slight deflection or none at all. Surprisingly, while most of the alpha particles were indeed not deflected, a very small percentage (about 1 in 8000 particles) bounced off the gold foil at very large angles. Some were even redirected back toward the source. No prior knowledge had prepared them for this discovery. In a famous quote, Rutherford exclaimed that it was "as if you had fired a 15-inch [artillery] shell at a piece of tissue and it came back and hit you."

Rutherford needed to come up with an entirely new model of the atom in order to explain his results. Because the vast majority of the alpha particles had passed through the gold, he reasoned that most of the atom was empty space. In contrast, the particles that were highly deflected must have experienced a tremendously powerful force within the atom. He concluded that all of the positive charge and the majority of the mass of the atom must be concentrated in a very small space in the atom's interior, which he called the nucleus. The **nucleus** is the tiny, dense, central core of the atom and is composed of protons and neutrons.

Rutherford's atomic model became known as the **nuclear model**. In the nuclear atom, the protons and neutrons, which comprise nearly all of the mass of the atom, are located in the nucleus at the center of the atom. The electrons are distributed around the nucleus and occupy most of the volume of the atom. It is worth emphasizing just how small the nucleus is compared to the rest of the atom. If we could blow up an atom to be the size of a large professional football stadium, the nucleus would be about the size of a marble.

Rutherford's model proved to be an important step towards a full understanding of the atom. However, it did not completely address the nature of the electrons and the way in which they occupy the vast space around the nucleus. It was not until some years later that a full understanding of the electron was achieved. This proved to be the key to understanding the chemical properties of elements.

Atomic Nucleus

The **nucleus** (plural, nuclei) is a positively charged region at the center of the atom. It consists of two types of subatomic particles packed tightly together. The particles are protons, which have a positive electric charge, and neutrons, which are neutral in electric charge. Outside of the nucleus, an atom is mostly empty space, with orbiting negative particles called electrons whizzing through it. The figure below shows these parts of the atom.

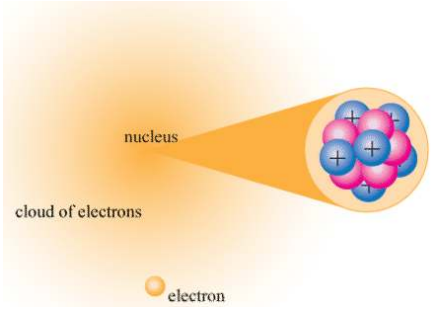


Figure 3.3.4: The nuclear atom.

The nucleus of the atom is extremely small. Its radius is only about 1/100,000 of the total radius of the atom. Electrons have virtually no mass, but protons and neutrons have a lot of mass for their size. As a result, the nucleus has virtually all the mass of an atom. Given its great mass and tiny size, the nucleus is very dense. If an object the size of a penny had the same density as the nucleus of an atom, its mass would be greater than 30 million tons!

Holding it all Together

Particles with opposite electric charges attract each other. This explains why negative electrons orbit the positive nucleus. Particles with the same electric charge repel each other. This means that the positive protons in the nucleus push apart from one another. So why doesn't the nucleus fly apart? An even stronger force—called the **strong nuclear force**—holds protons and neutrons together in the nucleus.

Summary

- Atoms are the ultimate building blocks of all matter.
- The modern atomic theory establishes the concepts of atoms and how they compose matter.
- Bombardment of gold foil with alpha particles showed that some particles were deflected.
- The nuclear model of the atom consists of a small and dense positively charged interior surrounded by a cloud of electrons.

This page titled 3.3: The Nuclear Atom is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.3: The Nuclear Atom** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Describe the locations, charges, and masses of the three main subatomic particles.
- Determine the number of protons and electrons in an atom.
- Define atomic mass unit (amu).

Dalton's Atomic Theory explained a lot about matter, chemicals, and chemical reactions. Nevertheless, it was not entirely accurate, because contrary to what Dalton believed, atoms can, in fact, be broken apart into smaller subunits or subatomic particles. We have been talking about the electron in great detail, but there are two other particles of interest to us: protons and neutrons. We already learned that J. J. Thomson discovered a negatively charged particle, called the **electron**. Rutherford proposed that these electrons orbit a positive nucleus. In subsequent experiments, he found that there is a smaller positively charged particle in the nucleus, called a **proton**. There is also a third subatomic particle, known as a neutron.

Electrons

Electrons are one of three main types of particles that make up atoms. Unlike protons and neutrons, which consist of smaller, simpler particles, electrons are fundamental particles that do not consist of smaller particles. They are a type of fundamental particle called leptons. All leptons have an electric charge of -1 or 0. Electrons are extremely small. The mass of an electron is only about 1/2000 the mass of a proton or neutron, so electrons contribute virtually nothing to the total mass of an atom. Electrons have an electric charge of -1, which is equal but opposite to the charge of a proton, which is $+1$. All atoms have the same number of electrons as protons, so the positive and negative charges "cancel out", making atoms electrically neutral.

Unlike protons and neutrons, which are located inside the nucleus at the center of the atom, electrons are found outside the nucleus. Because opposite electric charges attract one another, negative electrons are attracted to the positive nucleus. This force of attraction keeps electrons constantly moving through the otherwise empty space around the nucleus. The figure below is a common way to represent the structure of an atom. It shows the electron as a particle orbiting the nucleus, similar to the way that planets orbit the sun. However, this is an incorrect perspective, as quantum mechanics demonstrates that electrons are more complicated.



Figure 3.4.1: Electrons are much smaller than protons or neutrons. If an electron was the mass of a penny, a proton or a neutron would have the mass of a large bowling ball!

Protons

A proton is one of three main particles that make up the atom. Protons are found in the nucleus of the atom. This is a tiny, dense region at the center of the atom. Protons have a positive electrical charge of one $(+1)$ and a mass of 1 atomic mass unit (amu), which is about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms. Together with neutrons, they make up virtually all of the mass of an atom.

Neutrons

Atoms of all elements—except for most atoms of hydrogen—have neutrons in their nucleus. Unlike protons and electrons, which are electrically charged, neutrons have no charge—they are electrically neutral. That's why the neutrons in the diagram above are labeled n^0. The zero stands for "zero charge". The mass of a neutron is slightly greater than the mass of a proton, which is 1 atomic mass unit (amu). (An atomic mass unit equals about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms.) A neutron also has about the same diameter as a proton, or 1.7×10^{-15} meters.

As you might have already guessed from its name, the neutron is neutral. In other words, it has no charge whatsoever and is therefore neither attracted to nor repelled from other objects. Neutrons are in every atom (with one exception), and they are bound together with other neutrons and protons in the atomic nucleus.

Before we move on, we must discuss how the different types of subatomic particles interact with each other. When it comes to neutrons, the answer is obvious. Since neutrons are neither attracted to nor repelled from objects, they don't really interact with protons or electrons (beyond being bound into the nucleus with the protons).

Even though electrons, protons, and neutrons are all types of subatomic particles, they are not all the same size. When you compare the masses of electrons, protons, and neutrons, what you find is that electrons have an extremely small mass, compared to either protons or neutrons. On the other hand, the masses of protons and neutrons are fairly similar, although technically, the mass of a neutron is slightly larger than the mass of a proton. Because protons and neutrons are so much more massive than electrons, almost all of the mass of any atom comes from the nucleus, which contains all of the neutrons and protons.

Table 3.4.1: Properties of Subatomic Particles

Particle	Symbol	Mass (amu)	Relative Mass (proton = 1)	Relative Charge	Location
proton	p^+	1	1	+1	inside the nucleus
electron	e^-	5.45×10^{-4}	0.00055	−1	outside the nucleus
neutron	n^0	1	1	0	inside the nucleus

Table 3.4.1 gives the properties and locations of electrons, protons, and neutrons. The third column shows the masses of the three subatomic particles in "atomic mass units." An **atomic mass unit (amu)** is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of a carbon-12 atom. Atomic mass units (amu) are useful, because, as you can see, the mass of a proton and the mass of a neutron are almost exactly 1 in this unit system.

Negative and positive charges of equal magnitude cancel each other out. This means that the negative charge on an electron perfectly balances the positive charge on the proton. In other words, a neutral atom must have exactly one electron for every proton. If a neutral atom has 1 proton, it must have 1 electron. If a neutral atom has 2 protons, it must have 2 electrons. If a neutral atom has 10 protons, it must have 10 electrons. You get the idea. In order to be neutral, an atom must have the same number of electrons and protons.

Summary

- Electrons are a type of subatomic particle with a negative charge.
- Protons are a type of subatomic particle with a positive charge. Protons are bound together in an atom's nucleus as a result of the strong nuclear force.
- Neutrons are a type of subatomic particle with no charge (they are neutral). Like protons, neutrons are bound into the atom's nucleus as a result of the strong nuclear force.
- Protons and neutrons have approximately the same mass, but they are both much more massive than electrons (approximately 2,000 times as massive as an electron).
- The positive charge on a proton is equal in magnitude to the negative charge on an electron. As a result, a neutral atom must have an equal number of protons and electrons.
- The atomic mass unit (amu) is a unit of mass equal to one-twelfth the mass of a carbon-12 atom

3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons

Learning Objectives

- Define atomic number.
- Define mass number.
- Determine the number of protons, neutrons, and electrons in an atom.

It's important to be able to distinguish atoms of one element from atoms of another element. Elements are pure substances that make up all other matter, so each one is given a unique name. The names of elements are also represented by unique one- or two-letter symbols, such as H for hydrogen, C for carbon, or He for helium. However, it would more powerful if these names could be used to identify the numbers of protons and neutrons in the atoms. That's where atomic number and mass number are useful.



Figure 3.5.1: It is difficult to find qualities that differ between each element, and to distinguish one element from another. Each element, however, does have a unique number of protons. Sulfur has 16 protons, silicon has 14 protons, and gold has 79 protons. Images used with permission (public domain for sulfur and silicon, gold is licensed by CC-BY-SA-NC-ND; Alchemist-hp).

Atomic Number

Scientists distinguish between different elements by counting the number of protons in the nucleus (Table 3.5.1). If an atom has only one proton, we know that it's a hydrogen atom. An atom with two protons is always a helium atom. If scientists count four protons in an atom, they know it's a beryllium atom. An atom with three protons is a lithium atom, an atom with five protons is a boron atom, an atom with six protons is a carbon atom . . . the list goes on.

Since an atom of one element can be distinguished from an atom of another element by the number of protons in its nucleus, scientists are always interested in this number, and how this number differs between different elements. The number of protons in an atom is called its **atomic number** (Z). This number is very important because it is unique for atoms of a given element. All atoms of an element have the same number of protons, and every element has a different number of protons in its atoms. For example, all helium atoms have two protons, and no other elements have atoms with two protons.

Table 3.5.1: Atoms of the First Six Elements

Name	Protons	Neutrons	Electrons	Atomic Number (Z)	Mass Number (A)
Hydrogen	1	0	1	1	1
Helium	2	2	2	2	4
Lithium	3	4	3	3	7
Beryllium	4	5	4	4	9
Boron	5	6	5	5	11
Carbon	6	6	6	6	12

Of course, since neutral atoms have to have one electron for every proton, an element's atomic number also tells you how many electrons are in a neutral atom of that element. For example, hydrogen has an atomic number of 1. This means that an atom of hydrogen has one proton, and, if it's neutral, one electron as well. Gold, on the other hand, has an atomic number of 79, which means that an atom of gold has 79 protons, and, if it's neutral, 79 electrons as well.

Neutral Atoms

Atoms are neutral in electrical charge because they have the same number of negative electrons as positive protons (Table 3.5.1). Therefore, the atomic number of an atom also tells you how many electrons the atom has. This, in turn, determines many of the atom's chemical properties.

Mass Number

The **mass number** (A) of an atom is the total number of protons and neutrons in its nucleus. The mass of the atom is a unit called the atomic mass unit (amu). One atomic mass unit is the mass of a proton, or about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms, which is an extremely small mass. A neutron has just a tiny bit more mass than a proton, but its mass is often assumed to be one atomic mass unit as well. Because electrons have virtually no mass, just about all the mass of an atom is in its protons and neutrons. Therefore, the total number of protons and neutrons in an atom determines its mass in atomic mass units (Table 3.5.1).

Consider helium again. Most helium atoms have two neutrons in addition to two protons. Therefore the mass of most helium atoms is 4 atomic mass units (2 amu for the protons + 2 amu for the neutrons). However, some helium atoms have more or less than two neutrons. Atoms with the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Because the number of neutrons can vary for a given element, the mass numbers of different atoms of an element may also vary. For example, some helium atoms have three neutrons instead of two (these are called isotopes and are discussed in detail later on).

Why do you think that the "mass number" includes protons and neutrons, but not electrons? You know that most of the mass of an atom is concentrated in its nucleus. The mass of an atom depends on the number of protons and neutrons. You have already learned that the mass of an electron is very, very small compared to the mass of either a proton or a neutron (like the mass of a penny compared to the mass of a bowling ball). Counting the number of protons and neutrons tells scientists about the total mass of an atom.

$$\text{mass number } A = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$$

An atom's mass number is very easy to calculate, provided that you know the number of protons and neutrons in an atom.

Example 4.5.1

What is the mass number of an atom of helium that contains 2 neutrons?

Solution

$(\text{number of protons}) = 2$ (Remember that an atom of helium always has 2 protons.)

$(\text{number of neutrons}) = 2$

$\text{mass number} = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$

$$\text{mass number} = \mathbf{2 + 2 = 4}$$

A **chemical symbol** is a one- or two-letter designation of an element. Some examples of chemical symbols are O for oxygen, Zn for zinc, and Fe for iron. The first letter of a symbol is always capitalized. If the symbol contains two letters, the second letter is lower case. The majority of elements have symbols that are based on their English names. However, some of the elements that have been known since ancient times have maintained symbols that are based on their Latin names, as shown in Table 3.5.2.

Table 3.5.2: *Symbols and Latin Names for Elements*

Chemical Symbol	Name	Latin Name
Na	Sodium	Natrium
K	Potassium	Kalium
Fe	Iron	Ferrum
Cu	Copper	Cuprum
Ag	Silver	Argentum

Chemical Symbol	Name	Latin Name
Sn	Tin	Stannum
Sb	Antimony	Stibium
Au	Gold	Aurum
Pb	Lead	Plumbum

Summary

- Elements are pure substances that make up all matter, so each one is given a unique name.
- The names of elements are also represented by unique one- or two-letter symbols.
- Each element has a unique number of protons. An element's atomic number is equal to the number of protons in the nuclei of any of its atoms.
- The mass number of an atom is the sum of the protons and neutrons in the atom.
- Isotopes are atoms of the same element (same number of protons) that have different numbers of neutrons in their atomic nuclei.

3.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- Explain how elements are organized into the periodic table.
- Describe how some characteristics of elements relate to their positions on the periodic table.

In the 19th century, many previously unknown elements were discovered, and scientists noted that certain sets of elements had similar chemical properties. For example, chlorine, bromine, and iodine react with other elements (such as sodium) to make similar compounds. Likewise, lithium, sodium, and potassium react with other elements (such as oxygen) to make similar compounds. Why is this so?

In 1864, Julius Lothar Meyer, a German chemist, organized the elements by atomic mass and grouped them according to their chemical properties. Later that decade, Dmitri Mendeleev, a Russian chemist, organized all the known elements according to similar properties. He left gaps in his table for what he thought were undiscovered elements, and he made some bold predictions regarding the properties of those undiscovered elements. When elements were later discovered whose properties closely matched Mendeleev's predictions, his version of the table gained favor in the scientific community. Because certain properties of the elements repeat on a regular basis throughout the table (that is, they are periodic), it became known as the periodic table.

> *Mendeleev had to list some elements out of the order of their atomic masses to group them with other elements that had similar properties.*

The periodic table is one of the cornerstones of chemistry because it organizes all of the known elements on the basis of their chemical properties. A modern version is shown in Figure 3.6.1. Most periodic tables provide additional data (such as atomic mass) in a box that contains each element's symbol. The elements are listed in order of atomic number.

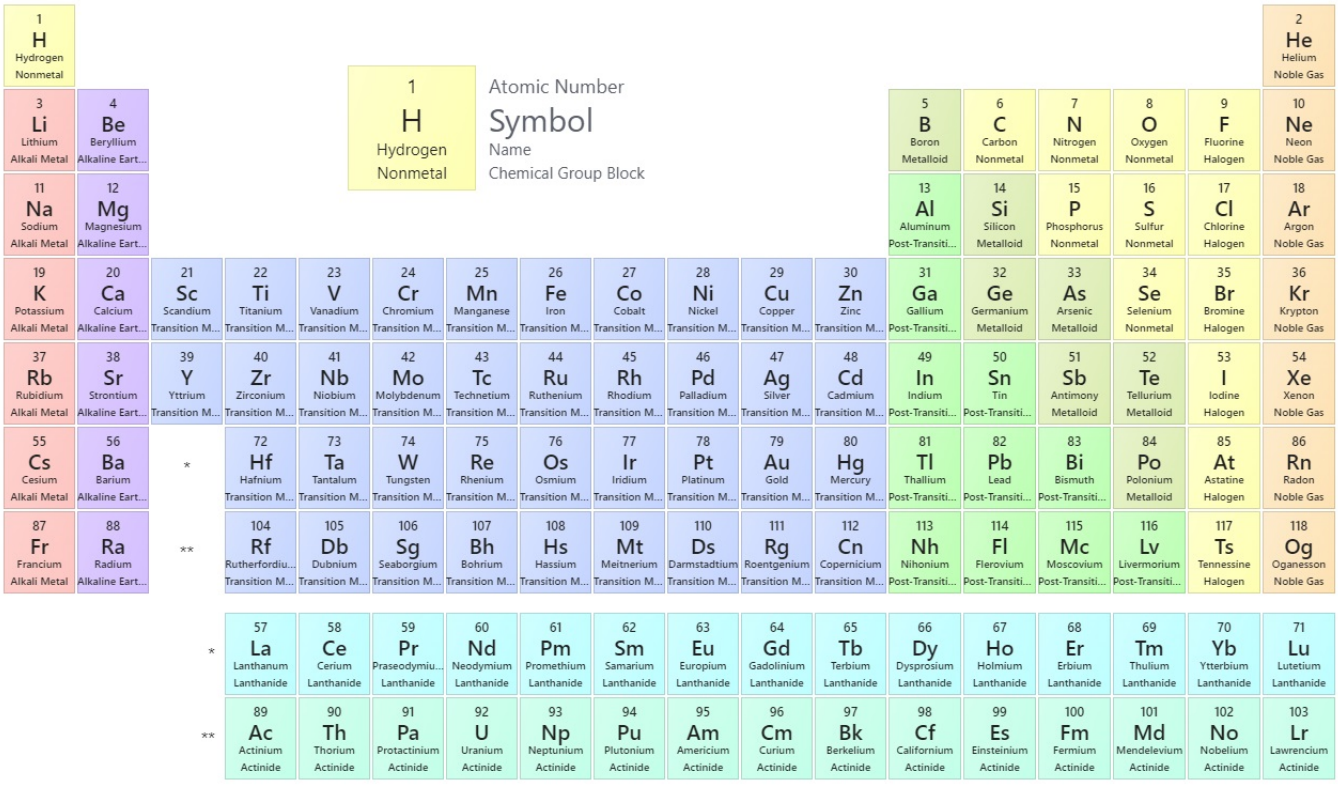


Figure 3.6.1: A Modern Periodic Table. A modern periodic table lists elements left to right by atomic number. An interactive Periodic table can be found Periodic Table of Elements. (Public Domain; PubChem via NIH)

Features of the Periodic Table

Elements that have similar chemical properties are grouped in columns called groups (or families). As well as being numbered, some of these groups have names—for example, *alkali metals* (the first column of elements), *alkaline earth metals* (the second column of elements), *halogens* (the next-to-last column of elements), and *noble gases* (the last column of elements).

> *The word halogen comes from the Greek for "salt maker" because these elements combine with other elements to form a group of compounds called salts.*

To Your Health: Radon

Radon is an invisible, odorless noble gas that is slowly released from the ground, particularly from rocks and soils whose uranium content is high. Because it is a noble gas, radon is not chemically reactive. Unfortunately, it is radioactive, and increased exposure to it has been correlated with an increased lung cancer risk.

Because radon comes from the ground, we cannot avoid it entirely. Moreover, because it is denser than air, radon tends to accumulate in basements, which if improperly ventilated can be hazardous to a building's inhabitants. Fortunately, specialized ventilation minimizes the amount of radon that might collect. Special fan-and-vent systems are available that draw air from below the basement floor, before it can enter the living space, and vent it above the roof of a house.

After smoking, radon is thought to be the second-biggest *preventable* cause of lung cancer in the United States. The American Cancer Society estimates that 10% of all lung cancers are related to radon exposure. There is uncertainty regarding what levels of exposure cause cancer, as well as what the exact causal agent might be (either radon or one of its breakdown products, many of which are also radioactive and, unlike radon, not gases). The US Environmental Protection Agency recommends testing every floor below the third floor for radon levels to guard against long-term health effects.

Each row of elements on the periodic table is called a period. Periods have different lengths; the first period has only 2 elements (hydrogen and helium), while the second and third periods have 8 elements each. The fourth and fifth periods have 18 elements each, and later periods are so long that a segment from each is removed and placed beneath the main body of the table.

Certain elemental properties become apparent in a survey of the periodic table as a whole. Every element can be classified as either a metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid (or semi metal), as shown in Figure 3.6.2. A **metal** is a substance that is shiny, typically (but not always) silvery in color, and an excellent conductor of electricity and heat. Metals are also malleable (they can be beaten into thin sheets) and ductile (they can be drawn into thin wires). A **nonmetal** is typically dull and a poor conductor of electricity and heat. Solid nonmetals are also very brittle. As shown in Figure 3.6.2, metals occupy the left three-fourths of the periodic table, while nonmetals (except for hydrogen) are clustered in the upper right-hand corner of the periodic table. The elements with properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals are called **metalloids** (or **semi-metals**). Elements adjacent to the bold line in the right-hand portion of the periodic table have semimetal properties.

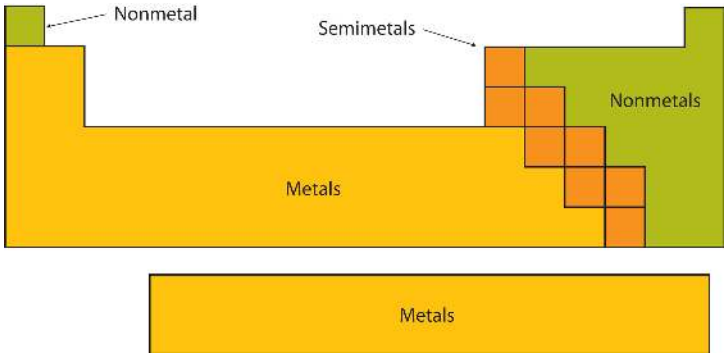


Figure 3.6.2: Types of Elements. Elements are either metals, nonmetals, or metalloids (or semi metals). Each group is located in a different part of the periodic table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

Example 3.6.1

Based on its position in the periodic table, classify each element below as metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid.

a. Se

b. Mg
c. Ge

Solution

a. In Figure 3.6.1, selenium lies above and to the right of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a nonmetal.
b. Magnesium lies to the left of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metal.
c. Germanium lies within the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metalloid.

? Exercise 3.6.1

Based on its location in the periodic table, do you expect indium to be a nonmetal, a metal, or a metalloid?

Answer

Indium is a metal.

Another way to categorize the elements of the periodic table is shown in Figure 3.6.3. The first two columns on the left and the last six columns on the right are called the main group elements. The ten-column block between these columns contains the **transition metals**. The two rows beneath the main body of the periodic table contain the **inner transition metals**. The elements in these two rows are also referred to as, respectively, the **lanthanide metals** and the **actinide metals**.

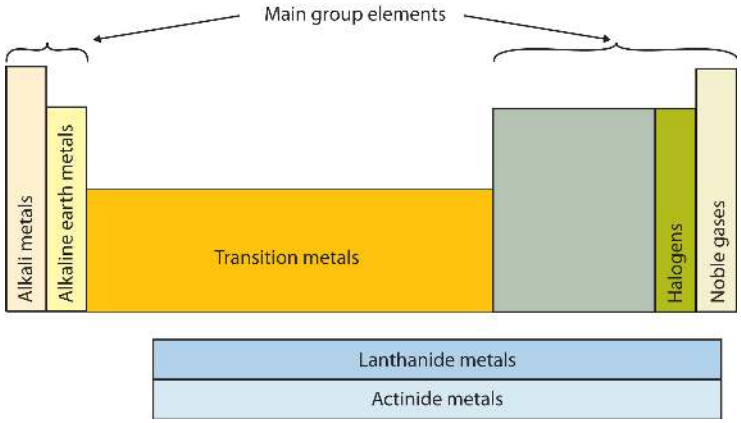


Figure 3.6.3: Special Names for Sections of the Periodic Table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

Sections of period table: Alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, transition metals, halogens, noble gases, lanthanide metals, actinide metals.

Descriptive Names

As previously noted, the periodic table is arranged so that elements with similar chemical behaviors are in the same group. Chemists often make general statements about the properties of the elements in a group using descriptive names with historical origins.

Group 1: The Alkali Metals

The alkali metals are lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, cesium, and francium. Hydrogen is unique in that it is generally placed in Group 1, but it is not a metal.

The compounds of the alkali metals are common in nature and daily life. One example is table salt (sodium chloride); lithium compounds are used in greases, in batteries, and as drugs to treat patients who exhibit manic-depressive, or bipolar, behavior. Although lithium, rubidium, and cesium are relatively rare in nature, and francium is so unstable and highly radioactive that it exists in only trace amounts, sodium and potassium are the seventh and eighth most abundant elements in Earth's crust, respectively.



Video: Alkali metals in water - Chemical elements: properties and reactions. (The Open University via https://youtu.be/6ZY6d6jrq-0)

Group 2: The Alkaline Earth Metals

The alkaline earth metals are beryllium, magnesium, calcium, strontium, barium, and radium. Beryllium, strontium, and barium are rare, and radium is unstable and highly radioactive. In contrast, calcium and magnesium are the fifth and sixth most abundant elements on Earth, respectively; they are found in huge deposits of limestone and other minerals.

Group 17: The Halogens

The halogens are fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, and astatine. The name halogen is derived from the Greek words for “salt forming,” which reflects that all of the halogens react readily with metals to form compounds, such as sodium chloride and calcium chloride (used in some areas as road salt).

Compounds that contain the fluoride ion are added to toothpaste and the water supply to prevent dental cavities. Fluorine is also found in Teflon coatings on kitchen utensils. Although chlorofluorocarbon propellants and refrigerants are believed to lead to the depletion of Earth’s ozone layer and contain both fluorine and chlorine, the latter is responsible for the adverse effect on the ozone layer. Bromine and iodine are less abundant than chlorine, and astatine is so radioactive that it exists in only negligible amounts in nature.

Group 18: The Noble Gases

The noble gases are helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon. Because the noble gases are composed of only single atoms, they are called monatomic. At room temperature and pressure, they are unreactive gases. Because of their lack of reactivity, for many years they were called inert gases or rare gases. However, the first chemical compounds containing the noble gases were prepared in 1962. Although the noble gases are relatively minor constituents of the atmosphere, natural gas contains substantial amounts of helium. Because of its low reactivity, argon is often used as an unreactive (inert) atmosphere for welding and in light bulbs. The red light emitted by neon in a gas discharge tube is used in neon lights.

Example 3.6.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Cl

Solution

a. Lithium is an alkali metal (Group 1)
b. Argon is a noble gas (Group 18)
c. Chlorine is a halogen (Group 17)

Exercise 3.6.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. F
b. Ca
c. Kr

Answer a:

Fluorine is a halogen (Group 17).

Answer b:

Calcium is a alkaline earth metal (Group 2).

Answer c:

Krypton is a noble gas (Group 18).

Example 3.6.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Am
d. Fe

Solution

a. Lithium is a metal.
b. Argon is a non metal.
c. Americium is an inner transition metal.
d. Iron is a transition metal.

Exercise 3.6.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. F
b. U
c. Cu

Answer a:

Fluorine is a nonmetal.

Answer b:

Uranium is a metal (and a inner transition metal too).

Answer c:

Copper is a metal (and a transition metal too).

Summary

The periodic table is an arrangement of the elements in order of increasing atomic number. Elements that exhibit similar chemistry appear in vertical columns called groups (numbered 1–18 from left to right); the seven horizontal rows are called periods. Some of the groups have widely-used common names, including the alkali metals (Group 1) and the alkaline earth metals (Group 2) on the far left, and the halogens (Group 17) and the noble gases (Group 18) on the far right.

The elements can be broadly divided into metals, nonmetals, and semi metals. Semi metals exhibit properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals. Metals are located on the left of the periodic table, and nonmetals are located on the upper right. They are separated by a diagonal band of semi metals. Metals are lustrous, good conductors of electricity, and readily shaped (they

are ductile and malleable). Solid nonmetals are generally brittle and poor electrical conductors. Other important groupings of elements in the periodic table are the main group elements, the transition metals, and the inner transition metals (the lanthanides, and the actinides).

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph H., William S. Harwood, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education, Inc., 2007.
2. Sisler, Harry H. Electronic structure, properties, and the periodic law. New york; Reinhold publishing corporation, 1963.
3. Petrucci, Ralph H., Carey Bissonnette, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. Custom Edition for CHEM 2. Pearson Learning Solutions, 2010.

Contributions & Attributions

3.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.7: Chemical Elements and Symbols

Learning Objectives

- Identify names and symbols of common chemical elements.
- Represent a chemical compound with a chemical formula.

An element is a pure substance that cannot be broken down into simpler chemical substances. There are about 90 naturally occurring elements known on Earth. Using technology, scientists have been able to create nearly 30 additional elements that do not occur in nature. Today, chemistry recognizes 118 elements—some of which were created an atom at a time. Figure 3.7.1 shows some of the chemical elements.



Figure 3.7.1: Samples of Elements. Gold is a yellowish solid, iron is a silvery solid, while mercury is a silvery liquid at room temperature. © Thinkstock

Elemental Names and Symbols

Each element has a name. Some of these names date from antiquity, while others are quite new. Today, the names for new elements are proposed by their discoverers but must be approved by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry, an international organization that makes recommendations concerning all kinds of chemical terminology.

> *Today, new elements are usually named after famous scientists.*

The names of the elements can be cumbersome to write in full, especially when combined to form the names of compounds. Therefore, each element name is abbreviated as a one- or two-letter chemical symbol. By convention, the first letter of a chemical symbol is a capital letter, while the second letter (if there is one) is a lowercase letter. The first letter of the symbol is usually the first letter of the element's name, while the second letter is some other letter from the name. Some elements have symbols that derive from earlier, mostly Latin names, so the symbols may not contain any letters from the English name. Table 3.7.1 lists the names and symbols of some of the most familiar elements.

Table 3.7.1: Element Names and Symbols

Element Name	Element Symbol	Element Name	Element Symbol
aluminum	Al	magnesium	Mg
argon	Ar	manganese	Mn
arsenic	As	mercury	Hg*
barium	Ba	neon	Ne
bismuth	Bi	nickel	Ni
boron	B	nitrogen	N
bromine	Br	oxygen	O
calcium	Ca	phosphorus	P
carbon	C	platinum	Pt
chlorine	Cl	potassium	K*

Element Name	Element Symbol	Element Name	Element Symbol
chromium	Cr	silicon	Si
copper	Cu*	silver	Ag*
fluorine	F	sodium	Na*
gold	Au*	strontium	Sr
helium	He	sulfur	S
hydrogen	H	tin	Sn*
iron	Fe	tungsten	W†
iodine	I	uranium	U
lead	Pb*	zinc	Zn
lithium	Li	zirconium	Zr

*The symbol comes from the Latin name of element. †The symbol for tungsten comes from its German name—*wolfram*.

Element names in languages other than English are often close to their Latin names. For example, gold is *oro* in Spanish and *or* in French (close to the Latin *aurum*), tin is *estaño* in Spanish (compare to *stannum*), lead is *plomo* in Spanish and *plomb* in French (compare to *plumbum*), silver is *argent* in French (compare to *argentum*), and iron is *fer* in French and *hierro* in Spanish (compare to *ferrum*). The closeness is even more apparent in pronunciation than in spelling.

Elements in Nature and the Human Body

The elements vary widely in abundance. In the universe as a whole, the most common element is hydrogen (about 90% of atoms), followed by helium (most of the remaining 10%). All other elements are present in relatively minuscule amounts, as far as we can detect. On the planet Earth, however, the situation is rather different (Table 3.7.2). Oxygen makes up 46.1% of the mass of Earth's crust (the relatively thin layer of rock forming Earth's surface), mostly in combination with other elements, while silicon makes up 28.2%. Hydrogen, the most abundant element in the universe, makes up only 0.14% of Earth's crust.

Table 3.7.2: Elemental Composition of Earth and the Human Body

Earth's Crust		**Human Body**	
Element	**Percentage**	**Element**	**Percentage**
oxygen	46.1	oxygen	61
silicon	28.2	carbon	23
aluminum	8.23	hydrogen	10
iron	5.53	nitrogen	2.6
calcium	4.15	calcium	1.4
sodium	2.36	phosphorus	1.1
magnesium	2.33	sulfur	0.20
potassium	2.09	potassium	0.20
titanium	0.565	sodium	0.14
hydrogen	0.14	chlorine	0.12
phosphorus	0.105	magnesium	0.027

Earth's Crust		Human Body	
Element	**Percentage**	**Element**	**Percentage**
all others	0.174	silicon	0.026

Source: D. R. Lide, ed. *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed. (Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2008–9), 14–17.

Table 3.7.2 also lists the relative abundances of elements in the human body. If you compare both compositions, you will find disparities between the percentage of each element in the human body and on Earth. Oxygen has the highest percentage in both cases, but carbon, the element with the second highest percentage in the body, is relatively rare on Earth and does not even appear as a separate entry; carbon is part of the 0.174% representing "other" elements.

How does the human body concentrate so many apparently rare elements? The relative amounts of elements in the body have less to do with their abundances on Earth than with their availability in a form we can assimilate. We obtain oxygen from the air we breathe and the water we drink. We also obtain hydrogen from water. On the other hand, although carbon is present in the atmosphere as carbon dioxide, and about 80% of the atmosphere is nitrogen, we obtain those two elements from the food we eat, not the air we breathe.

Looking Closer: The Phosphorous Bottleneck

There is an element that we need more of in our bodies than is proportionately present in Earth's crust, and *this* element is not easily accessible. Phosphorus makes up 1.1% of the human body but only 0.105% of Earth's crust. We need phosphorus for our bones and teeth, and it is a crucial component of all living cells. Unlike carbon, which can be obtained from carbon dioxide, there is no phosphorus compound present in our surroundings that can serve as a convenient source. Phosphorus, then, is nature's bottleneck. Its availability limits the amount of life our planet can sustain.

Higher forms of life, such as humans, can obtain phosphorus by selecting a proper diet (plenty of protein); but lower forms of life, such as algae, must absorb it from the environment. When phosphorus-containing detergents were introduced in the 1950s, wastewater from normal household activities greatly increased the amount of phosphorus available to algae and other plant life. Lakes receiving this wastewater experienced sudden increases in growth of algae. When the algae died, concentrations of bacteria that ate the dead algae increased. Because of the large bacterial concentrations, the oxygen content of the water dropped, causing fish to die in large numbers. This process, called *eutrophication*, is considered a negative environmental impact.



Figure 3.7.2: The eutrophication of the Potomac River is evident from the bright green water, caused by a dense bloom of cyanobacteria. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Alexandr Trubetskoy via Wikipedia)

Today, many detergents are made without phosphorus so the detrimental effects of eutrophication are minimized. You may even see statements to that effect on detergent boxes. It can be sobering to realize how much impact a single element can have on life—or the ease with which human activity can affect the environment.

Example 3.7.1

Write the chemical symbol for each element without consulting the above tables.

a. bromine
b. boron
c. carbon
d. calcium
e. gold

Strategy: The symbol for some of the more common elements is the first one or two letters of the element name. Test yourself to see if you know the symbol, then check your answer in the above tables. You will learn the element symbols as you practice.

Solution

a. Br
b. B
c. C
d. Ca
e. Au

Exercise 3.7.1

Write the chemical symbol for each element without consulting the above tables.

a. manganese
b. magnesium
c. neon
d. nitrogen
e. silver

Answer a

Mn

Answer b

Mg

Answer c

Ne

Answer d

N

Answer e

Ag

Example 3.7.2

What element is represented by each chemical symbol?

a. Na
b. Hg
c. P
d. K
e. I

a. sodium
b.
c. mercury

d.
e. phosphorus
f.
g. potassium
h. iodine
i.

? Exercise 3.7.2

What element is represented by each chemical symbol?

a. Pb
b. Sn
c. U
d. O
e. F

Answer a

lead

Answer b

tin

Answer c

uranium

Answer d

oxygen

Answer e

fluorine

Chemical Formulas

A **chemical formula** is an expression that shows each of the elements in a compound and the relative proportions of those elements. Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen in a 2:1 ratio and its chemical formula is $\mathrm{H_2O}$. Sulfuric acid is one of the most widely produced chemicals in the United States and is composed of the elements hydrogen, sulfur, and oxygen; the chemical formula for sulfuric acid is $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$. Sucrose (table sugar) consists of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen in a 12:22:11 ratio. The chemical formula of these are:

$\underbrace{\mathrm{H_2O}}$	$\underbrace{\mathrm{H_2SO_4}}$	$\underbrace{\mathrm{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}}$
2 H atoms	2 H atoms	12 H atoms
1 O atom	1 S atom	22 C atoms
	4 O atoms	11 O atoms

Notice that the oxygen and sulfur in water and sulfuric acid, respectively, do not have a "1" subscripts - this is assumed.

Sometimes certain groups of atoms are bonded together within the chemical and act as a single unit. Polyatomic ions will be discussed later and are enclosed in parenthesis followed by a subscript if more than one of the same ion exist in a chemical formula. For example, the formula $\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}$ represents a compound with:

- 3 Ca atoms and
- 2 $\mathrm{PO_4^{3-}}$ polyatomic ions

To count the total number of atoms for formulas with polyatomic ions enclosed in parenthesis, use the subscript as a multiplier for each atom or number of atoms.

$$\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}$$

and decomposing this to elements gives

- 3 Ca atoms
- 2×1 P atoms
- 2×4 O atoms

That is, 3 Ca atoms, 2 P atoms, and 8 O atoms

Chemical formula can be used in chemical equations. For example, the reaction of hydrogen gas ($\mathrm{H_2}$) burning with oxygen gas ($\mathrm{O_2}$) to form water ($\mathrm{H_2O}$) is written as:

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}$$

? Exercise 3.7.3

Identify the elements in each of the following chemical formulas and what is the ratio of different elements in the chemical formulas:

a. NaOH
b. NaCl
c. $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$
d. $\mathrm{CH_3COOH}$

Answer a

Sodium Na, oxygen O, and hydrogen H are present. This is sodium hydroxide and is also known as lye or caustic soda.

This is a 1:1:1 ratio of sodium, oxygen, and hydrogen, respectively.

Answer b

Sodium Na and chlorine O are present. This is sodium chloride and is also known as table salt.

This is a 1:1 ratio of sodium and chlorine, respectively.

Answer c

Calcium Ca and Chlorine Cl are present. This is calcium chloride and is a different type of salt than sodium chloride.

This is a 1:2 ratio of calcium and chlorine, respectively.

Answer d

Carbon C, Oxygen O, and Hydrogen H are present. This is acetic acid and is also known as vinegar.

This is a 2:2:4 (or 1:1:2) ratio of carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen, respectively.

Key Takeaways

- All matter is composed of elements, which are represented by one- or two-letter symbols.
- Chemical compounds are represented by formulas using element symbols and numerical subscripts to represent the ratio of each element in the compound.

Contributors and Attributions

- Anonymous

3.7: Chemical Elements and Symbols is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

Learning Objectives

- Explain what isotopes are and how an isotope affects an element's atomic mass.
- Determine the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons of an element with a given mass number.

All atoms of the same element have the same number of protons, but some may have different numbers of neutrons. For example, all carbon atoms have six protons, and most have six neutrons as well. But some carbon atoms have seven or eight neutrons instead of the usual six. Atoms of the same element that differ in their numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Many isotopes occur naturally. Usually one or two isotopes of an element are the most stable and common. Different isotopes of an element generally have the same physical and chemical properties because they have the same numbers of protons and electrons.

An Example: Hydrogen Isotopes

Hydrogen is an example of an element that has isotopes. Three isotopes of hydrogen are modeled in Figure 3.8.1. Most hydrogen atoms have just one proton, one electron, and lack a neutron. These atoms are just called hydrogen. Some hydrogen atoms have one neutron as well. These atoms are the isotope named deuterium. Other hydrogen atoms have two neutrons. These atoms are the isotope named tritium.

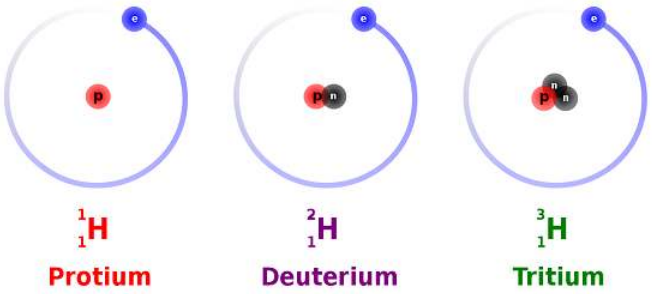


Figure 3.8.1: The three most stable isotopes of hydrogen: protium (A = 1), deuterium (A = 2), and tritium (A = 3). (CC SA-BY 3.0; Balajijagadesh via Wikipedia).

For most elements other than hydrogen, isotopes are named for their mass number. For example, carbon atoms with the usual 6 neutrons have a mass number of 12 (6 protons + 6 neutrons = 12), so they are called carbon-12. Carbon atoms with 7 neutrons have an atomic mass of 13 (6 protons + 7 neutrons = 13). These atoms are the isotope called carbon-13.

Example 3.8.1: Lithium Isotopes

a. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 3 neutrons?
b. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 4 neutrons?

Solution

A lithium atom contains 3 protons in its nucleus irrespective of the number of neutrons or electrons.

a.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{atomic number} &= (\text{number of protons}) = 3\\ &\quad (\text{number of neutrons}) = 3\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mass number} &= (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})\\ \text{mass number} &= 3 + 3\\ &= 6\end{aligned}$$

b.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{atomic number} &= (\text{number of protons}) = 3\\ &\quad (\text{number of neutrons}) = 4\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mass number} &= (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons}) \\ \text{mass number} &= 3 + 4 \\ &= 7\end{aligned}$$

Notice that because the lithium atom always has 3 protons, the atomic number for lithium is always 3. The mass number, however, is 6 in the isotope with 3 neutrons, and 7 in the isotope with 4 neutrons. In nature, only certain isotopes exist. For instance, lithium exists as an isotope with 3 neutrons, and as an isotope with 4 neutrons, but it doesn't exist as an isotope with 2 neutrons or as an isotope with 5 neutrons.

Stability of Isotopes

Atoms need a certain ratio of neutrons to protons to have a stable nucleus. Having too many or too few neutrons relative to protons results in an unstable, or radioactive, nucleus that will sooner or later break down to a more stable form. This process is called radioactive decay. Many isotopes have radioactive nuclei, and these isotopes are referred to as radioisotopes. When they decay, they release particles that may be harmful. This is why radioactive isotopes are dangerous and why working with them requires special suits for protection. The isotope of carbon known as carbon-14 is an example of a radioisotope. In contrast, the carbon isotopes called carbon-12 and carbon-13 are stable.

This whole discussion of isotopes brings us back to Dalton's Atomic Theory. According to Dalton, atoms of a given element are identical. But if atoms of a given element can have different numbers of neutrons, then they can have different masses as well! How did Dalton miss this? It turns out that elements found in nature exist as constant uniform mixtures of their naturally occurring isotopes. In other words, a piece of lithium always contains both types of naturally occurring lithium (the type with 3 neutrons and the type with 4 neutrons). Moreover, it always contains the two in the same relative amounts (or "relative abundance"). In a chunk of lithium, 93% will always be lithium with 4 neutrons, while the remaining 7% will always be lithium with 3 neutrons.

Dalton always experimented with large chunks of an element—chunks that contained all of the naturally occurring isotopes of that element. As a result, when he performed his measurements, he was actually observing the averaged properties of all the different isotopes in the sample. For most of our purposes in chemistry, we will do the same thing and deal with the average mass of the atoms. Luckily, aside from having different masses, most other properties of different isotopes are similar.

There are two main ways in which scientists frequently show the mass number of an atom they are interested in. It is important to note that the mass number is *not* given on the periodic table. These two ways include writing a nuclear symbol or by giving the name of the element with the mass number written.

To write a **nuclear symbol**, the mass number is placed at the upper left (superscript) of the chemical symbol and the atomic number is placed at the lower left (subscript) of the symbol. The complete nuclear symbol for helium-4 is drawn below:



Nuclear symbol for helium-4: The element symbol is He, the mass number to the top left is 4, and the atomic number to the bottom left is 2

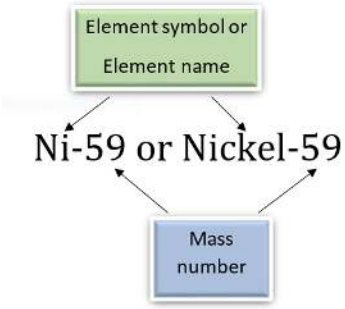
The following nuclear symbols are for a nickel nucleus with 31 neutrons and a uranium nucleus with 146 neutrons.

$$^{59}_{28}\text{Ni}$$

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U}$$

In the nickel nucleus represented above, the atomic number 28 indicates that the nucleus contains 28 protons, and therefore, it must contain 31 neutrons in order to have a mass number of 59. The uranium nucleus has 92 protons, as all uranium nuclei do; and this particular uranium nucleus has 146 neutrons.

Another way of representing isotopes is by adding a hyphen and the mass number to the chemical name or symbol. Thus the two nuclei would be Nickel-59 or Ni-59 and Uranium-238 or U-238, where 59 and 238 are the mass numbers of the two atoms, respectively. Note that the mass numbers (not the number of neutrons) are given to the side of the name.



Example 3.8.2: Potassium-40

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of $^{40}_{19}\text{K}$?

Solution

$$\text{atomic number} = (\text{number of protons}) = 19$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 19$$

The mass number, 40, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 40 - 19 = 21.$$

Example 3.8.3: Zinc-65

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of zinc-65?

Solution

$$\text{number of protons} = 30$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 30$$

The mass number, 65, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 65 - 30 = 35$$

Exercise 3.8.3

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in each atom?

a. $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$
b. Na-24
c. $^{45}_{20}\text{Ca}$
d. Sr-90

Answer a:

27 protons, 27 electrons, 33 neutrons

Answer b:

11 protons, 11 electrons, 13 neutrons

Answer c:

20 protons, 20 electrons, 25 neutrons

Answer d:

38 protons, 38 electrons, 52 neutrons

Summary

- The number of protons is always the same in atoms of the same element.
- The number of neutrons can be different, even in atoms of the same element.
- Atoms of the same element that contain the same number of protons, but different numbers of neutrons, are known as **isotopes**.
- Isotopes of any given element all contain the same number of protons, so they have the same atomic number (for example, the atomic number of helium is always 2).
- Isotopes of a given element contain different numbers of neutrons, therefore, different isotopes have different mass numbers.

3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Explain what is meant by the atomic mass of an element.
- Calculate the atomic mass of an element from the masses and relative percentages of the isotopes of the element.

In chemistry we very rarely deal with only one isotope of an element. We use a mixture of the isotopes of an element in chemical reactions and other aspects of chemistry, because all of the isotopes of an element react in the same manner. That means that we rarely need to worry about the mass of a specific isotope, but instead we need to know the average mass of the atoms of an element. Using the masses of the different isotopes and how abundant each isotope is, we can find the average mass of the atoms of an element. The **atomic mass** of an element is the weighted average mass of the atoms in a naturally occurring sample of the element. Atomic mass is typically reported in atomic mass units.

Calculating Atomic Mass

You can calculate the atomic mass (or average mass) of an element provided you know the **relative abundance** (the fraction of an element that is a given isotope), the element's naturally occurring isotopes, and the masses of those different isotopes. We can calculate this by the following equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (\%_1)\,(\text{mass}_1) + (\%_2)\,(\text{mass}_2) + \cdots$$

Look carefully to see how this equation is used in the following examples.

Example 3.9.1: Boron Isotopes

Boron has two naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of boron, 20% of the atoms are B-10, which is an isotope of boron with 5 neutrons and mass of $10\ \text{amu}$. The other 80% of the atoms are B-11, which is an isotope of boron with 6 neutrons and a mass of $11\ \text{amu}$. What is the atomic mass of boron?

Solution

Boron has two isotopes. We will use the equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (\%_1)\,(\text{mass}_1) + (\%_2)\,(\text{mass}_2) + \cdots$$

- Isotope 1: $\%_1 = 0.20$ (Write all percentages as decimals), $\text{mass}_1 = 10$
- Isotope 2: $\%_2 = 0.80$, $\text{mass}_2 = 11$

Substitute these into the equation, and we get:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (0.20)\,(10) + (0.80)\,(11)$$

$$\text{Atomic mass} = 10.8\ \text{amu}$$

The mass of an average boron atom, and thus boron's atomic mass, is $10.8\ \text{amu}$

Example 3.9.2: Neon Isotopes

Neon has three naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of neon, 90.92% of the atoms are Ne-20, which is an isotope of neon with 10 neutrons and a mass of $19.99\ \text{amu}$ Another 0.3% of the atoms are Ne-21, which is an isotope of neon with 11 neutrons and a mass of $20.99\ \text{amu}$ The final 8.85% of the atoms are Ne-22, which is an isotope of neon with 12 neutrons and a mass of $21.99\ \text{amu}$ What is the atomic mass of neon?

Solution

Neon has three isotopes. We will use the equation:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (\%_1)\,(\text{mass}_1) + (\%_2)\,(\text{mass}_2) + \cdots$$

- Isotope 1: $\%_1 = 0.9092$ (write all percentages as decimals), $\text{mass}_1 = 19.99$

- Isotope 2: $\%_2 = 0.003$, $\text{mass}_2 = 20.99$
- Isotope 3: $\%_3 = 0.0885$, $\text{mass}_3 = 21.99$

Substitute these into the equation, and we get:

$$\text{Atomic mass} = (0.9092)(19.99) + (0.003)(20.99) + (0.0885)(21.99)$$

$$\text{Atomic mass} = 20.17 \text{ amu}$$

The mass of an average neon atom is $\mathbf{20.17}$ amu

The periodic table gives the atomic mass of each element. The atomic mass is a number that usually appears below the element's symbol in each square. Notice that the atomic mass of boron (symbol B) is 10.8, which is what we calculated in Example 3.9.1, and the atomic mass of neon (symbol Ne) is 20.8, which is what we calculated in Example 3.9.2. Take time to notice that not all periodic tables have the atomic number above the element's symbol and the mass number below it. If you are ever confused, remember that the atomic number should always be the smaller of the two and will be a whole number, while the atomic mass should always be the larger of the two and will be a decimal number.

? Exercise 3.9.1

Chlorine has two naturally occurring isotopes. In a sample of chlorine, 75.77% of the atoms are Cl-35, with a mass of 34.97 amu Another 24.23% of the atoms are Cl-37, with a mass of 36.97 amu What is the atomic mass of chlorine?

Answer

35.45 amu

Summary

- An element's atomic mass is the weighted average of the masses of the isotopes of an element
- An element's atomic mass can be calculated provided the relative abundance of the element's naturally occurring isotopes and the masses of those isotopes are known.
- The periodic table is a convenient way to summarize information about the different elements. In addition to the element's symbol, most periodic tables will also contain the element's atomic number and the element's atomic mass.

3.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Electrons in Atoms and the Periodic Table

4.1: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation
4.2: The Electromagnetic Spectrum
4.3: Electronic Structure of Atoms
4.4: Electron Configurations
4.5: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
4.7: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model

4: Electrons in Atoms and the Periodic Table is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

4.1: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation

Learning Objectives

- Define the terms wavelength and frequency with respect to wave-form energy.
- State the relationship between wavelength and frequency with respect to electromagnetic radiation.

During the summer, almost everyone enjoys going to the beach. Beach-goers can swim, have picnics, and work on their tans. But if a person gets too much sun, they can burn. A particular set of solar wavelengths are especially harmful to the skin. This portion of the solar spectrum is known as UV B, with wavelengths of 280-320 nm. Sunscreens are effective in protecting skin against both the immediate skin damage and the long-term possibility of skin cancer.

Waves

Waves are characterized by their repetitive motion. Imagine a toy boat riding the waves in a wave pool. As the water wave passes under the boat, it moves up and down in a regular and repeated fashion. While the wave travels horizontally, the boat only travels vertically up and down. The figure below shows two examples of waves.

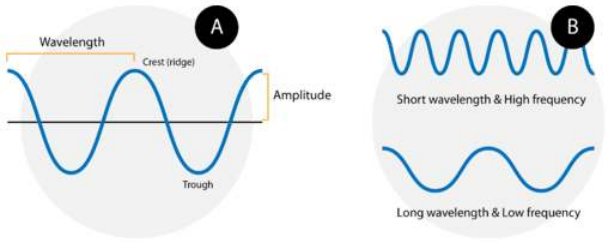


Figure 4.1.1: (A) A wave consists of alternation crests and troughs. The wavelength (λ) is defined as the distance between any two consecutive identical points on the waveform. The amplitude is the height of the wave. (B) A wave with a short wavelength (top) has a high frequency because more waves pass a given point in a certain amount of time. A wave with a longer wavelength (bottom) has a lower frequency.

A wave cycle consists of one complete wave—starting at the zero point, going up to a wave **crest**, going back down to a wave **trough**, and back to the zero point again. The **wavelength** of a wave is the distance between any two corresponding points on adjacent waves. It is easiest to visualize the wavelength of a wave as the distance from one wave crest to the next. In an equation, wavelength is represented by the Greek letter lambda (λ). Depending on the type of wave, wavelength can be measured in meters, centimeters, or nanometers $\left(1\ \text{m} = 10^9\ \text{nm}\right)$. The **frequency**, represented by the Greek letter nu (ν), is the number of waves that pass a certain point in a specified amount of time. Typically, frequency is measured in units of cycles per second or waves per second. One wave per second is also called a Hertz (Hz) and in SI units is a reciprocal second $\left(\text{s}^{-1}\right)$.

Figure B above shows an important relationship between the wavelength and frequency of a wave. The top wave clearly has a shorter wavelength than the second wave. However, if you picture yourself at a stationary point watching these waves pass by, more waves of the first kind would pass by in a given amount of time. Thus the frequency of the first wave is greater than that of the second wave. Wavelength and frequency are therefore inversely related. As the wavelength of a wave increases, its frequency decreases. The equation that relates the two is:

$$c = \lambda\nu$$

The variable c is the speed of light. For the relationship to hold mathematically, if the speed of light is used in m/s, the wavelength must be in meters and the frequency in Hertz.

Example 4.1.1: Orange Light

The color orange within the visible light spectrum has a wavelength of about 620 nm. What is the frequency of orange light?

Solution

Solutions to Example 9.2.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 4.1.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 4.1.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given : • Wavelength $(\lambda) = 620\ \text{nm}$ • Speed of light $(c) = 3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}$ Find: Frequency (Hz)
List other known quantities.	$1\ \text{m} = 10^9\ \text{nm}$
Identify steps to get the final answer.	1.Convert the wavelength to m. 2. Apply the equation $c = \lambda\nu$ and solve for frequency. Dividing both sides of the equation by λ yields: $\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$620\ \text{nm} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{m}}{10^9\ \text{nm}}\right) = 6.20 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}$ $\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda} = \frac{3.0 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{6.20 \times 10^{-7}} = 4.8 \times 10^{14}\ \text{Hz}$
Think about your result.	The value for the frequency falls within the range for visible light.

? Exercise 4.1.1

What is the wavelength of light if its frequency is $1.55 \times 10^{10}\ \text{s}^{-1}$?

Answer

0.0194 m, or 19.4 mm

Summary

All waves can be defined in terms of their frequency and intensity. $c = \lambda\nu$ expresses the relationship between wavelength and frequency.

4.1: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **9.2: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.2: THE ELECTROMAGNETIC SPECTRUM

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Know the properties of different types of electromagnetic radiation.

Electromagnetic waves have an extremely wide range of wavelengths, frequencies, and energies. The highest energy form of electromagnetic waves are gamma (γ) rays and the lowest energy form are radio waves.

The figure below shows the **electromagnetic spectrum**, which is all forms of electromagnetic radiation. On the far left of Figure 4.2.1 are the highest energy electromagnetic waves. These are called **gamma rays** and can be quite dangerous, in large numbers, to living systems. The next lower energy form of electromagnetic waves are called **x-rays**. Most of you are familiar with the penetration abilities of these waves. They can also be dangerous to living systems. Humans are advised to limit as much as possible the number of medical x-rays they have per year. Next lower, in energy, are **ultraviolet rays**. These rays are part of sunlight and the upper end of the ultraviolet range can cause sunburn and perhaps skin cancer. The tiny section next in the spectrum is the **visible range of light**. The visible light spectrum has been greatly expanded in the bottom half of the figure so that it can be discussed in more detail. The visible range of electromagnetic radiation are the frequencies to which the human eye responds. Lower in the spectrum are infrared rays and radio waves.

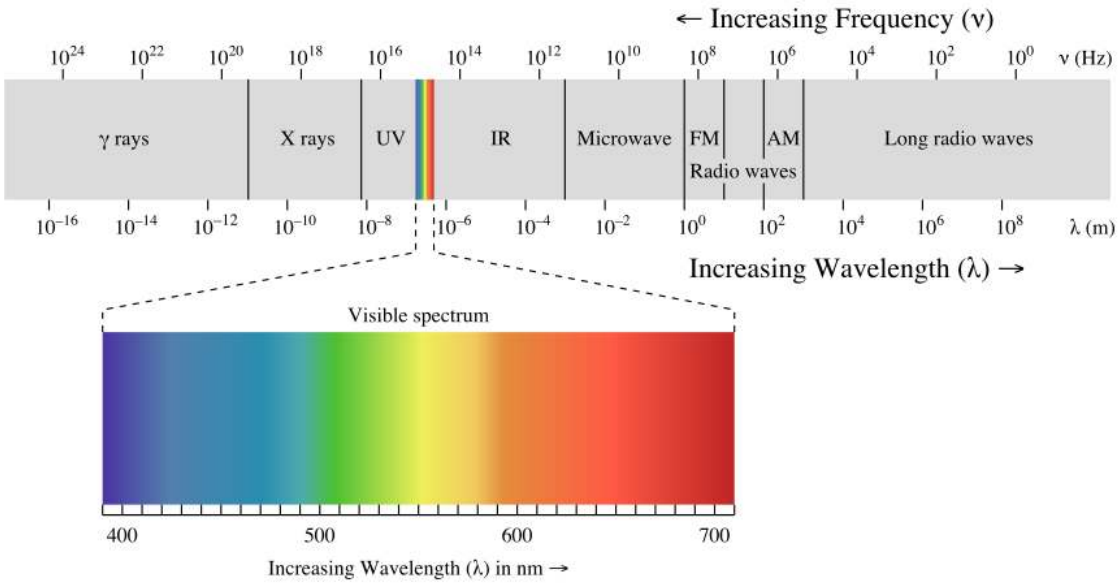


Figure 4.2.1: The electromagnetic spectrum, with its various regions labeled. The borders of each region are approximate. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous by request).

The light energies that are in the visible range are electromagnetic waves that cause the human eye to respond when those frequencies enter the eye. The eye sends a signal to the brain and the individual "sees" various colors. The highest energy waves in the visible region cause the brain to see violet and as the energy decreases, the colors change to blue, green, yellow, orange, and red. When the energy of the wave is above or below the visible range, the eye does not respond to them. When the eye receives several different frequencies at the same time, the colors are blended by the brain. If all frequencies of light strike the eye together, the brain sees white. If there are no visible frequencies striking the eye, the brain sees black. The objects that you see around you are light absorbers—that is, the chemicals on the surface of the object will absorb certain frequencies and not others. Your eyes detect the frequencies that strike your eye. Therefore, if your friend is wearing a red shirt, it means the dye in that shirt absorbs every frequency except red and the red frequencies are reflected. If your only light source was one exact frequency of blue light and you shined it on a shirt that was red in sunlight, the shirt would appear black because no light would be reflected. The light from fluorescent types of lights do not contain all the frequencies of sunlight and so clothes inside a store may appear to be a slightly different color when you get them home.

SUMMARY

- Electromagnetic radiation has a wide spectrum, including gamma rays, X-rays, UV rays, visible light, IR radiation, microwaves, and radio waves.
- The different colors of light differ in their frequencies (or wavelengths).

4.2: The Electromagnetic Spectrum is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **9.3: The Electromagnetic Spectrum** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

4.3: Electronic Structure of Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Describe how electrons are grouped within atoms into shells, subshells, and orbitals using quantum numbers.

You now know that the periodic table is arranged in groups and periods (columns and rows) based on chemical and physical properties of the different elements. The first element, hydrogen (Z=1) has one proton and one electron and as you move right across the rows, each subsequent element has one additional proton and electron. You may have asked yourself, why are periodic trends observed across the rows and down the groups? Or, why do the rows have different numbers of elements, giving the table a unique shape?

These questions can be answered by learning more about the electrons in atoms. Although we have discussed the general arrangement of subatomic particles in atoms, we have said little about how electrons occupy the space around the nucleus. Do they move around the nucleus at random, or do they exist in some ordered arrangement?

In 1913, the Danish scientist Niels Bohr suggested that the electron in a hydrogen atom could not have any random energy, having *only* certain fixed values of energy that were indexed by the number n (now called a **quantum number**). Bohr suggested that the energy of the electron in hydrogen was **quantized** because it was in a specific orbit; much like the steps on a staircase does not have half or quarter stairs or the keys on a piano don't have notes in between, there are no energy levels in between each orbit. Figure 4.3.1 shows a model of the hydrogen atom based on Bohr's ideas.

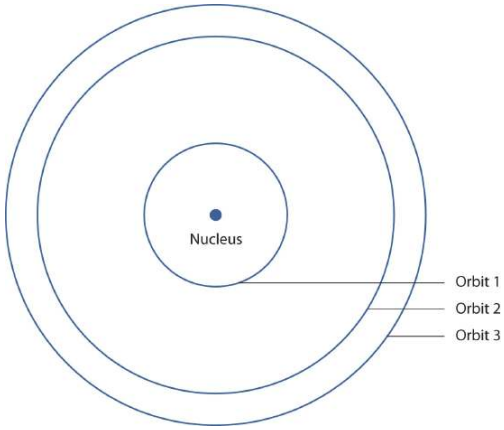


Figure 4.3.1: Bohr's Model of the Hydrogen Atom. Bohr's description of the hydrogen atom had specific orbits for the electron, which had quantized energies.

Bohr's ideas were useful, but were applicable only to the hydrogen atom. However, later researchers generalized Bohr's ideas into a new theory called **quantum mechanics**, which explains the behavior of electrons as if they were acting as a wave, not as particles. Quantum mechanics predicts two major things: quantized energies for electrons of all atoms (not just hydrogen) and an organization of electrons within atoms. Electrons are no longer thought of as being randomly distributed around a nucleus or restricted to certain orbits (in that regard, Bohr was wrong). Instead, electrons are collected into groups (*shells*) and subgroups (*subshells*) that explain much about the chemical behavior of the atom.

In the quantum-mechanical model of an atom, which is the modern and currently accepted model, the location of electrons in the atom are described by four **quantum numbers**, not just the one predicted by Bohr. Much like your home address can be used to locate you in a specific state, city, street, and house number, the first three quantum numbers identify approximately where electrons are in an atom. The fourth quantum number describes the electron and whether it is spin up or down (clockwise or counterclockwise). The theory and mathematics behind these four quantum numbers are well beyond the scope of this textbook, however, it is useful to learn some of the basics in order to understand how atoms behave and interact with (react) with other atoms.

Electron Arrangements: Shells, Subshells, and Orbitals

Electrons are organized according to their energies into sets called **shells** (labeled by the principle quantum number, ***n***). Generally the higher the energy of a shell, the farther it is (on average) from the nucleus. Shells do not have specific, fixed distances from the

nucleus, but an electron in a higher-energy shell will spend more time farther from the nucleus than does an electron in a lower-energy shell.

Shells are further divided into subsets of electrons called **subshells**, labeled by type as *s*, *p*, *d*, or *f*. The first shell has only one subshell, *s*. The second shell has two subshells, *s* and *p;* the third shell has three subshells, *s*, *p*, and *d*, and the fourth shell has four subshells, *s*, *p*, *d*, and *f*. Within each subshell, electrons are arranged into different numbers of **orbitals**, an *s* subshell is made up of one *s* orbital, a *p* subshell has two *p* orbitals, a *d* subshell, five *d* orbitals, and an *f* subshell, seven *f* orbitals. Each orbital has a different shape and orientation around the nucleus (Figure 4.3.1, however, rather than representing an orbit, as the name suggests, orbitals define a boundary for the region of space where a given electron is most likely to be found. Lastly, a single orbital can hold up to two electrons each with a different **spin**.

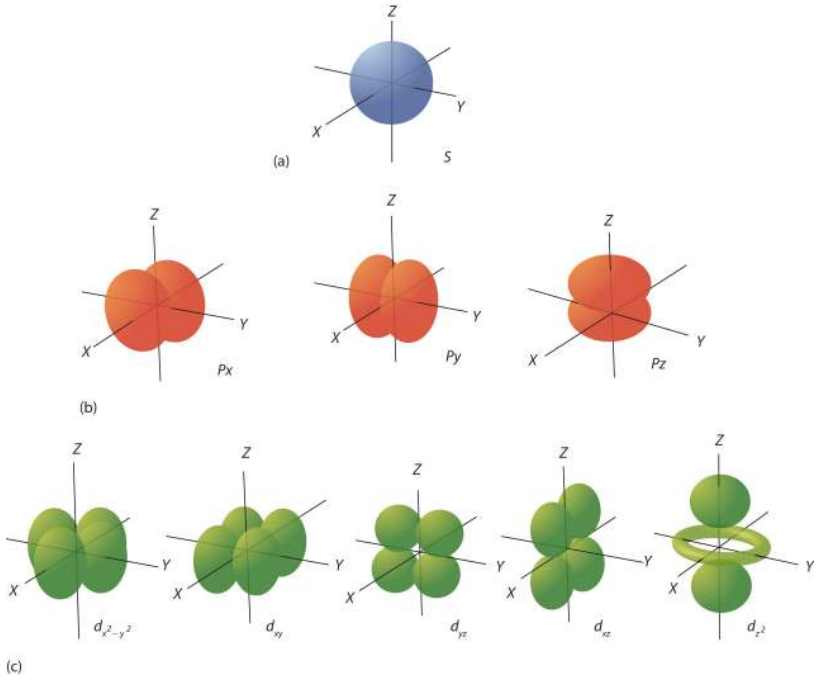


Figure 4.3.1: Electron Orbitals. (a) The lone *s* orbital in an *s* subshell is spherical in distribution. (b) The three *p* orbitals have two lobes, shaped kind of like dumbbells, each is oriented around the nucleus along a different axis. (c) The five *d* orbitals have four lobes, except for the d_{z^2} orbital, which is a "dumbbell + torus" combination. They are all oriented in different directions.

It is important to note that according to quantum theory, there are specific *allowed* combinations of quantum numbers and others that are not allowed. For example, shell two can only have two subshells, *s* with one orbital and *p* with 3 orbitals, therefore, this shell can hold a maximum of eight electrons (four orbitals times two electrons each). It takes practice to learn the allowed combinations as shown in Table 4.3.1 but it is helpful to visualize the atom as a sphere with the nucleus in the center. Close to the nucleus, there is a smaller amount of space for electrons – a smaller shell. As the number of electrons increases, the shells that hold the electrons get larger and thus further away from the nucleus.

Table 4.3.1: Shells and Subshells

Shell (*n*)	Number of Subshells	Names of Subshells	Number of Orbitals (*per Subshell*)	Number of Electrons (*per Subshell*)	Total Electrons (*per Shell*)
1	1	*1s*	1	2	2
2	2	*2s* and *2p*	1, 3	2, 6	8
3	3	*3s*, *3p*, and *3d*	1, 3, 5	2, 6, 10	18
4	4	*4s*, *4p*, *4d*, and *4f*	1, 3, 5, 7	2, 6, 10, 14	32

All of this information about the shell, subshell, and orbital is put together to make up the "address" for an electron and all of the addresses for all the electrons in an atom make up the **electron configuration**, which is described more later.

4.3: Electronic Structure of Atoms is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **2.6: Arrangements of Electrons** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.
- **8.3: Quantum Numbers for Electrons** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

4.4: Electron Configurations

Learning Objectives

- Describe how electrons are arranged in an atom using electron configurations.

Previously we discussed the concept of electron *shells*, *subshells*, *orbitals*, and electron *spin*. It is the arrangement of electrons into shells and subshells that most concerns us here, so we will focus on that.

We use numbers to indicate which shell an electron is in. The first shell, closest to the nucleus and with the lowest-energy electrons, is shell 1. This first shell has only one subshell, which is labeled 1*s* and can hold a maximum of 2 electrons. We combine the shell and subshell labels when referring to the organization of electrons about a nucleus and use a superscript to indicate how many electrons are in a subshell. Thus, because a hydrogen atom has its single electron in the *s* subshell of the first shell, we use $\mathbf{1}\boldsymbol{s}^{\mathbf{1}}$ (spoken as “one-ess-one”) to describe the electron arrangement or distribution of electrons in hydrogen. This structure is called an **electron configuration** and is unique to hydrogen.

Helium atoms have 2 electrons. Both electrons fit into the 1*s* subshell because *s* subshells contain one *s* orbital which can hold up to 2 electrons; therefore, the electron configuration for helium atoms is $\mathbf{1}\boldsymbol{s}^{\mathbf{2}}$ (spoken as “one-ess-two”).

The 1*s* subshell can hold a maximum of 2 electrons, so the electron configuration for a lithium atom, which has three electrons, cannot be $1s^3$. Two of the lithium electrons can fit into the 1*s* subshell, but the third electron must go into the second shell and the lower energy orbital, which is the 2*s* orbital. Therefore, we write the electron configuration of a lithium atom as $\mathbf{1}\boldsymbol{s}^{\mathbf{2}}\mathbf{2}\boldsymbol{s}^{\mathbf{1}}$ (spoken as “one-ess-two two-ess-one”).

The shell diagram for a lithium atom (Figure 4.4.1). The shell closest to the nucleus (first shell) has 2 dots representing the 2 electrons in **1*s***, while the outermost shell (**2*s***) has 1 electron.

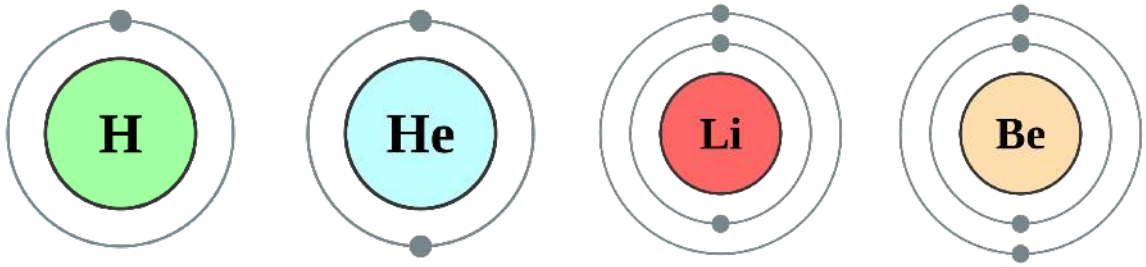


Figure 4.4.1: Shell diagrams of hydrogen (H), helium (He), lithium (Li), and Berryellium (Be) atoms. (CC BY-SA 2.0 UK; Greg Robson modified by Pumbaa via Wikipedia)

There are a set of general rules that are used to figure out the electron configuration of an atomic species: **Aufbau Principle**, **Hund's Rule** and the **Pauli-Exclusion Principle**.

- **Rule 1 (Aufbau Principle):** Electrons occupy the lowest-energy orbitals (closest to the nucleus) possible, starting with 1*s*, then 2*s*, 2*p*, and continuing on to higher energy (further away from the nucleus). Shells increase in energy in order from 1 to 2 to 3, and so on. Within these shells, an *s* subshell is the lowest energy followed by *p*, then *d*, then *f*.
- **Rule 2 (Hund's Rule):** When electrons occupy degenerate orbitals (i.e. same shell and subshell), they must first singly occupy (half-fill) each empty orbital in a subshell before double occupying (completely filling) them. Furthermore, the most stable configuration results when the spins are parallel (i.e. all spin up or all spin down). For example, all three *p* orbitals in a *p* subshell will have one electron before a single *p* orbital contains two electrons.
- **Rule 3 (Pauli-Exclusion Principle):** Each electron is described with a unique set of four quantum numbers (a unique address). Therefore, if two electrons occupy the same orbital, they must have different spins. This is the reason all orbitals can hold a maximum of two electrons.

Continuing on the periodic table to the next largest atom, beryllium, with 4 electrons, the electron configuration is $1s^2 2s^2$. Now that the 2*s* subshell is filled, electrons in larger atoms, starting with boron, begin filling the 2*p* subshell, which can hold a maximum of six electrons. The next six elements progressively fill up the 2p subshell:

- B: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$

- C: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$
- N: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$
- O: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$
- F: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$
- Ne: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$

At the end of the period the element neon, has filled the 2*s*, and 2*p* subshells, which completes the second shell. Now atoms with more electrons now must begin the third shell starting with the 3*s* subshell. The first two subshells of the third shell are filled in order—for example, the electron configuration of aluminum, with 13 electrons, is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^1$. However, a curious thing happens after the 3*p* subshell is filled: the 4*s* subshell begins to fill before the 3*d* subshell does. In fact, the exact ordering of subshells becomes more complicated at this point (after argon, with its 18 electrons), so we will not consider the electron configurations of larger atoms.

Table 4.4.1: Electron Configurations of the First 20 Elements

Atomic Number	Element Symbol	Outermost Shell	Electron Configuration	Noble Gas Configuration
1	H	1	$1s^1$	$1s^1$
2	He	1	$1s^2$	$1s^2$
3	Li	2	$1s^2 2s^1$	[He] $2s^1$
4	Be	2	$1s^2 2s^2$	[He] $2s^2$
5	B	2	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$	[He] $2s^2 2p^1$
6	C	2	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$	[He] $2s^2 2p^2$
7	N	2	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$	[He] $2s^2 2p^3$
8	O	2	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$	[He] $2s^2 2p^4$
9	F	2	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$	[He] $2s^2 2p^5$
10	Ne	2	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$	[He] $2s^2 2p^6$
11	Na	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$	[Ne] $3s^1$
12	Mg	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2$	[Ne] $3s^2$
13	Al	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^1$	[Ne] $3s^2 3p^1$
14	Si	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^2$	[Ne]$3s^2 3p^2$
15	P	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^3$	[Ne] $3s^2 3p^3$
16	S	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^4$	[Ne] $3s^2 3p^4$
17	Cl	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^5$	[Ne] $3s^2 3p^5$
18	Ar	3	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$	[Ne] $3s^2 3p^6$
19	K	4	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^1$	[Ar] $4s^1$
20	Ca	4	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2$	[Ar] $4s^2$

Noble Gas Configuration

The electron configuration of sodium is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$ (Table 4.4.1). The first ten electrons of the sodium atom are the inner-shell electrons and the configuration of just those ten electrons is exactly the same as the configuration of the element neon $(Z = 10)$. This provides the basis for a shorthand notation for electron configurations called the **noble gas configuration**, which atom consists of the elemental symbol of the last noble gas prior to that atom, followed by the configuration of the remaining electrons. So for sodium, we make the substitution of $[\mathrm{Ne}]$ for the $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$ part of the configuration. Sodium's noble gas configuration becomes $[\mathrm{Ne}]\, 3s^1$.

The electron filling diagram shown below in Figure 4.4.2 is useful in remembering the order for electrons to occupy shells and subshells. Although it is much easier to use the periodic table as a guide for electron filling as you will see in the next section.

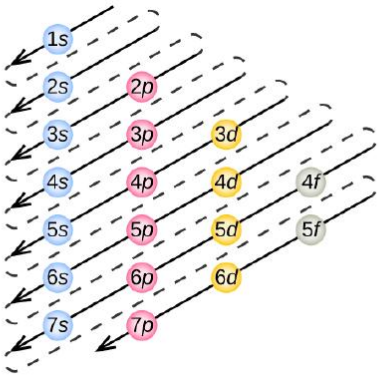


Figure 4.4.2: The order of electron filling in an atom. Follow each arrow in order **from top to bottom**. The subshells you reach along each arrow give the ordering of filling of subshells in larger atoms.

Example 4.4.1: Electronic Configuration of Phosphorus Atoms

Using Figure 4.4.2 as your guide, write the electron configuration of a neutral phosphorus atom. The atomic number of P is 15.

Solution

A neutral phosphorus atom has 15 electrons. Two electrons can go into the 1*s* subshell, 2 can go into the 2*s* subshell, and 6 can go into the 2*p* subshell. That leaves 5 electrons. Of those 5 electrons, 2 can go into the 3*s* subshell, and the remaining 3 electrons can go into the 3*p* subshell. Thus, the electron configuration of neutral phosphorus atoms is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^3$.

Exercise 4.4.1: Electronic Configuration of Chlorine Atoms

Using Figure 4.4.2 as your guide, write the electron configuration of a neutral chlorine atom. The atomic number of Cl is 17.

Answer

A neutral chlorine atom has 17 electrons. Two electrons can go into the 1*s* subshell, 2 can go into the 2*s* subshell, and 6 can go into the 2*p* subshell. That leaves 7 electrons. Of those 7 electrons, 2 can go into the 3*s* subshell, and the remaining 5 electrons can go into the 3*p* subshell. Thus, the electron configuration of neutral chlorine atoms is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^5$.

Orbital Diagrams

An **orbital diagram** is the more visual way to represent the arrangement of all the electrons in a particular atom. In an orbital diagram, the individual orbitals are shown as squares and orbitals within a sublevel are drawn next to each other horizontally. Each sublevel is labeled by its shell and sublevel. Electrons are indicated by arrows inside of the squares. An arrow pointing upwards indicates one spin direction, while a downward pointing arrow indicates the other direction. The orbital filling diagrams for hydrogen, helium, and lithium are shown in the figure below.

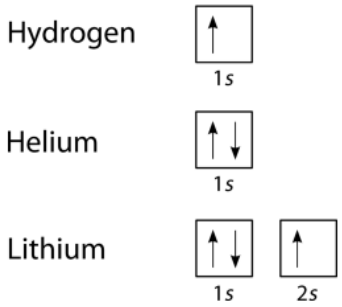


Figure 4.4.3: Orbital diagrams for hydrogen, helium, and lithium.

According to the Aufbau Principle, sublevels and orbitals are filled with electrons in order of increasing energy. Since the s sublevel consists of just one orbital, the second electron simply pairs up with the first electron as in helium. The next element is lithium and necessitates the use of the next available sublevel, the $2s$.

The orbital diagram for carbon is shown in Figure 4.4.10. There are two $2p$ electrons for carbon and each occupies its own $2p$ orbital (Hund's Rule).

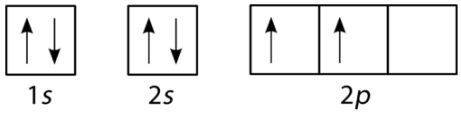


Figure 4.4.4: Orbital diagram for carbon.

Oxygen has four $2p$ electrons. After each $2p$ orbital has one electron in it, the fourth electron can be placed in the first $2p$ orbital with a spin opposite that of the other electron in that orbital.

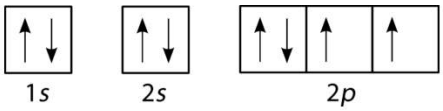


Figure 4.4.5: Orbital diagram for oxygen.

If you keep your papers in manila folders, you can pick up a folder and see how much it weighs. If you want to know how many different papers (articles, bank records, or whatever else you keep in a folder), you have to take everything out and count. A computer directory, on the other hand, tells you exactly how much you have in each file. We can get the same information on atoms. If we use an orbital filling diagram, we have to count arrows. When we look at electron configuration data, we simply add up the numbers.

Example 4.4.3: Carbon Atoms

Draw the orbital filling diagram for carbon and write its electron configuration.

Solution

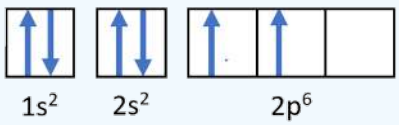
Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Atomic number of carbon, Z=6

Use the order of fill diagram to draw an orbital filling diagram with a total of six electrons. Follow Hund's rule. Write the electron configuration.

Step 2: Construct the diagram.



Orbital filling diagram for carbon.

Electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$

Step 3: Think about your result.

Following the 2s sublevel is the 2p, and p sublevels always consist of three orbitals. All three orbitals need to be drawn even if one or more is unoccupied. According to Hund's rule, the sixth electron enters the second of those p orbitals and has the same spin as the fifth electron.

4.4: Electron Configurations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.4: Organization of Electrons in Atoms** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

- **9.6: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.5: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- Relate the electron configurations of the elements to the shape of the periodic table.
- Determine the expected electron configuration of an element by its place on the periodic table.

Previously, we introduced the periodic table as a tool for organizing the known chemical elements. A periodic table is shown in Figure 4.5.1. The elements are listed by atomic number (the number of protons in the nucleus), and elements with similar chemical properties are grouped together in columns.

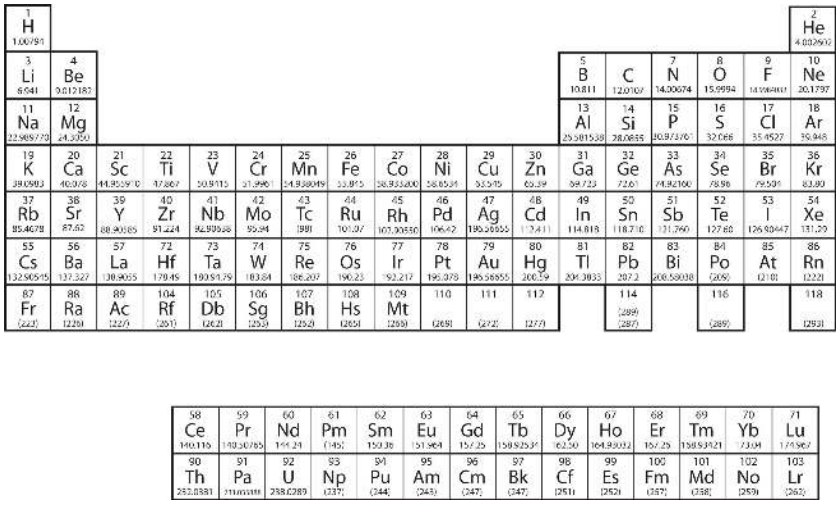


Figure 4.5.1: The Periodic Table

Why does the periodic table have the structure it does? The answer is rather simple, if you understand electron configurations: the shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.

> *The shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.*

Let us start with H and He. Their electron configurations are $1s^1$ and $1s^2$, respectively; with He, the $n = 1$ shell is filled. These two elements make up the first row of the periodic table (Figure 4.5.2)

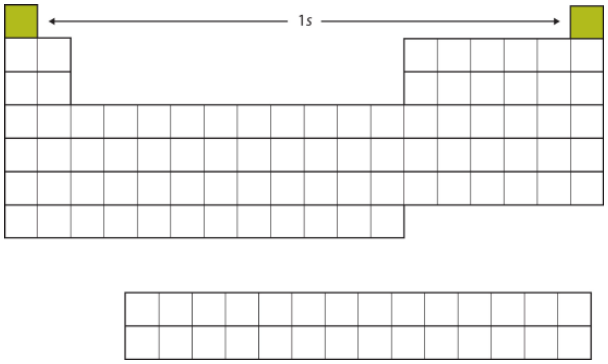


Figure 4.5.2: The 1*s* Subshell. H and He represent the filling of the 1*s* subshell.

The next two electrons, for Li and Be, would go into the 2*s* subshell. Figure 4.5.3 shows that these two elements are adjacent on the periodic table.

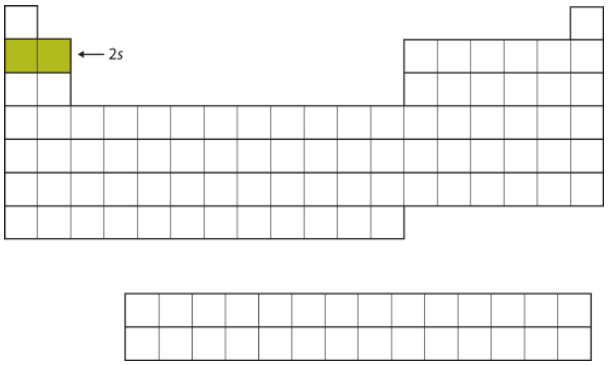


Figure 4.5.3: The 2*s* Subshell. In Li and Be, the 2*s* subshell is being filled.

For the next six elements, the 2*p* subshell is being occupied with electrons. On the right side of the periodic table, these six elements (B through Ne) are grouped together (Figure 4.5.4).

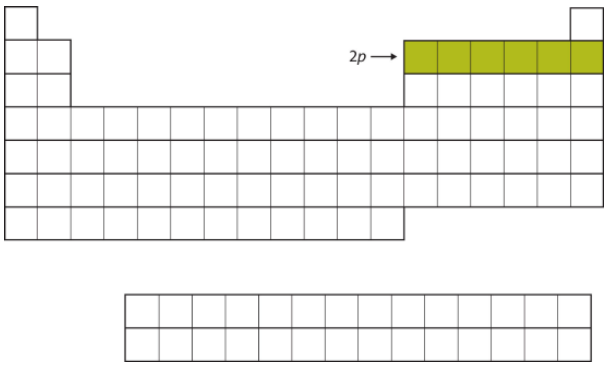


Figure 4.5.4: The 2*p* Subshell. For B through Ne, the 2*p* subshell is being occupied.

The next subshell to be filled is the 3*s* subshell. The elements when this subshell is being filled, Na and Mg, are back on the left side of the periodic table (Figure 4.5.5).

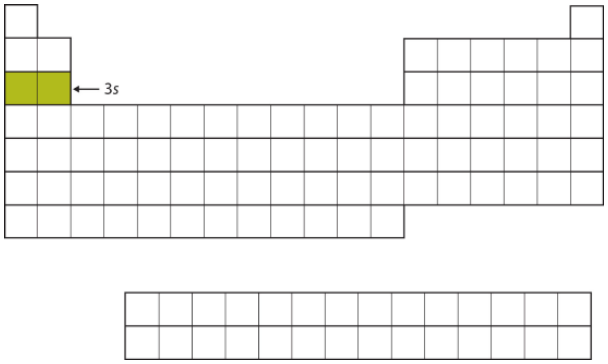


Figure 4.5.5: The 3*s* Subshell. Now the 3*s* subshell is being occupied.

Next, the 3*p* subshell is filled with the next six elements (Figure 4.5.6).

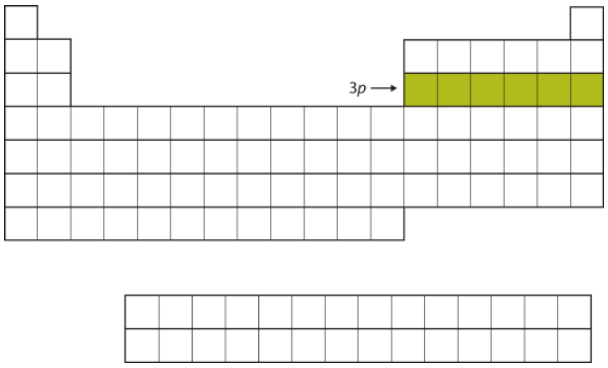


Figure 4.5.6: The 3*p* Subshell. Next, the 3*p* subshell is filled with electrons.

Instead of filling the 3*d* subshell next, electrons go into the 4*s* subshell (Figure 4.5.7).

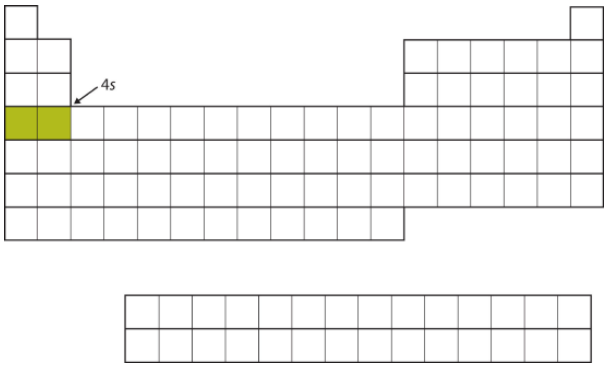


Figure 4.5.7: The 4*s* Subshell. The 4*s* subshell is filled before the 3*d* subshell. This is reflected in the structure of the periodic table.

After the 4*s* subshell is filled, the 3*d* subshell is filled with up to 10 electrons. This explains the section of 10 elements in the middle of the periodic table (Figure 4.5.8).

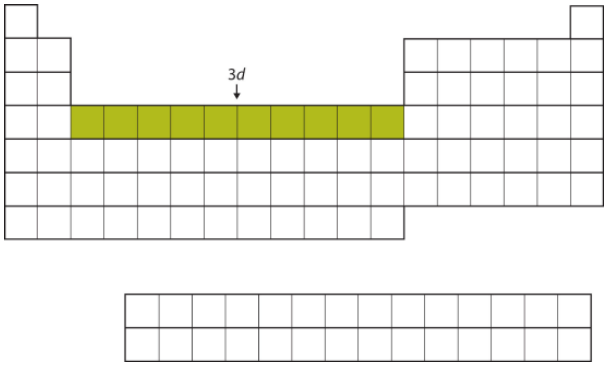


Figure 4.5.8: The 3*d* Subshell. The 3*d* subshell is filled in the middle section of the periodic table.

...And so forth. As we go across the rows of the periodic table, the overall shape of the table outlines how the electrons are occupying the shells and subshells.

The first two columns on the left side of the periodic table are where the *s* subshells are being occupied. Because of this, the first two rows of the periodic table are labeled the **s block**. Similarly, the **p block** are the right-most six columns of the periodic table, the **d block** is the middle 10 columns of the periodic table, while the **f block** is the 14-column section that is normally depicted as detached from the main body of the periodic table. It could be part of the main body, but then the periodic table would be rather long and cumbersome. Figure 4.5.9 shows the blocks of the periodic table.

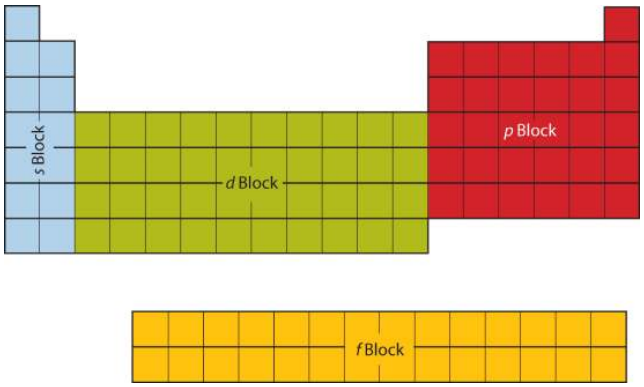


Figure 4.5.9: Blocks on the Periodic Table. The periodic table is separated into blocks depending on which subshell is being filled for the atoms that belong in that section.

The electrons in the highest-numbered shell, plus any electrons in the last unfilled subshell, are called **valence electrons**; the highest-numbered shell is called the **valence shell**. (The inner electrons are called *core electrons*.) The valence electrons largely control the chemistry of an atom. If we look at just the valence shell's electron configuration, we find that in each column, the valence shell's electron configuration is the same. For example, take the elements in the first column of the periodic table: H, Li, Na, K, Rb, and Cs. Their electron configurations (abbreviated for the larger atoms) are as follows, with the valence shell electron configuration highlighted:

Electrons, electron configurations, and the valence shell electron configuration highlighted.

H:	$1s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Li:	$1s^2 2s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Na:	$[Ne]3s^{\mathbf{1}}$
K:	$[Ar]4s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Rb:	$[Kr]5s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Cs:	$[Xe]6s^{\mathbf{1}}$

They all have a similar electron configuration in their valence shells: a single *s* electron. Because much of the chemistry of an element is influenced by valence electrons, we would expect that these elements would have similar chemistry—*and they do*. The organization of electrons in atoms explains not only the shape of the periodic table, but also the fact that elements in the same column of the periodic table have similar chemistry.

The same concept applies to the other columns of the periodic table. Elements in each column have the same valence shell electron configurations, and the elements have some similar chemical properties. This is strictly true for all elements in the *s* and *p* blocks. In the *d* and *f* blocks, because there are exceptions to the order of filling of subshells with electrons, similar valence shells are not absolute in these blocks. However, many similarities do exist in these blocks, so a similarity in chemical properties is expected.

Similarity of valence shell electron configuration implies that we can determine the electron configuration of an atom solely by its position on the periodic table. Consider Se, as shown in Figure 4.5.10. It is in the fourth column of the *p* block. This means that its electron configuration should end in a p^4 electron configuration. Indeed, the electron configuration of Se is $[Ar]4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^4$, as expected.

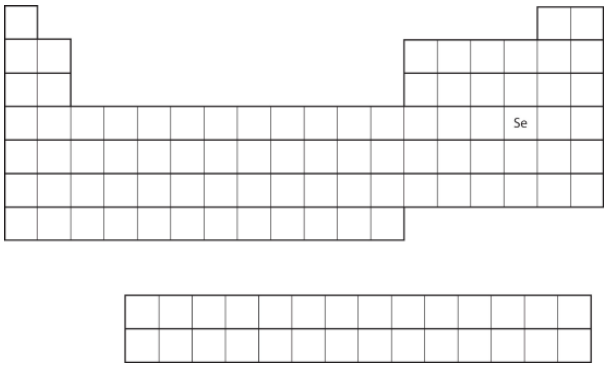


Figure 4.5.10: Selenium on the Periodic Table

Example 4.5.1: Predicting Electron Configurations

From the element's position on the periodic table, predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom (Figure 4.5.11).

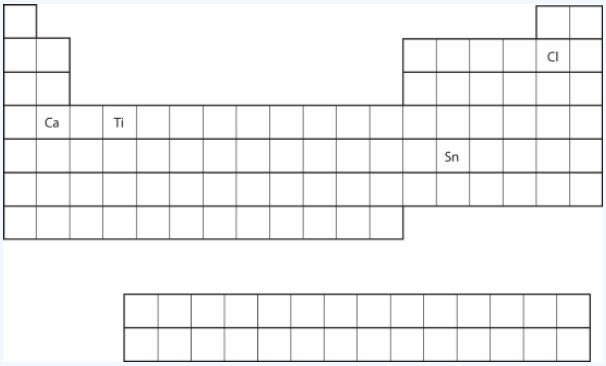


Figure 4.5.11: Various Elements on the Periodic Table

a. Ca
b. Sn

Solution

a. Ca is located in the second column of the *s* block. We expect that its electron configuration should end with s^2. Calcium's electron configuration is $[Ar]4s^2$.
b. Sn is located in the second column of the *p* block, so we expect that its electron configuration would end in p^2. Tin's electron configuration is $[Kr]5s^24d^{10}5p^2$.

Exercise 4.5.1

From the element's position on the periodic table, predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom. Figure 4.5.11.

a. Ti
b. Cl

Answer a

$[Ar]4s^23d^2$

Answer b

$[Ne]3s^23p^5$

Summary

The arrangement of electrons in atoms is responsible for the shape of the periodic table. Electron configurations can be predicted by the position of an atom on the periodic table.

4.5: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **9.7: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Define the two types of ions.

Atoms tend to lose, gain, or share some valance electrons, making bonds to acquire the electron configuration of the nearest noble gas, i.e., usually eight valence electrons for the main group elements, called an octet. Most atoms do not have eight electrons in their valence electron shell. Some atoms have only a few electrons in their outer shell, while others lack only one or two electrons to have an octet. In cases where an atom has three or fewer valence electrons, the atom may lose those valence electrons quite easily until what remains is a lower shell that contains an octet. Atoms that lose electrons acquire a positive charge because they are left with fewer negatively charged electrons to balance the positive charges of the protons in the nucleus. Positively charged ions are called **cations**. Most metals become cations when they make ionic compounds.

Cations

A neutral sodium atom is likely to achieve an octet in its outermost shell by losing its one valence electron.

$$\mathrm{Na} \rightarrow \mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{e^-}$$

The cation produced in this way, $\mathrm{Na^+}$, is called the sodium ion to distinguish it from the element. The outermost shell of the sodium ion is the second electron shell, which has eight electrons in it. The octet rule has been satisfied. Figure $4.6.1$ is a graphical depiction of this process.

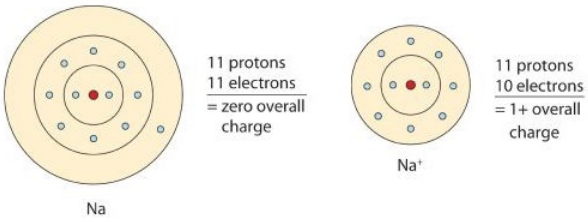


Figure 4.6.1: The Formation of a Sodium Ion. On the left, a sodium atom has 11 electrons. On the right, the sodium ion only has 10 electrons and a 1+ charge. Neutral sodium atom on left has 11 protons and 11 electrons. Sodium ion on right has 11 protons and 10 electrons, with a +1 overall charge.

Anions

Some atoms have nearly eight electrons in their valence shell and can gain additional valence electrons until they have an octet. When these atoms gain electrons, they acquire a negative charge because they now possess more electrons than protons. Negatively charged ions are called **anions**. Most nonmetals become anions when they make ionic compounds.

A neutral chlorine atom has seven electrons in its outermost shell. Only one more electron is needed to achieve an octet in chlorine's valence shell. (In table salt, this electron comes from the sodium atom.)

$$\mathrm{e^-} + \mathrm{Cl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl^-}$$

In this case, the ion has the same outermost shell as the original atom, but now that shell has eight electrons in it. Once again, the octet rule has been satisfied. The resulting anion, $\mathrm{Cl^-}$, is called the chloride ion; note the slight change in the suffix (*-ide* instead of *-ine*) to create the name of this anion. Figure $4.6.2$ is a graphical depiction of this process.

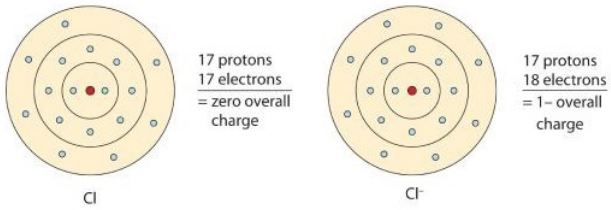


Figure 4.6.2: The Formation of a Chlorine Ion. On the left, the chlorine atom has 17 electrons. On the right, the chloride ion has 18 electrons and has a 1− charge. Neutral chlorine atom on left has 17 protons and 17 electrons. Sodium ion on right has 17 protons and 18 electrons, with a -1 overall charge.

> *The names for positive and negative ions are pronounced CAT-eye-ons and ANN-eye-ons, respectively.*

In many cases, elements that belong to the same group (vertical column) on the periodic table form ions with the same charge because they have the same number of valence electrons. Thus, the periodic table becomes a tool for remembering the charges on many ions. For example, all ions made from alkali metals, the first column on the periodic table, have a 1+ charge. Ions made from alkaline earth metals, the second group on the periodic table, have a 2+ charge. On the other side of the periodic table, the next-to-last column, the halogens, form ions having a 1− charge. Figure 4.6.3 shows how the charge on many ions can be predicted by the location of an element on the periodic table. Note the convention of first writing the number and then the sign on a ion with multiple charges. The barium cation is written Ba^{2+}, not Ba^{+2}.

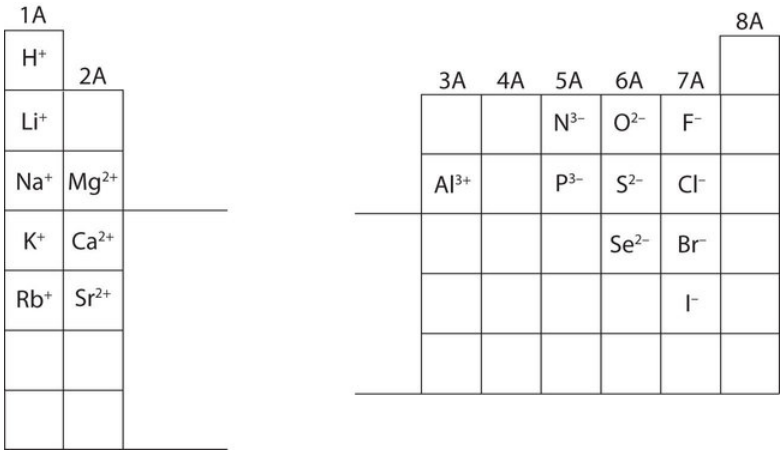


Figure 4.6.3: Predicting Ionic Charges. The charge that an atom acquires when it becomes an ion is related to the structure of the periodic table. Within a group (family) of elements, atoms form ions of a certain charge.

4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **4.7: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

4.7: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model

Learning Objectives

- Give the name and location of specific groups on the periodic table, including alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, noble gases, halogens, and transition metals.
- Explain the relationship between the chemical behavior of families in the periodic table and their electron configurations.
- Identify elements that will have the most similar properties to a given element.

The chemical behavior of atoms is controlled by their electron configuration. Since the families of elements were organized by their chemical behavior, it is predictable that the individual members of each chemical family will have similar electron configurations.

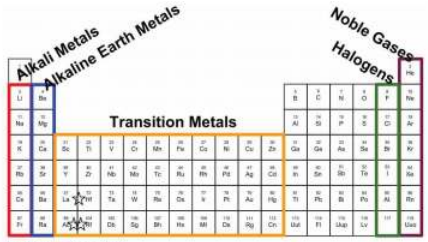
Families of the Periodic Table

Remember that Mendeleev arranged the periodic table so that elements with the most similar properties were placed in the same group. A **group** is a vertical column of the periodic table. All of the 1A elements have one valence electron. This is what causes these elements to react in the same ways as the other members of the family. The elements in 1A are all very reactive and form compounds in the same ratios with similar properties with other elements. Because of their similarities in their chemical properties, Mendeleev put these elements into the same group. Group 1A is also known as the **alkali metals**. Although most metals tend to be very hard, these metals are actually soft and can be easily cut.

Group 2A is also called the **alkaline earth metals**. Once again, because of their similarities in electron configurations, these elements have similar properties to each other. The same pattern is true of other groups on the periodic table. Remember, Mendeleev arranged the table so that elements with the most similar properties were in the same group on the periodic table.

It is important to recognize a couple of other important groups on the periodic table by their group name. Group 7A (or 17) elements are also called **halogens**. This group contains very reactive nonmetal elements.

The **noble gases** are in group 8A. These elements also have similar properties to each other, the most significant property being that they are extremely unreactive, rarely forming compounds. The reason for this will be communicated later, when we discuss how compounds form. The elements in this group are also gases at room temperature.

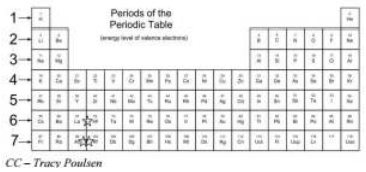


Families of the periodic table.
CC – Tracy Poulsen

An alternate numbering system numbers all of the s, p, and d block elements from 1-18. In this numbering system, group 1A is group 1; group 2A is group 2; the halogens (7A) are group 17; and the noble gases (8A) are group 18. You will come across periodic tables with both numbering systems. It is important to recognize which numbering system is being used, and to be able to find the number of valence electrons in the main block elements, regardless of which numbering system is being used.

Periods of the Periodic Table

If you can locate an element on the Periodic Table, you can use the element's position to figure out the energy level of the element's valence electrons. A **period** is a horizontal row of elements on the periodic table. For example, the elements sodium (Na) and magnesium (Mg) are both in period 3. The elements astatine (At) and radon (Rn) are both in period 6.



CC – Tracy Poulsen

Summary

- The vertical columns on the periodic table are called groups or families because of their similar chemical behavior.
- All the members of a family of elements have the same number of valence electrons and similar chemical properties.
- The horizontal rows on the periodic table are called periods.

Vocabulary

- **Group (family)** - A vertical column of the periodic table.
- **Alkali metals** - Group 1A of the periodic table.
- **Alkaline earth metals** - Group 2A of the periodic table.
- **Halogens** - Group 7A of the periodic table.
- **Noble gases** - Group 8A of the periodic table.
- **Transition elements** - Groups 3 to 12 of the periodic table.

4.7: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **9.8: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Molecules and Compounds

There are many substances that exist as two or more atoms connected together so strongly that they behave as a single particle. These multi-atom combinations are called molecules. A molecule is the smallest part of a substance that has the physical and chemical properties of that substance. In some respects, a molecule is similar to an atom. A molecule, however, is composed of more than one atom.

5.1: Compounds Display Constant Composition
5.2: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds
5.3: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds
5.4: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds
5.5: Nomenclature- Naming Compounds
5.6: Naming Ionic Compounds
5.7: Naming Molecular Compounds
5.8: Naming Acids
5.9: Nomenclature Summary

5: Molecules and Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

5.1: Compounds Display Constant Composition

When building a house, the starting point is a blueprint of what the house will look like. The plan states how many windows and what kind, how many doors and what style, how many rooms and what type (bedroom, kitchen, other). The blueprint shows how the different pieces will go together to make the house. As long as the blueprint is followed and exactly the same items are used, the house will be identical to its blueprint.

Compounds

A **compound** is a substance that contains two or more elements chemically combined in a fixed proportion. The elements carbon and hydrogen combine to form many different compounds. One of the simplest is called methane, in which there are always four times as many hydrogen particles as carbon particles. Methane is a pure substance because it always has the same composition. However, it is not an element because it can be broken down into simpler substances—carbon and hydrogen.

Recall that the components of a mixture can be separated from one another by physical means. This is not true for a compound. Table salt is a compound consisting of equal parts of the elements sodium and chlorine. Salt cannot be separated into its two elements by filtering, distillation, or any other physical process. Salt and other compounds can only be decomposed into their elements by a chemical process. A **chemical change** is a change that produces matter with a different composition. Many compounds can be decomposed into their elements by heating. When sugar is heated, it decomposes into carbon and water. Water is still a compound, but one which cannot be broken down into hydrogen and oxygen by heating. Instead, the passage of an electrical current through water will produce hydrogen and oxygen gases.

The properties of compounds are generally very different than the properties of the elements from which the compound is formed. Sodium is an extremely reactive soft metal that cannot be exposed to air or water. Chlorine is a deadly gas. The compound sodium chloride is a white solid which is essential for all living things (see below).

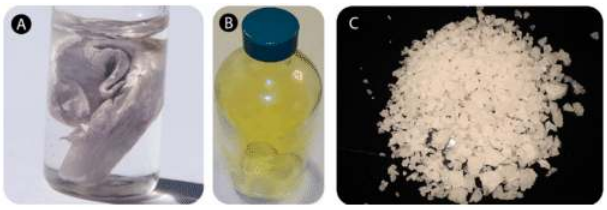


Figure 5.1.1: (A) Sodium is so reactive that it must be stored under oil. (B) Chlorine is a poisonous yellow-green gas. (C) Salt crystals, a compound of sodium and chlorine.

Summary

- A compound is a substance that contains two or more elements chemically combined in a fixed proportion.
- A chemical change is a change that produces matter with a different composition.

5.1: Compounds Display Constant Composition is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.2: Compounds Display Constant Composition** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.2: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Determine the number of different atoms in a formula.
- Define chemical formula, molecular formula, and empirical formula.

A **chemical formula** is an expression that shows the elements in a compound and the relative proportions of those elements. Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen in a 2:1 ratio. The chemical formula for water is H_2O. Sulfuric acid is one of the most widely produced chemicals in the United States and is composed of the elements hydrogen, sulfur, and oxygen. The chemical formula for sulfuric acid is H_2SO_4.

Certain groups of atoms are bonded together to form what is called a polyatomic ion that acts as a single unit. Polyatomic ions are discussed in more detail in Section 5.5. Polyatomic ions are enclosed in parenthesis followed by a subscript if more than one of the same ion exist in a chemical formula. The formula $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ represents a compound with the following:

$$3 \text{ Ca atoms} + 2 \ PO_4^{3-} \text{ ions}$$

To count the total number of atoms for formulas with polyatomic ions enclosed in parenthesis, use the subscript as a multiplier for each atom or number of atoms.

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$$

$$3 \text{ Ca} + 2 \text{ x1 P} + 2 \text{ x 4 O} = 3 \text{ Ca atoms} + 2 \text{ P atoms} + 8 \text{ O atoms}$$

Molecular Formula

A **molecular formula** is a chemical formula of a molecular compound that shows the kinds and numbers of atoms present in a molecule of the compound. Ammonia is a compound of nitrogen and hydrogen as shown below:

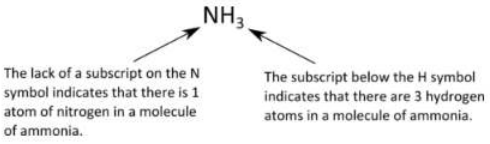


Figure 5.2.1: The molecular formula for ammonia. NH3. There is one atom of nitrogen and 3 atoms of hydrogen in a molecule of ammonia.

Note from the example that there are some standard rules to follow in writing molecular formulas. The arrangements of the elements depend on the particular structure, which is not of concern at this point. The number of atoms of each kind is indicated by a subscript following the atom. If there is only one atom, no number is written. If there is more than one atom of a specific kind, the number is written as a subscript following the atom. We would not write N_3H for ammonia, because that would mean that there are three nitrogen atoms and one hydrogen atom in the molecule, which is incorrect.

Empirical Formula

An **empirical formula** is a formula that shows the elements in a compound in their lowest whole-number ratio. Glucose is an important simple sugar that cells use as their primary source of energy. Its molecular formula is $C_6H_{12}O_6$. Since each of the subscripts is divisible by 6, the empirical formula for glucose is CH_2O. When chemists analyze an unknown compound, often the first step is to determine its empirical formula.

- molecular formula: $C_6H_{12}O_6$
- empirical formula: CH_2O

There are a great many compounds whose molecular and empirical formulas are the same. If the molecular formula cannot be simplified into a smaller whole-number ratio, as in the case of H_2O or P_2O_5, then the empirical formula is also the molecular formula.

Summary

- A chemical formula is an expression that shows the elements in a compound and the relative proportions of those elements.
- If only one atom of a specific type is present, no subscript is used.
- For atoms that have two or more of a specific type of atom present, a subscript is written after the symbol for that atom.
- Polyatomic ions in chemical formulas are enclosed in parentheses followed by a subscript if more than one of the same type of polyatomic ion exist.
- Molecular formulas do not indicate how the atoms are arranged in the molecule.
- The empirical formula tells the lowest whole-number ratio of elements in a compound. The empirical formula does not show the actual number of atoms.

5.2: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.3: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.3: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Classify substances as atomic elements, molecular elements, molecular compounds, or ionic compounds.

Atomic Elements

Most elements exist with **individual atoms** as their basic unit. It is assumed that there is only one atom in a formula if there is no numerical subscript on the right side of an element's symbol.

Molecular Elements

There are many substances that exist as two or more atoms connected together so strongly that they behave as a single particle. These multi-atom combinations are called **molecules**. A molecule is the smallest part of a substance that has the physical and chemical properties of that substance. In some respects, a molecule is similar to an atom. A molecule, however, is composed of more than one atom.

Table 5.3.1: Elements That Exist as Diatomic Molecules

Hydrogen, H	Oxygen	Nitrogen	Fluorine	Chlorine	Bromine	Iodine

Some elements exist naturally as molecules. For example, hydrogen and oxygen exist as two-atom molecules. Other elements also exist naturally as diatomic molecules—a molecule with only two atoms (Table 5.3.1). As with any molecule, these elements are labeled with a **molecular formula**, a formal listing of what and how many atoms are in a molecule. (Sometimes only the word *formula* is used, and its meaning is inferred from the context.) For example, the molecular formula for elemental hydrogen is H_2, with H being the symbol for hydrogen and the subscript 2 implying that there are two atoms of this element in the molecule. Other diatomic elements have similar formulas: O_2, N_2, and so forth. Other elements exist as molecules—for example, sulfur normally exists as an eight-atom molecule, S_8, while phosphorus exists as a four-atom molecule, P_4 (Figure 5.3.1).

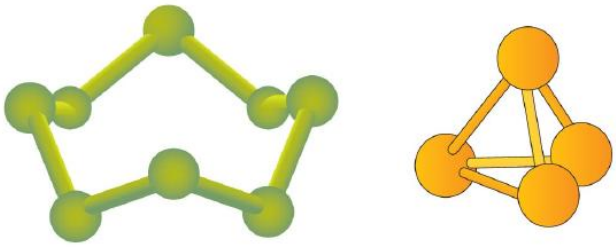


Figure 5.3.1: Molecular Art of S_8 and P_4 Molecules. If each green ball represents a sulfur atom, then the diagram on the left represents an S_8 molecule. The molecule on the right shows that one form of elemental phosphorus exists, as a four-atom molecule.

Figure 5.3.1 shows two examples of how molecules will be represented in this text. An atom is represented by a small ball or sphere, which generally indicates where the nucleus is in the molecule. A cylindrical line connecting the balls represents the connection between the atoms that make this collection of atoms a molecule. This connection is called a chemical bond.

Ionic Compounds

The elements in the periodic table are divided into specific groupings; the metals, the non-metals, the semi-metals, and so on. These groupings are largely based on physical properties and on the tendency of the various elements to bond with other elements by forming either an ionic or a covalent bond. As a general rule of thumb, compounds that involve a metal binding with either a non-metal or a semi-metal will display ionic bonding. Thus, the compound formed from sodium and chlorine will be ionic (a metal and a non-metal). The basic unit of ionic compounds is the **formula unit**.

Molecular Compounds

Compounds that are composed of only non-metals or semi-metals with non-metals will display covalent bonding and will be classified as molecular compounds. Nitrogen monoxide (NO) will be a covalently bound molecule (two non-metals) and silicon

dioxide (SiO_2) will also be a covalently bound molecule (a semi-metal and a non-metal). The basic unit of molecular compounds is the **molecule**.

Example 5.3.1

Provide the classification (i.e. atomic element, molecular element, molecular compound, or ionic compound) of each substance.

a. Fe
b. PCl_3
c. LiBr
d. P_4
e. oxygen gas

Solution

a. **Fe** (iron) is an element that is represented with no subscript, so it is an **atomic element**.
b. **PCl_3** is made up of two nonmetals, so it is a **molecular compound**.
c. **LiBr** is made up of lithium, a metal, and bromine, a nonmetal, so it is an **ionic compound**.
d. **P_4** is a substance that is made up of four atoms of the same element, so it is a **molecular element**.
e. The formula for **oxygen gas** is **O_2** so it is a molecular element.

Exercise 5.3.1

Provide the classification (i.e. atomic element, molecular element, molecular compound, or ionic compound) of each substance.

a. I_2
b. He
c. H_2O
d. Al
e. CuCl

Answer a:

molecular element

Answer b:

atomic element

Answer c:

molecular compound

Answer d:

atomic element

Answer e:

ionic compound

5.3: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.4: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.4: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Write the correct formula for an ionic compound.
- Recognize polyatomic ions in chemical formulas.

Ionic compounds do not exist as molecules. In the solid state, ionic compounds are in crystal lattice containing many ions each of the cation and anion. An ionic formula, like $NaCl$, is an empirical formula. This formula merely indicates that sodium chloride is made of an equal number of sodium and chloride ions. Sodium sulfide, another ionic compound, has the formula Na_2S. This formula indicates that this compound is made up of twice as many sodium ions as sulfide ions. This section will teach you how to find the correct ratio of ions, so that you can write a correct formula.

If you know the name of a binary ionic compound, you can write its **chemical formula**. Start by writing the metal ion with its charge, followed by the nonmetal ion with its charge. Because the overall compound must be electrically neutral, decide how many of each ion is needed in order for the positive and negative charges to cancel each other out.

Example 5.4.1: Aluminum Nitride and Lithium Oxide

Write the formulas for aluminum nitride and lithium oxide.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.1

	Write the formula for aluminum nitride	**Write the formula for lithium oxide**
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	Al^{3+} N^{3-}	Li^{+} O^{2-}
2. Use a multiplier to make the total charge of the cations and anions equal to each other.	total charge of cations = total charge of anions 1(3+) = 1(3-) +3 = -3	total charge of cations = total charge of anions 2(1+) = 1(2-) +2 = -2
3. Use the multipliers as subscript for each ion.	Al_1N_1	Li_2O_1
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all charges and all subscripts that are 1.	AlN	Li_2O

An alternative way to writing a correct formula for an ionic compound is to use the **crisscross method**. In this method, the numerical value of each of the ion charges is crossed over to become the subscript of the other ion. Signs of the charges are dropped.

Example 5.4.2: The Crisscross Method for Lead (IV) Oxide

Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.2

Crisscross Method	**Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide**
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	Pb^{4+} O^{2-}

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	Pb_2O_4
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1.	PbO_2

Exercise 5.4.2

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of each pair of ions.

a. the calcium ion and the oxygen ion
b. the 2+ copper ion and the sulfur ion
c. the 1+ copper ion and the sulfur ion

Answer a:

CaO

Answer b:

CuS

Answer c:

Cu_2S

> *Be aware that ionic compounds are empirical formulas and so must be written as the lowest ratio of the ions.*

Example 5.4.3: Sulfur Compound

Write the formula for sodium combined with sulfur.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.3

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for sodium combined with sulfur
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	$Na^+ \quad S^{2-}$
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	This step is not necessary.
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1.	Na_2S

Exercise 5.4.3

Write the formula for each ionic compound.

a. sodium bromide
b. lithium chloride
c. magnesium oxide

Answer a:

NaBr

Answer b:

LiCl

Answer c:

MgO

Polyatomic Ions

Some ions consist of groups of atoms bonded together and have an overall electric charge. Because these ions contain more than one atom, they are called polyatomic ions. Polyatomic ions have characteristic formulas, names, and charges that should be memorized. For example, NO_3^- is the nitrate ion; it has one nitrogen atom and three oxygen atoms and an overall 1− charge. Table 5.4.1 lists the most common polyatomic ions.

Table 5.4.1: Some Polyatomic Ions

Name	Formula
ammonium ion	NH_4^+
acetate ion	$C_2H_3O_2^-$ (also written $CH_3CO_2^-$)
carbonate ion	CO_3^{2-}
chromate ion	CrO_4^{2-}
dichromate ion	$Cr_2O_7^{2-}$
hydrogen carbonate ion (bicarbonate ion)	HCO_3^-
cyanide ion	CN^-
hydroxide ion	OH^-
nitrate ion	NO_3^-
nitrite ion	NO_2^-
permanganate ion	MnO_4^-
phosphate ion	PO_4^{3-}
hydrogen phosphate ion	HPO_4^{2-}
dihydrogen phosphate ion	$H_2PO_4^-$
sulfate ion	SO_4^{2-}
hydrogen sulfate ion (bisulfate ion)	HSO_4^-
sulfite ion	SO_3^{2-}

The rule for constructing formulas for ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions is the same as for formulas containing monatomic (single-atom) ions: the positive and negative charges must balance. If more than one of a particular polyatomic ion is needed to balance the charge, the *entire formula* for the polyatomic ion must be enclosed in parentheses, and the numerical subscript is placed *outside* the parentheses. This is to show that the subscript applies to the entire polyatomic ion. An example is $Ba(NO_3)_2$.

Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds Containing Polyatomic Ions

Writing a formula for ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions also involves the same steps as for a binary ionic compound. Write the symbol and charge of the cation followed by the symbol and charge of the anion.

Example 5.4.4: Calcium Nitrate

Write the formula for calcium nitrate.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.4

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for calcium nitrate
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	Ca^{2+} NO_3^-
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	 The 2+ charge on Ca becomes the subscript of NO3 and the 1- charge on NO3 becomes the subscript of Ca.
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	$Ca_1(NO_3)_2$
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1. If there is only 1 of the polyatomic ion, leave off parentheses.	$Ca(NO_3)_2$

Example 5.4.5

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of the potassium ion and the sulfate ion.

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.5

Explanation	Answer
Potassium ions have a charge of 1+, while sulfate ions have a charge of 2−. We will need two potassium ions to balance the charge on the sulfate ion, so the proper chemical formula is K_2SO_4.	K_2SO_4

Exercise 5.4.5

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of each pair of ions.

a. the magnesium ion and the carbonate ion
b. the aluminum ion and the acetate ion

Answer a:

$MgCO_3$

Answer b:

$Al(CH_3COO)_3$

Recognizing Ionic Compounds

There are two ways to recognize ionic compounds.

Method 1

Compounds between metal and nonmetal elements are usually ionic. For example, $CaBr_2$ contains a metallic element (calcium, a group 2 [or 2A] metal) and a nonmetallic element (bromine, a group 17 [or 7A] nonmetal). Therefore, it is most likely an ionic compound (in fact, it *is* ionic). In contrast, the compound NO_2 contains two elements that are both nonmetals (nitrogen, from group 15 [or 5A], and oxygen, from group 16 [or 6A]. It is not an ionic compound; it belongs to the category

of covalent compounds discussed elsewhere. Also note that this combination of nitrogen and oxygen has no electric charge specified, so it is *not* the nitrite ion.

Method 2

Second, if you recognize the formula of a polyatomic ion in a compound, the compound is ionic. For example, if you see the formula $Ba(NO_3)_2$, you may recognize the "NO_3" part as the nitrate ion, NO_3^-. (Remember that the convention for writing formulas for ionic compounds is not to include the ionic charge.) This is a clue that the other part of the formula, Ba, is actually the Ba^{2+} ion, with the 2+ charge balancing the overall 2− charge from the two nitrate ions. Thus, this compound is also ionic.

Example 5.4.6

Identify each compound as ionic or not ionic.

a. Na_2O
b. PCl_3
c. NH_4Cl
d. OF_2

Solution

Solution to Example 5.5.6

Explanation	Answer
a. Sodium is a metal, and oxygen is a nonmetal. Therefore, Na_2O is expected to be ionic via method 1.	Na_2O, ionic
b. Both phosphorus and chlorine are nonmetals. Therefore, PCl_3 is not ionic via method 1	PCl_3, not ionic
c. The NH_4 in the formula represents the ammonium ion, NH_4^+, which indicates that this compound is ionic via method 2	NH_4Cl, ionic
d. Both oxygen and fluorine are nonmetals. Therefore, OF_2 is not ionic via method 1	OF_2, not ionic

Exercise 5.4.6

Identify each compound as ionic or not ionic.

a. N_2O
b. $FeCl_3$
c. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. $SOCl_2$

Answer a:

not ionic

Answer b:

ionic

Answer c:

ionic

Answer d:

not ionic

Summary

Formulas for ionic compounds contain the symbols and number of each atom present in a compound in the lowest whole number ratio.

5.4: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.5: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.5: Nomenclature- Naming Compounds

Nomenclature is the process of naming chemical compounds so that they can be easily identified as separate chemicals. The primary function of chemical nomenclature is to ensure that a spoken or written chemical name leaves no ambiguity concerning which chemical compound the name refers to—each chemical name should refer to a single substance. A less important aim is to ensure that each substance has a single name, although a limited number of alternative names is acceptable in some cases. Preferably, the name also conveys some information about the structure or chemistry of a compound. A common name will often suffice to identify a chemical compound in a particular set of circumstances. To be more generally applicable, the name should indicate at least the chemical formula. To be more specific still, the three-dimensional arrangement of the atoms may need to be specified.

Contributions & Attributions

- Wikipedia (CC-BY-SA-3.0)

5.5: Nomenclature- Naming Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.6: Nomenclature- Naming Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.6: Naming Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- To use the rules for naming ionic compounds.

After learning a few more details about the names of individual ions, you will be one step away from knowing how to name ionic compounds. This section begins the formal study of nomenclature, the systematic naming of chemical compounds.

Naming Ions

The name of a monatomic cation is simply the name of the element followed by the word *ion*. Thus, Na^+ is the sodium ion, Al^{3+} is the aluminum ion, Ca^{2+} is the calcium ion, and so forth.

We have seen that some elements lose different numbers of electrons, producing ions of different charges (Figure 3.3). Iron, for example, can form two cations, each of which, when combined with the same anion, makes a different compound with unique physical and chemical properties. Thus, we need a different name for each iron ion to distinguish Fe^{2+} from Fe^{3+}. The same issue arises for other ions with more than one possible charge.

There are two ways to make this distinction. In the simpler, more modern approach, called the **Stock system**, an ion's positive charge is indicated by a roman numeral in parentheses after the element name, followed by the word *ion*. Thus, Fe^{2+} is called the iron(II) ion, while Fe^{3+} is called the iron(III) ion. This system is used only for elements that form more than one common positive ion. We do not call the Na^+ ion the sodium(I) ion because (I) is unnecessary. Sodium forms only a 1+ ion, so there is no ambiguity about the name *sodium ion*.

Table 5.6.1: The Modern and Common System of Cation Names

Element	Stem	Charge	Modern Name	Common Name
iron	ferr-	2+	iron(II) ion	ferrous ion
		3+	iron(III) ion	ferric ion
copper	cupr-	1+	copper(I) ion	cuprous ion
		2+	copper(II) ion	cupric ion
tin	stann-	2+	tin(II) ion	stannous ion
		4+	tin(IV) ion	stannic ion
lead	plumb-	2+	lead(II) ion	plumbous ion
		4+	lead(IV) ion	plumbic ion
chromium	chrom-	2+	chromium(II) ion	chromous ion
		3+	chromium(III) ion	chromic ion
gold	aur-	1+	gold(I) ion	aurous ion
		3+	gold(III) ion	auric ion

The second system, called the **common system**, is not conventional but is still prevalent and used in the health sciences. This system recognizes that many metals have two common cations. The common system uses two suffixes (*-ic* and *-ous*) that are appended to the stem of the element name. The *-ic* suffix represents the greater of the two cation charges, and the *-ous* suffix represents the lower one. In many cases, the stem of the element name comes from the Latin name of the element. Table 5.6.1 lists the elements that use the common system, along with their respective cation names.

Table 5.6.2: Some Monatomic Anions

Ion	Name

Ion	Name
F^-	fluoride ion
Cl^-	chloride ion
Br^-	bromide ion
I^-	iodide ion
O^{2-}	oxide ion
S^{2-}	sulfide ion
P^{3-}	phosphide ion
N^{3-}	nitride ion

The name of a monatomic anion consists of the stem of the element name, the suffix *-ide*, and then the word *ion*. Thus, as we have already seen, Cl^- is "chlor-" + "-ide ion," or the chloride ion. Similarly, O^{2-} is the oxide ion, Se^{2-} is the selenide ion, and so forth. Table 5.6.2 lists the names of some common monatomic ions. The polyatomic ions have their own characteristic names, as discussed earlier.

Example 5.6.1

Name each ion.

a. Ca^{2+}
b. S^{2-}
c. SO_3^{2-}
d. NH_4^+
e. Cu^+

Solution

a. the calcium ion
b. the sulfide ion
c. the sulfite ion
d. the ammonium ion
e. the copper(I) ion or the cuprous ion

Exercise 5.6.1

Name each ion.

a. Fe^{2+}
b. Fe^{3+}
c. SO_4^{2-}
d. Ba^{2+}
e. HCO_3^-

Answer a:
iron(II) ion
Answer b:
iron(III) ion
Answer c:
sulfate ion
Answer d:
barium ion

Answer e:

hydrogen carbonate ion or bicarbonate ion

Example 5.6.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the bromide ion
b. the phosphate ion
c. the cupric ion
d. the magnesium ion

Solution

a. Br^-
b. PO_4^{3-}
c. Cu^{2+}
d. Mg^{2+}

Exercise 5.6.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the fluoride ion
b. the carbonate ion
c. the stannous ion
d. the potassium ion

Answer a:

F^-

Answer b:

CO_3^{2-}

Answer c:

Sn^{2+}

Answer d:

K^+

Naming Binary Ionic Compounds with a Metal that Forms Only One Type of Cation

A **binary** ionic compound is a compound composed of a **monatomic** metal **cation** and a monatomic nonmetal **anion**. The metal cation is named first, followed by the nonmetal anion as illustrated in Figure 5.6.1 for the compound $BaCl_2$. The word *ion* is dropped from both parts.

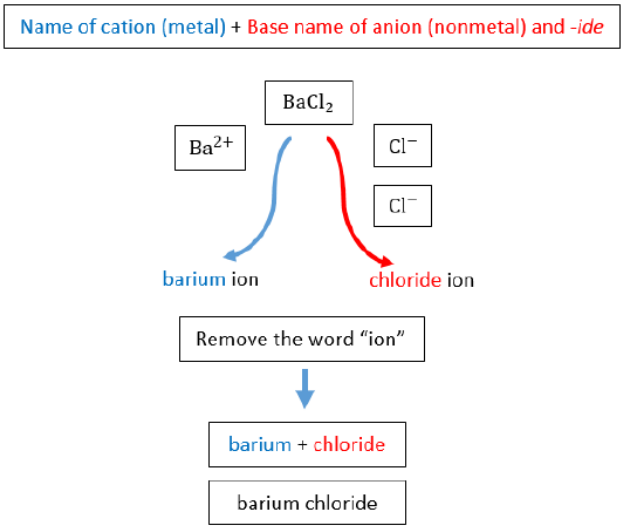


Figure 5.6.1: Naming $BaCl_2$
Naming formula: Name of metal cation + base
name of nonmetal anion + suffix -ide. BaCl2 is named as barium chloride.

Subscripts in the formula do not affect the name.

Example 5.6.3: Naming Ionic Compounds

Name each ionic compound.

a. $CaCl_2$
b. AlF_3
c. KCl

Solution

a. Using the names of the ions, this ionic compound is named calcium chloride.
b. The name of this ionic compound is aluminum fluoride.
c. The name of this ionic compound is potassium chloride

Exercise 5.6.3

Name each ionic compound.

a. AgI
b. MgO
c. Ca_3P_2

Answer a:

silver iodide

Answer b:

magnesium oxide

Answer c:

calcium phosphide

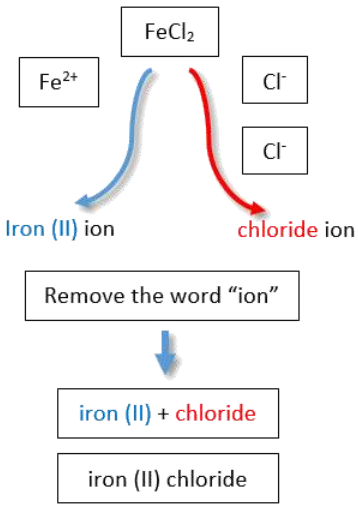
Naming Binary Ionic Compounds with a Metal That Forms More Than One Type of Cation

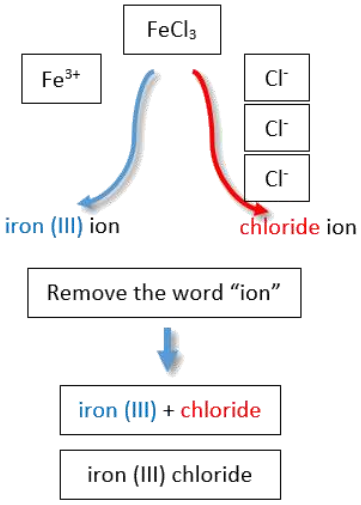
If you are given a formula for an ionic compound whose cation can have more than one possible charge, you must first determine the charge on the cation before identifying its correct name. For example, consider $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$. In the first compound, the iron ion has a 2+ charge because there are two Cl^- ions in the formula (1− charge on each chloride ion). In the second compound, the

iron ion has a 3+ charge, as indicated by the three Cl^- ions in the formula. These are two different compounds that need two different names. By the Stock system, the names are iron(II) chloride and iron(III) chloride (Figure 5.6.2).

Table 5.6.3: Naming the $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$ Compounds in the Modern/Stock System.

Name of cation (metal) + (Roman Numeral in parenthesis) + Base name of anion (nonmetal) and *-ide*

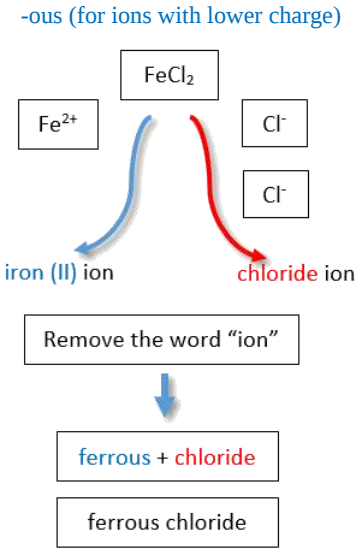


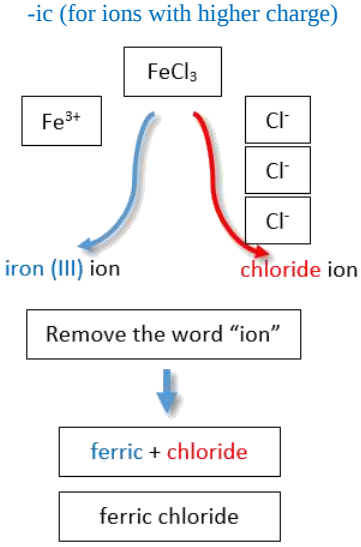


If we were to use the stems and suffixes of the common system, the names would be ferrous chloride and ferric chloride, respectively (Figure 5.6.3) .

Table 5.6.4: Naming the $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$ Compounds in the Old/Common System.

"Old" base name of cation (metal) and *-ic or -ous* + Base name of anion (nonmetal) and *-ide*





Example 5.6.4:

Name each ionic compound.

a. Co_2O_3
b. FeCl2

Solution

Solutions to Example 5.7.4

	Explanation	Answer
a	We know that cobalt can have more than one possible charge; we just need to determine what it is. • Oxide always has a 2− charge, so with three oxide ions, we have a total negative charge of 6−. • This means that the two cobalt ions have to contribute 6+, which for two cobalt ions means that each one is 3+. • Therefore, the proper name for this ionic compound is cobalt(III) oxide.	cobalt(III) oxide
b	Iron can also have more than one possible charge. • Chloride always has a 1− charge, so with two chloride ions, we have a total negative charge of 2−. • This means that the one iron ion must have a 2+ charge. • Therefore, the proper name for this ionic compound is iron(II) chloride.	iron(II) chloride

Exercise 5.6.4

Name each ionic compound.

a. $AuCl_3$
b. PbO_2
c. CuO

Answer a:

gold(III) chloride

Answer b:

lead(IV) oxide

Answer c:

copper(II) oxide

Naming Ionic Compounds with Polyatomic Ions

The process of naming ionic compounds with polyatomic ions is the same as naming binary ionic compounds. The cation is named first, followed by the anion. One example is the ammonium sulfate compound in Figure 5.6.6.

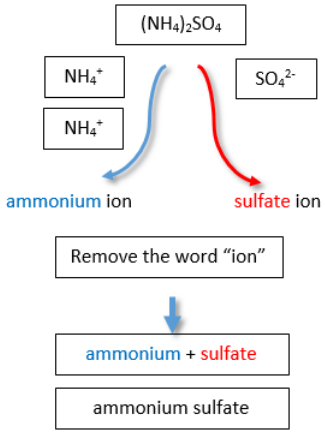


Figure 5.6.2: Naming Ionic Compounds with Polyatomic Ions

Example 5.6.5: Naming Ionic Compounds

Write the proper name for each ionic compound.

a. $(NH_4)_2S$
b. $AlPO_4$,
c. $Fe_3(PO_4)_2$

Solution

Solutions to Example 5.7.5

Explanation	Answer
a. The ammonium ion has a 1+ charge and the sulfide ion has a 2− charge. Two ammonium ions need to balance the charge on a single sulfide ion. The compound’s name is ammonium sulfide.	ammonium sulfide
b. The ions have the same magnitude of charge, one of each (ion) is needed to balance the charges. The name of the compound is aluminum phosphate.	aluminum phosphate
c. Neither charge is an exact multiple of the other, so we have to go to the least common multiple of 6. To get 6+, three iron(II) ions are needed, and to get 6−, two phosphate ions are needed . The compound’s name is iron(II) phosphate.	iron(II) phosphate

Exercise 5.6.5A

Write the proper name for each ionic compound.

a. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
b. $Co(NO_2)_3$

Answer a:

ammonium phosphate

Answer b:

cobalt(III) nitrite

Figure 5.6.1 is a synopsis of how to name simple ionic compounds.

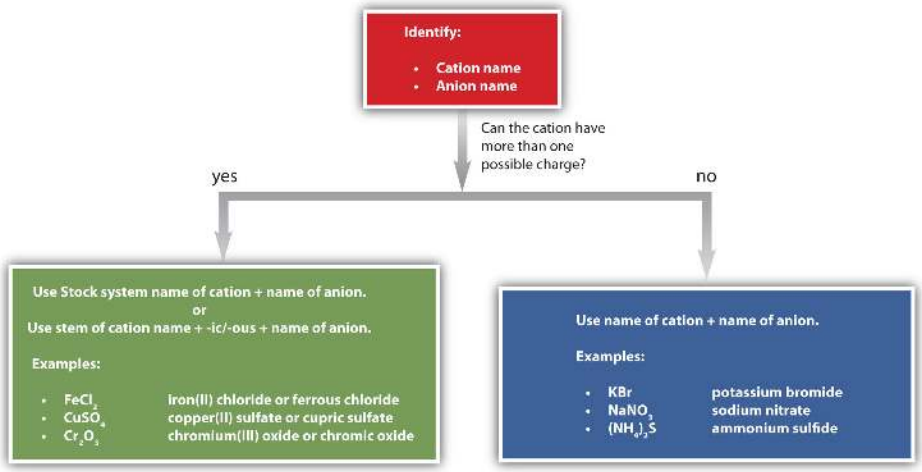


Figure 5.6.3: A Guide to Naming Simple Ionic Compounds.

? Exercise 5.6.5B

Name each ionic compound.

a. $ZnBr_2$
b. Al_2O_3
c. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. AuF_3
e. AgF

Answer a:

zinc bromide

Answer b:

aluminum oxide

Answer c:

ammonium phosphate

Answer d:

gold(III) fluoride or auric fluoride

Answer e:

silver fluoride

Summary

- Ionic compounds are named by stating the cation first, followed by the anion.
- Positive and negative charges must balance.
- Some anions have multiple forms and are named accordingly with the use of roman numerals in parentheses.
- Ternary compounds are composed of three or more elements.

5.6: Naming Ionic Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.7: Naming Ionic Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.7: Naming Molecular Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Determine the name of a simple molecular compound from its chemical formula.

Molecular Compounds

Molecular compounds are inorganic compounds that take the form of discrete **molecules**. Examples include such familiar substances as water (H_2O) and carbon dioxide (CO_2). These compounds are very different from ionic compounds like sodium chloride ($NaCl$). Ionic compounds are formed when metal atoms lose one or more of their electrons to nonmetal atoms. The resulting cations and anions are electrostatically attracted to each other.

So what holds the atoms of a molecule together? Rather than forming ions, the atoms of a molecule share their **electrons** in such a way that a **bond** forms between a pair of atoms. In a carbon dioxide molecule, there are two of these bonds, each occurring between the carbon atom and one of the two oxygen atoms.

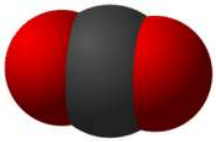


Figure 5.7.1: Carbon dioxide molecules consist of a central carbon atom bonded to 2 oxygen atoms.

Larger molecules can have many, many bonds that serve to keep the molecule together. In a large sample of a given molecular compound, all of the individual molecules are identical.

Naming Binary Molecular Compounds

Recall that a molecular formula shows the number of atoms of each element that a molecule contains. A molecule of water contains two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom, so its formula is H_2O. A molecule of octane, which is a component of gasoline, contains 8 atoms of carbon and 18 atoms of hydrogen. The molecular formula of octane is C_8H_{18}.



Figure 5.7.2: Nitrogen dioxide (NO_2) is a reddish-brown toxic gas that is a prominent air pollutant produced by internal combustion engines.

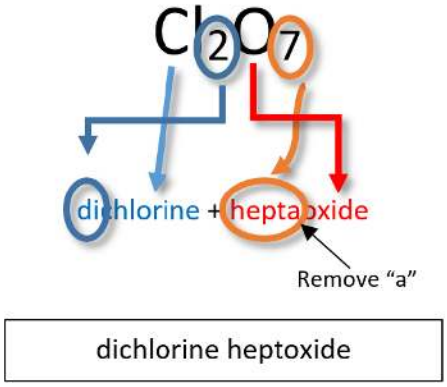
Naming *binary* (two-element) molecular compounds is similar to naming simple ionic compounds. The first element in the formula is simply listed using the name of the element. The second element is named by taking the stem of the element name and adding the suffix *-ide*. A system of numerical prefixes is used to specify the number of atoms in a molecule. Table 5.7.1 lists these numerical prefixes.

Table 5.7.1: Numerical Prefixes for Naming Binary Covalent Compounds

Number of Atoms in Compound	Prefix on the Name of the Element
1	mono-*
2	di-
3	tri-
4	tetra-
5	penta-

Number of Atoms in Compound	Prefix on the Name of the Element
6	hexa-
7	hepta-
8	octa-
9	nona-
10	deca-

*This prefix is not used for the first element's name.



Note

- Generally, the less electronegative element is written first in the formula, though there are a few exceptions. Carbon is always first in a formula and hydrogen is after nitrogen in a formula such as NH_3. The order of common nonmetals in binary compound formulas is C, P, N, H, S, I, Br, Cl, O, F.
- The *a* or *o* at the end of a prefix is usually dropped from the name when the name of the element begins with a vowel. As an example, four oxygen atoms, is tetr**o**xide instead of tetr**ao**xide.
- The prefix is "mono" is not added to the first element's name if there is only one atom of the first element in a molecule.

Some examples of molecular compounds are listed in Table 5.7.2.

Table 5.7.2

Formula	Name
NO	nitrogen monoxide
N_2O	dinitrogen monoxide
S_2Cl_2	disulfur dichloride
Cl_2O_7	dichlorine heptoxide

Notice that the *mono-* prefix is not used with the nitrogen in the first compound, but is used with the oxygen in both of the first two examples. The S_2Cl_2 emphasizes that the formulas for molecular compounds are not reduced to their lowest ratios. The *o* of the *mono-* and the *a* of *hepta-* are dropped from the name when paired with oxide.

Exercise 5.7.1

Write the name for each compound.

a. CF_4
b. $SeCl_2$

c. SO_3

Answer a:

carbon tetrafluoride

Answer b:

selenium dichloride

Answer c:

sulfur trioxide

Simple molecular compounds with common names

For some simple covalent compounds, we use common names rather than systematic names. We have already encountered these compounds, but we list them here explicitly:

- H_2O: water
- NH_3: ammonia
- CH_4: methane
- H_2O_2: hydrogen peroxide

Methane is the simplest organic compound. Organic compounds are compounds with carbon atoms and are named by a separate nomenclature system.

Some Compounds Have Both Covalent and Ionic Bonds

If you recall the introduction of polyatomic ions, you will remember that the bonds that hold the polyatomic ions together are covalent bonds. Once the polyatomic ion is constructed with covalent bonds, it reacts with other substances as an ion. The bond between a polyatomic ion and another ion will be ionic. An example of this type of situation is in the compound sodium nitrate. Sodium nitrate is composed of a sodium ion and a nitrate ion. The nitrate ion is held together by covalent bonds and the nitrate ion is attached to the sodium ion by an ionic bond.

Summary

- A molecular compound is usually composed of two or more nonmetal elements.
- Molecular compounds are named with the first element first and then the second element by using the stem of the element name plus the suffix -ide. Numerical prefixes are used to specify the number of atoms in a molecule.

5.7: Naming Molecular Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.8: Naming Molecular Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.8: Naming Acids

A spot test for gold has been in use for decades. The sample is first treated with nitric acid. Other metals may react or dissolve in this acid, but gold will not. Then the sample is added to a mixture of nitric acid and hydrochloric acid. Gold will only dissolve in this mixture. The term "acid test" arose from the California gold rush in the late 1840's when this combination was used to test for the presence of real gold. It has since come to mean, "tested and approved" in a number of fields.

Acids

An **acid** can be defined in several ways. The most straightforward definition is that an acid is a molecular compound that contains one or more hydrogen atoms and produces hydrogen ions $\left(H^+\right)$ when dissolved in water.



Figure 5.8.1: (A) Vinegar comes in a variety of types, but all contain acetic acid. (B) Citrus fruits like grapefruit contain citric and ascorbic acids.

This is a different type of compound than the others we have seen so far. Acids are molecular, which means that in their pure state they are individual molecules and do not adopt the extended three-dimensional structures of ionic compounds like $NaCl$. However, when these molecules are dissolved in water, the chemical bond between the hydrogen atom and the rest of the molecule breaks, leaving a positively-charged hydrogen ion and an anion. This can be symbolized in a chemical equation:

$$HCl \rightarrow H^+ + Cl^-$$

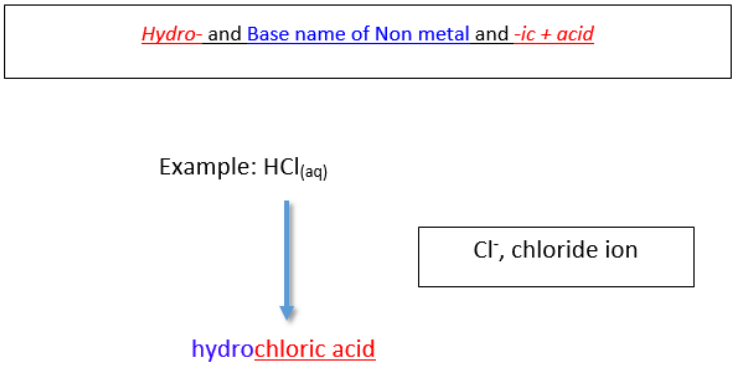
Since acids produce H^+ cations upon dissolving in water, the H of an acid is written first in the formula of an inorganic acid. The remainder of the acid (other than the H) is the anion after the acid dissolves. Organic acids are also an important class of compounds, but will not be discussed here.

Naming Acids

Since all acids contain hydrogen, the name of an acid is based on the anion that goes with it. These anions can either be monatomic or polyatomic.

Naming Binary acids (in aqueous form)

A **binary acid** is an acid that consists of hydrogen and one other element. The most common binary acids contain a halogen. The acid name begins with the prefix *hydro-*. followed by the base name of the anion, followed by the suffix *-ic*.



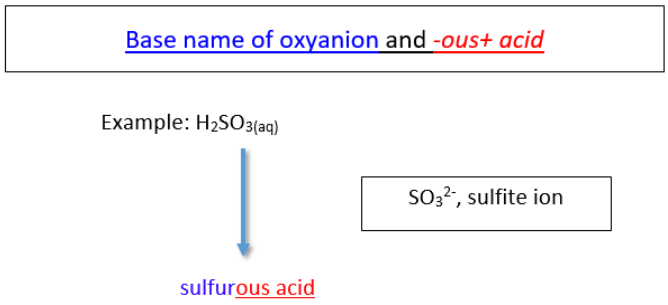
Formula for naming acids: Hydro- and Base name of nonmetal and -ic + acid. Example: HCl is hydrochloric acid.

Naming Oxyacids

An **oxyacid** is an acid that consists of hydrogen, oxygen, and a third element. The third element is usually a nonmetal.

a. Oxyanions with ***-ite*** ending.

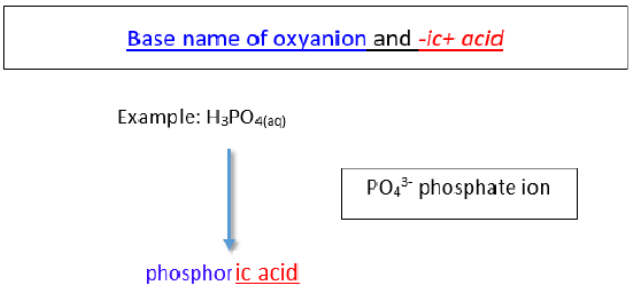
The name of the acid is the root of the anion followed by the suffix ***-ous***. There is no prefix.



Formula for naming oxyanions with -ite ending: Base name of oxyanion and -ous + acid. Example: H2SO3 is sulfurous acid.

b. Oxyanions with ***-ate*** ending.

The name of the acid is the root of the anion followed by the suffix ***-ic***. There is no prefix.



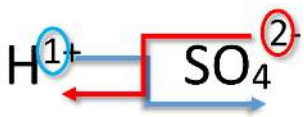
Formula for naming oxyanions with -ate ending: Base name of oxyanion and -ic + acid. Example: H3PO4 is phosphoric acid.

Note

The base name for sulfur containing oxyacid is ***sulfur-*** instead of just ***sulf-***. The same is true for a phosphorus containing oxyacid. The base name is ***phosphor-*** instead of simply ***phosph-***.

Writing Formulas for Acids

Like other compounds that we have studied, acids are electrically neutral. Therefore, the charge of the anion part of the formula must be exactly balanced out by the H^+ ions. Another way to think about writing the correct formula is to utilize the crisscross method, shown below for sulfuric acid.



H2SO4: H has +1 charge and SO4 has -2 charge, so there must be 2 H+ and 1 SO4 for the charges to balance out.

Formula: H_2SO_4

Figure 5.8.2: *Crisscross approach to writing formula for sulfuric acid.*

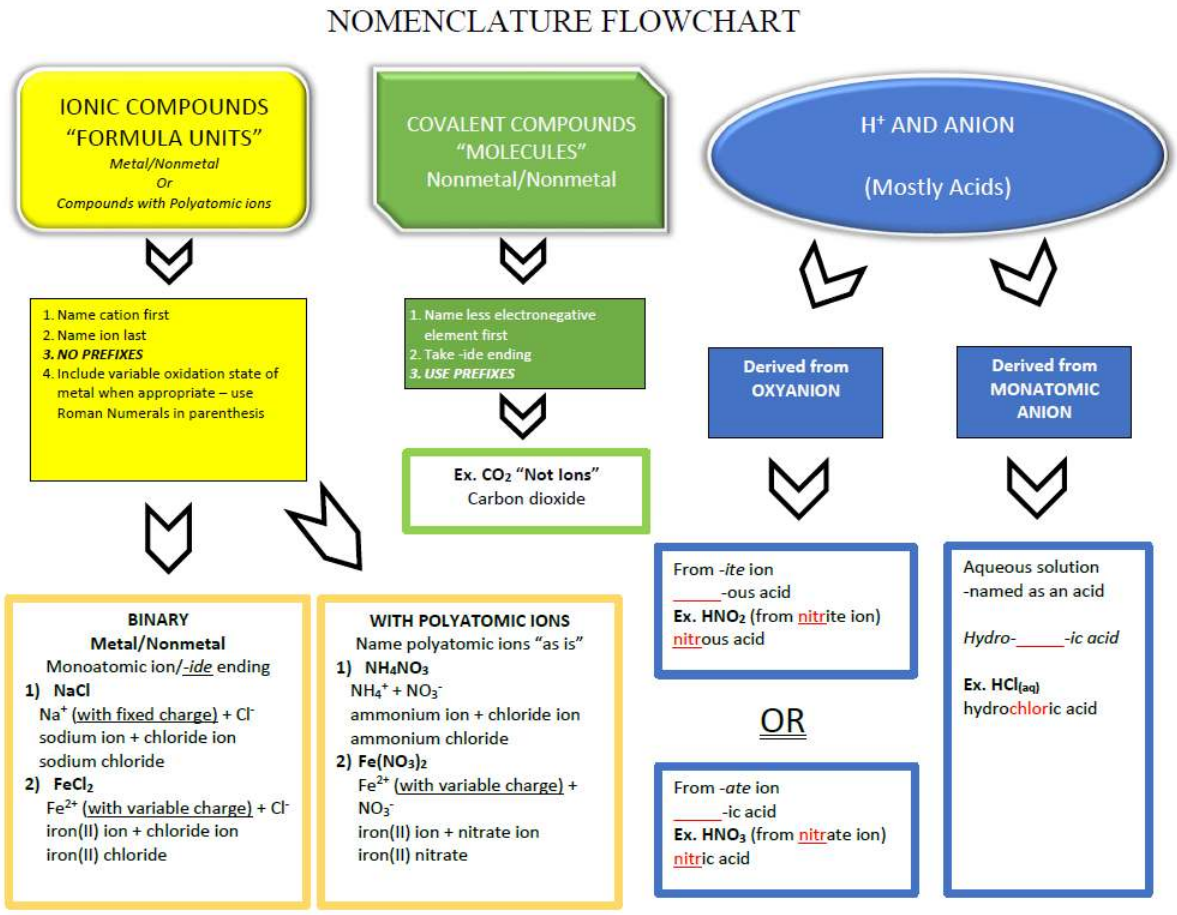
Summary

- Acids are molecular compounds that release hydrogen ions.
- A binary acid consists of hydrogen and one other element.
- Oxyacids contain hydrogen, oxygen, and one other element.
- The name of the acid is based on the anion attached to the hydrogen.

5.8: Naming Acids is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.9: Naming Acids** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

5.9: Nomenclature Summary



Contributions & Attributions

5.9: Nomenclature Summary is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **5.10: Nomenclature Summary** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Chemical Reactions

6.1: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction
6.2: The Chemical Equation
6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations
6.4: Classifying Chemical Reactions

6: Chemical Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

6.1: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction

Learning Objectives

- Identify the evidence for chemical reactions.

In a chemical change, new substances are formed. In order for this to occur, the chemical bonds of the substances break, and the atoms that compose them separate and rearrange themselves into new substances with new chemical bonds. When this process occurs, we call it a chemical reaction. A **chemical reaction** is the process in which one or more substances are changed into one or more new substances.

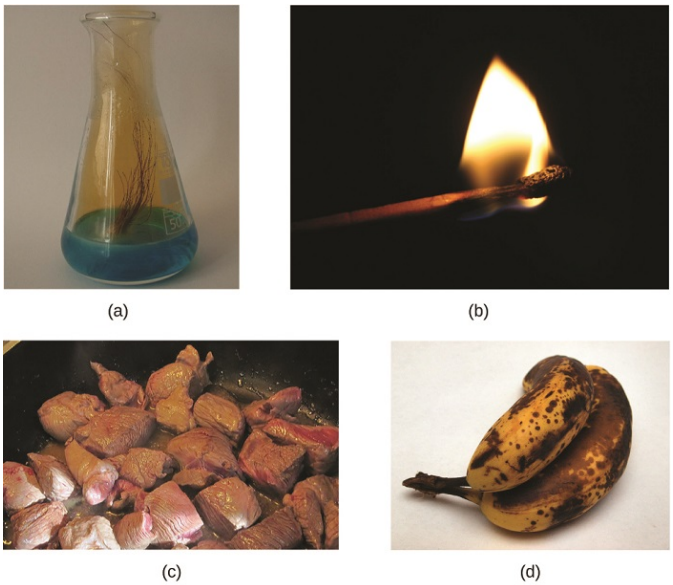


Figure 6.1.1: (a) Copper and nitric acid undergo a chemical change to form copper nitrate and brown, gaseous nitrogen dioxide. (b) During the combustion of a match, cellulose in the match and oxygen from the air undergo a chemical change to form carbon dioxide and water vapor. (c) Cooking red meat causes a number of chemical changes, including the oxidation of iron in myoglobin that results in the familiar red-to-brown color change. (d) A banana turning brown is a chemical change as new, darker (and less tasty) substances form. (Credit b: modification of work by Jeff Turner; credit c: modification of work by Gloria Cabada-Leman; credit d: modification of work by Roberto Verzo.)

To identify a chemical reaction, we look for a **chemical change**. A chemical change always produces one or more types of matter that differ from the matter present before the change. The formation of rust is a chemical change because rust is a different kind of matter than the iron, oxygen, and water present before the rust formed. The explosion of nitroglycerin is a chemical change because the gases produced are very different kinds of matter from the original substance. Other examples of chemical changes include: reactions that are performed in a lab (such as copper reacting with nitric acid), all forms of combustion (burning), and food being cooked, digested, or rotting (Figure 6.1.1).



***Video*6.1.1*:** *Evidence of a Chemical Reaction*

Example 6.1.1: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction

Which of the following is a chemical reaction?

a. Freezing liquid mercury.
b. Adding yellow to blue to make green.
c. Cutting a piece of paper into two pieces.
d. Dropping a sliced orange into a vat of sodium dydroxide.
e. Filling a balloon with natural air.

Solution

A, B, C, & E involve only physical changes. A sliced orange has acid (citric acid) that can react with sodium hydroxide, so the answer is D.

Exercise 6.1.1

Which of the following is a chemical reaction?

a. Painting a wall blue.
b. A bicycle rusting.
c. Ice cream melting.
d. Scratching a key across a desk.
e. Making a sand castle.

Answer

B

Example 6.1.2: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction

Which of the following is not a chemical reaction?

a. Shattering glass with a baseball.
b. Corroding metal.
c. Fireworks exploding.
d. Lighting a match.
e. Baking a cake.

Solution

Shattering glass with a baseball results in glass broken into many pieces but no chemical change happens, so the answer is A.

Exercise 6.1.2

Which of the following is NOT a chemical reaction?

a. Frying an egg.
b. Slicing carrots.
c. A Macbook falling out of a window.
d. Creating ATP in the human body.
e. Dropping a fizzy tablet into a glass of water.

Answer

B and C

Summary

Chemical reactions can be identified via a wide range of different observable factors including change in color, energy change (temperature change or light produced), gas production, formation of precipitate and change in properties.

This page titled 6.1: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew (OpenStax) via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.2: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

6.2: The Chemical Equation

Learning Objectives

- Identify the reactants and products in any chemical reaction.
- Convert word equations into chemical equations.
- Use the common symbols, (s), (l), (g), (aq), and $\rightarrow$ appropriately when writing a chemical reaction.

In a chemical change, new substances are formed. In order for this to occur, the chemical bonds of the substances break, and the atoms that compose them separate and rearrange themselves into new substances with new chemical bonds. When this process occurs, we call it a chemical reaction. A **chemical reaction** is the process in which one or more substances are changed into one or more new substances.

Reactants and Products

To describe a chemical reaction, we need to indicate what substances are present at the beginning and what substances are present at the end. The substances that are present at the beginning are called **reactants** and the substances present at the end are called **products**.

Sometimes when reactants are put into a reaction vessel, a reaction will take place to produce products. Reactants are the starting materials, that is, whatever we have as our initial ingredients. The products are just that—what is produced—or the result of what happens to the reactants when we put them together in the reaction vessel. If we think about baking chocolate chip cookies, our reactants would be flour, butter, sugar, vanilla, baking soda, salt, egg, and chocolate chips. What would be the products? Cookies! The reaction vessel would be our mixing bowl.

$$\underbrace{\text{Flour} + \text{Butter} + \text{Sugar} + \text{Vanilla} + \text{Baking Soda} + \text{Eggs} + \text{Chocolate Chips}}_{\text{Ingredients} = \text{Reactants}} \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{Cookies}}_{\text{Product}}$$

Writing Chemical Equations

When sulfur dioxide is added to oxygen, sulfur trioxide is produced. Sulfur dioxide and oxygen, $\mathrm{SO_2} + \mathrm{O_2}$, are reactants and sulfur trioxide, $\mathrm{SO_3}$, is the product.

$$\underbrace{2\,\mathrm{SO_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)}}_{\text{Reactants}} \rightarrow \underbrace{2\,\mathrm{SO_3(g)}}_{\text{Products}}$$

In chemical reactions, the reactants are found before the symbol "$\rightarrow$" and the products are found after the symbol "$\rightarrow$". The general equation for a reaction is:

$$\text{Reactants} \rightarrow \text{Products}$$

There are a few special symbols that we need to know in order to "talk" in chemical shorthand. In the table below is the summary of the major symbols used in chemical equations. Table $6.2.1$ shows a listing of symbols used in chemical equations.

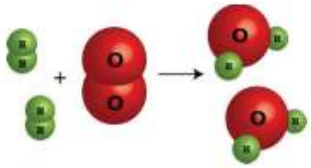
Table 6.2.1: Symbols Used in Chemical Equations

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
$+$	used to separate multiple reactants or products	(s)	reactant or product in the solid state
$\rightarrow$	yield sign; separates reactants from products	(l)	reactant or product in the liquid state
$\rightleftharpoons$	replaces the yield sign for reversible reactions that reach equilibrium	(g)	reactant or product in the gas state

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
$\xrightarrow{\text{Pt}}$	formula written above the arrow is used as a catalyst in the reaction	(aq)	reactant or product in an aqueous solution (dissolved in water)
$\xrightarrow{\Delta}$	triangle indicates that the reaction is being heated		

Chemists have a choice of methods for describing a chemical reaction.

1. They could draw a picture of the chemical reaction.



2. They could write a word equation for the chemical reaction:
"Two molecules of hydrogen gas react with one molecule of oxygen gas to produce two molecules of water vapor."

3. They could write the equation in chemical shorthand.

$$2\text{H}_2\,(g) + \text{O}_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2\text{H}_2\text{O}\,(g)$$

In the symbolic equation, chemical formulas are used instead of chemical names for reactants and products, while symbols are used to indicate the phase of each substance. It should be apparent that the chemical shorthand method is the quickest and clearest method for writing chemical equations.

We could write that an aqueous solution of calcium nitrate is added to an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide to produce solid calcium hydroxide and an aqueous solution of sodium nitrate. Or in shorthand we could write:

$$\text{Ca}(\text{NO}_3)_2\,(aq) + 2\text{NaOH}\,(aq) \rightarrow \text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2\,(s) + 2\text{NaNO}_3\,(aq)$$

How much easier is that to read? Let's try it in reverse. Look at the following reaction in shorthand and write the word equation for the reaction:

$$\text{Cu}\,(s) + \text{AgNO}_3\,(aq) \rightarrow \text{Cu}(\text{NO}_3)_2\,(aq) + \text{Ag}\,(s)$$

The word equation for this reaction might read something like "solid copper reacts with an aqueous solution of silver nitrate to produce a solution of copper (II) nitrate with solid silver."

To turn word equations into symbolic equations, we need to follow the given steps:

1. Identify the reactants and products. This will help you know which symbols go on each side of the arrow and where the $+$ signs go.
2. Write the correct formulas for all compounds. You will need to use the rules you learned in Chapter 5 (including making all ionic compounds charge balanced).
3. Write the correct formulas for all elements. Usually this is given straight off of the periodic table. However, there are seven elements that are considered diatomic, meaning that they are always found in pairs in nature. They include those elements listed in the table.

Table 6.2.1*: Diatomic Elements*

Element Name	Hydrogen	Nitrogen	Oxygen	Fluorine	Chlorine	Bromine	Iodine
Formula	H_2	N_2	O_2	F_2	Cl_2	Br_2	I_2

Example 6.2.1

Transfer the following symbolic equations into word equations or word equations into symbolic equations.

a. $\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$
b. Gaseous propane, $\mathrm{C_3H_8}$, burns in oxygen gas to produce gaseous carbon dioxide and liquid water.
c. Hydrogen fluoride gas reacts with an aqueous solution of potassium carbonate to produce an aqueous solution of potassium fluoride, liquid water, and gaseous carbon dioxide.

Solution

a. An aqueous solution of hydrochloric acid reacts with an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide to produce an aqueous solution of sodium chloride and liquid water.

b. Reactants: propane ($\mathrm{C_3H_8}$) and oxygen ($\mathrm{O_2}$)

Product: carbon dioxide ($\mathrm{CO_2}$) and water ($\mathrm{H_2O}$)

$$\mathrm{C_3H_8}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

c. Reactants: hydrogen fluoride and potassium carbonate

Products: potassium fluoride, water, and carbon dioxide

$$\mathrm{HF}\,(g) + \mathrm{K_2CO_3}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{KF}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) + \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g)$$

Exercise 6.2.1

Transfer the following symbolic equations into word equations or word equations into symbolic equations.

a. Hydrogen gas reacts with nitrogen gas to produce gaseous ammonia.
b. $\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{LiOH}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{LiCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$
c. Copper metal is heated with oxygen gas to produce solid copper(II) oxide.

Answer a

$H_2(g) + N_2(g) \rightarrow NH_3(g)$

Answer b

An aqueous solution of hydrochloric acid reacts with an aqueous solution of lithium hydroxide to produce an aqueous solution of lithium chloride and liquid water.

Answer c

$Cu(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CuO(s)$

Summary

- A chemical reaction is the process by which one or more substances are changed into one or more new substances.
- Chemical reactions are represented by chemical equations.
- Chemical equations have reactants on the left, an arrow that is read as "yields", and the products on the right.

6.2: The Chemical Equation is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **7.3: The Chemical Equation** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

- Explain the roles of subscripts and coefficients in chemical equations.
- Balance a chemical equation when given the unbalanced equation.
- Explain the role of the Law of Conservation of Mass in a chemical reaction.

Even though chemical compounds are broken up and new compounds are formed during a chemical reaction, atoms in the reactants do not disappear, nor do new atoms appear to form the products. In chemical reactions, atoms are never created or destroyed. The same atoms that were present in the reactants are present in the products—they are merely reorganized into different arrangements. In a complete chemical equation, the two sides of the equation must be present on the reactant and the product sides of the equation.

Coefficients and Subscripts

There are two types of numbers that appear in chemical equations. There are subscripts, which are part of the chemical formulas of the reactants and products; and there are coefficients that are placed in front of the formulas to indicate how many molecules of that substance is used or produced.

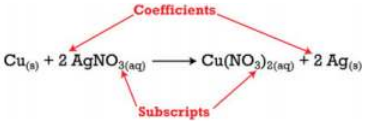
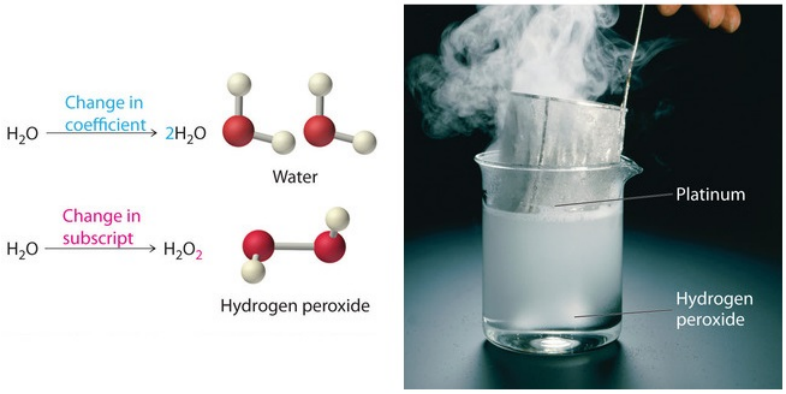


Figure 6.3.1: Balancing Equations. You cannot change subscripts in a chemical formula to balance a chemical equation; you can change only the coefficients. Changing subscripts changes the ratios of atoms in the molecule and the resulting chemical properties. For example, water (H_2O) and hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) are chemically distinct substances. H_2O_2 decomposes to H_2O and O_2 gas when it comes in contact with the metal platinum, whereas no such reaction occurs between water and platinum.

The **subscripts** are part of the formulas and once the formulas for the reactants and products are determined, the subscripts may not be changed. The **coefficients** indicate the number of each substance involved in the reaction and may be changed in order to balance the equation. The equation above indicates that one mole of solid copper is reacting with two moles of aqueous silver nitrate to produce one mole of aqueous copper (II) nitrate and two atoms of solid silver.

Balancing a Chemical Equation

Because the identities of the reactants and products are fixed, the equation cannot be balanced by changing the subscripts of the reactants or the products. To do so would change the chemical identity of the species being described, as illustrated in Figure 6.3.1.



Original molecule H_2O: if the coefficient 2 is added in front, that makes 2 water molecules; but if the subscript 2 is added to make H_2O_2, that's hydrogen peroxide.

The simplest and most generally useful method for balancing chemical equations is “inspection,” better known as trial and error. The following is an efficient approach to balancing a chemical equation using this method.

Steps in Balancing a Chemical Equation

1. Identify the most complex substance.
2. Beginning with that substance, choose an element(s) that appears in only one reactant and one product, if possible. Adjust the coefficients to obtain the same number of atoms of this element(s) on both sides.
3. Balance polyatomic ions (if present on both sides of the chemical equation) as a unit.
4. Balance the remaining atoms, usually ending with the least complex substance and using fractional coefficients if necessary. If a fractional coefficient has been used, multiply both sides of the equation by the denominator to obtain whole numbers for the coefficients.
5. Count the numbers of atoms of each kind on both sides of the equation to be sure that the chemical equation is balanced.

Example 6.3.1: Combustion of Heptane

Balance the chemical equation for the combustion of Heptane (C_7H_{16}).

$$C_7H_{16}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$$

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.3.1

Steps	Example
1. **Identify the most complex substance.**	The most complex substance is the one with the largest number of different atoms, which is C_7H_{16}. We will assume initially that the final balanced chemical equation contains 1 molecule or formula unit of this substance.
2. **Adjust the coefficients.**	a. Because one molecule of n-heptane contains 7 carbon atoms, we need 7 CO_2 molecules, each of which contains 1 carbon atom, on the right side: $$C_7H_{16}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow \underline{7}CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$$ • 7 carbon atoms on both reactant and product sides b. Because one molecule of n-heptane contains 16 hydrogen atoms, we need 8 H_2O molecules, each of which contains 2 hydrogen atoms, on the right side: $$C_7H_{16}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 7\,CO_2(g) + \underline{8}H_2O(g)$$ • 16 hydrogen atoms on both reactant and product sides
3. **Balance polyatomic ions as a unit.**	There are no polyatomic ions to be considered in this reaction.
4. **Balance the remaining atoms.**	The carbon and hydrogen atoms are now balanced, but we have 22 oxygen atoms on the right side and only 2 oxygen atoms on the left. We can balance the oxygen atoms by adjusting the coefficient in front of the least complex substance, O_2, on the reactant side: $$C_7H_{16}(l) + \underline{11}O_2(g) \rightarrow 7\,CO_2(g) + 8\,H_2O(g)$$ • 22 oxygen atoms on both reactant and product sides
5. **Check your work.**	The equation is now balanced, and there are no fractional coefficients: there are 7 carbon atoms, 16 hydrogen atoms, and 22 oxygen atoms on each side. Always check to be sure that a chemical equation is balanced.

Example 6.3.2: Combustion of Isooctane

Combustion of Isooctane (C_8H_{18})

$$C_8H_{18}(l) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$$

Solution

The assumption that the final balanced chemical equation contains only one molecule or formula unit of the most complex substance is not always valid, but it is a good place to start. The combustion of any hydrocarbon with oxygen produces carbon dioxide and water.

Solutions to Example 7.4.2

Steps	Example
1. **Identify the most complex substance.**	The most complex substance is the one with the largest number of different atoms, which is C_8H_{18}. We will assume initially that the final balanced chemical equation contains 1 molecule or formula unit of this substance.
2. **Adjust the coefficients.**	a. The first element that appears only once in the reactants is carbon: 8 carbon atoms in isooctane means that there must be 8 CO_2 molecules in the products: $$C_8H_{18}(l) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow \underline{8}CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$$ • 8 carbon atoms on both reactant and product sides b. 18 hydrogen atoms in isooctane means that there must be 9 H_2O molecules in the products: $$C_8H_{18}(l) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 8\,CO_2(g) + \underline{9}H_2O(g)$$ • 18 hydrogen atoms on both reactant and product sides
3. **Balance polyatomic ions as a unit.**	There are no polyatomic ions to be considered in this reaction.
4. **Balance the remaining atoms.**	The carbon and hydrogen atoms are now balanced, but we have 25 oxygen atoms on the right side and only 2 oxygen atoms on the left. We can balance the least complex substance, O_2, but because there are 2 oxygen atoms per O_2 molecule, we must use a fractional coefficient ($\frac{25}{2}$) to balance the oxygen atoms: $$C_8H_{18}(l) + \underline{\frac{25}{2}}O_2(g) \rightarrow 8\,CO_2(g) + 9\,H_2O(g)$$ • 25 oxygen atoms on both reactant and product sides The equation is now balanced, but we usually write equations with whole number coefficients. We can eliminate the fractional coefficient by multiplying all coefficients on both sides of the chemical equation by **2**: $$\underline{2}C_8H_{18}(l) + \underline{25}O_2(g) \longrightarrow \underline{16}CO_2(g) + \underline{18}H_2O(g)$$

Steps	Example
5. **Check your work.**	The balanced chemical equation has 16 carbon atoms, 36 hydrogen atoms, and 50 oxygen atoms on each side. Balancing equations requires some practice on your part as well as some common sense. If you find yourself using very large coefficients or if you have spent several minutes without success, go back and make sure that you have written the formulas of the reactants and products correctly.

Example 6.3.3: Precipitation of Lead (II) Chloride

Aqueous solutions of lead (II) nitrate and sodium chloride are mixed. The products of the reaction are an aqueous solution of sodium nitrate and a solid precipitate of lead (II) chloride. Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.4.3

Steps	Example
1. **Identify the most complex substance.**	The most complex substance is lead (II) chloride. $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + NaCl(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$
2. **Adjust the coefficients.**	There are twice as many chloride ions in the reactants as there are in the products. Place a 2 in front of the NaCl in order to balance the chloride ions. $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + \underline{2}NaCl(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$ • 1 Pb atom on both reactant and product sides • 2 Na atoms on reactant side, 1 Na atom on product side • 2 Cl atoms on both reactant and product sides
3. **Balance polyatomic ions as a unit.**	The nitrate ions are still unbalanced. Place a 2 in front of the $NaNO_3$. The result is: $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,NaCl(aq) \rightarrow \underline{2}NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$ • 1 Pb atom on both reactant and product sides • 2 Na atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 Cl atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 NO_3^- atoms on both reactant and product sides
4. **Balance the remaining atoms.**	There is no need to balance the remaining atoms because they are already balanced.
5. **Check your work.**	$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,NaCl(aq) \rightarrow 2\,NaNO_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$ • 1 Pb atom on both reactant and product sides • 2 Na atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 Cl atoms on both reactant and product sides • 2 NO_3^- atoms on both reactant and product sides

Exercise 6.3.1

Is each chemical equation balanced?

a. $2\,Hg(\ell) + O_2(g) \rightarrow Hg_2O_2(s)$
b. $C_2H_4(g) + 2\,O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,CO_2(g) + 2\,H_2O(g)$
c. $Mg(NO_3)_2(s) + 2\,Li(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2\,LiNO_3(s)$

Answer a

yes

Answer b

no

Answer c

yes

Exercise 6.3.2

Balance the following chemical equations.

a. $N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow NO_2(g)$
b. $Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + FeCl_3(aq) \rightarrow Fe(NO_3)_3(aq) + PbCl_2(s)$
c. $C_6H_{14}(l) + O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(g)$

Answer a

$N_2\,(g) + 2O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2NO_2\,(g)$

Answer b

$3Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2FeCl_3(aq) \rightarrow 2Fe(NO_3)_3(aq) + 3PbCl_2(s)$

Answer c

$2C_6H_{14}(l) + 19O_2(g) \rightarrow 12CO_2(g) + 14H_2O(g)$

Summary

- To be useful, chemical equations must always be balanced. Balanced chemical equations have the same number and type of each atom on both sides of the equation.
- The coefficients in a balanced equation must be the simplest whole number ratio. Mass is always conserved in chemical reactions.

Vocabulary

- **Chemical reaction** - The process in which one or more substances are changed into one or more new substances.
- **Reactants** - The starting materials in a reaction.
- **Products** - Materials present at the end of a reaction.
- **Balanced chemical equation** - A chemical equation in which the number of each type of atom is equal on the two sides of the equation.
- **Subscripts** - Part of the chemical formulas of the reactants and products that indicate the number of atoms of the preceding element.
- **Coefficient** - A small whole number that appears in front of a formula in a balanced chemical equation.

6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **7.4: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

6.4: Classifying Chemical Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Classify a chemical reaction as a synthesis, decomposition, single replacement, double replacement, or a combustion reaction.
- Predict the products of simple reactions.

The chemical reactions we have described are only a tiny sampling of the infinite number of chemical reactions possible. How do chemists cope with this overwhelming diversity? How do they predict which compounds will react with one another and what products will be formed? The key to success is to find useful ways to categorize reactions. Familiarity with a few basic types of reactions will help you to predict the products that form when certain kinds of compounds or elements come in contact.

Most chemical reactions can be classified into one or more of five basic types: acid–base reactions, exchange reactions, condensation reactions (and the reverse, cleavage reactions), and oxidation–reduction reactions. The general forms of these five kinds of reactions are summarized in Table 6.4.1, along with examples of each. It is important to note, however, that many reactions can be assigned to more than one classification, as you will see in our discussion.

Table 6.4.1: *Basic Types of Chemical Reactions*

Name of Reaction	General Form	Examples
Oxidation–Reduction (redox)	oxidant + reductant → reduced oxidant + oxidized reductant	$C_7H_{16}(l) + 11O_2(g) \rightarrow 7CO_2(g) + 8H_2O(g)$
Acid–Base	acid + base → salt	$NaOH(aq) + HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + H_2O(l)$
Exchange: Single Replacement	AB + C → AC + B	$ZnCl_2(aq) + Mg(s) \rightarrow MgCl_2(aq) + Zn(s)$
Exchange: Double Replacement	AB + CD → AD + CB	$BaCl_2(aq) + Na_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s) + 2NaCl(aq)$
Combination (Synthesis)	A + B → AB	$CO_2(g) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_2CO_3(aq)$ $N_2(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow 2NO_2(g)$
Decomposition	AB → A + B	$CaCO_3(s) \rightarrow CaO(s) + CO_2(g)$

The classification scheme is only for convenience; the same reaction can be classified in different ways, depending on which of its characteristics is most important. Oxidation–reduction reactions, in which there is a net transfer of electrons from one atom to another, and condensation reactions are discussed in this section. Acid–base reactions are one kind of exchange reaction—the formation of an insoluble salt, such as barium sulfate, when solutions of two soluble salts are mixed together.

Combination Reactions

A **combination reaction** is a reaction in which two or more substances combine to form a single new substance. Combination reactions can also be called synthesis reactions. The general form of a combination reaction is:

$$\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B} \rightarrow \mathrm{AB}$$

One combination reaction is two elements combining to form a compound. Solid sodium metal reacts with chlorine gas to produce solid sodium chloride.

$$2\mathrm{Na}\,(s) + \mathrm{Cl}_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(s)$$

Notice that in order to write and balance the equation correctly, it is important to remember the seven elements that exist in nature as diatomic molecules (H_2, N_2, O_2, F_2, Cl_2, Br_2, and I_2).

One type of combination reaction that occurs frequently is the reaction of an element with oxygen to form an oxide. Metals and nonmetals both react readily with oxygen under most conditions. Magnesium reacts rapidly and dramatically when ignited, combining with oxygen from the air to produce a fine powder of magnesium oxide:

$$2\mathrm{Mg}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{MgO}\,(s)$$

Sulfur reacts with oxygen to form sulfur dioxide:

$$\mathrm{S}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{SO_2}\,(g)$$

When nonmetals react with one another, the product is a molecular compound. Often, the nonmetal reactants can combine in different ratios and produce different products. Sulfur can also combine with oxygen to form sulfur trioxide:

$$2\mathrm{S}\,(s) + 3\mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{SO_3}\,(g)$$

Transition metals are capable of adopting multiple positive charges within their ionic compounds. Therefore, most transition metals are capable of forming different products in a combination reaction. Iron reacts with oxygen to form both iron (II) oxide and iron (III) oxide:

$$2\mathrm{Fe}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{FeO}\,(s)$$

$$4\mathrm{Fe}\,(s) + 3\mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}\,(s)$$

Example 6.4.1: Combustion of Solid Potassium

Potassium is a very reactive alkali metal that must be stored under oil in order to prevent it from reacting with air. Write the balanced chemical equation for the combination reaction of potassium with oxygen.

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.10.1

Steps	Example Solution
Plan the problem.	Make sure formulas of all reactants and products are correct before balancing the equation. Oxygen gas is a diatomic molecule. Potassium oxide is an ionic compound and so its formula is constructed by the crisscross method. Potassium as an ion becomes $\mathrm{K^+}$, while the oxide ion is $\mathrm{O^{2-}}$.
Solve.	The skeleton (unbalanced) equation: $$\mathrm{K}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{K_2O}\,(s)$$ The equation is then easily balanced with coefficients. $$4\mathrm{K}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{K_2O}\,(s)$$
Think about your result.	Formulas are correct and the resulting combination reaction is balanced.

Combination reactions can also take place when an element reacts with a compound to form a new compound composed of a larger number of atoms. Carbon monoxide reacts with oxygen to form carbon dioxide according to the equation:

$$2\mathrm{CO}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{CO_2}\,(g)$$

Two compounds may also react to form a more complex compound. A very common example is the reactions of oxides with water. Calcium oxide reacts readily with water to produce an aqueous solution of calcium hydroxide:

$$\mathrm{CaO}\,(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}\,(aq)$$

Sulfur trioxide gas reacts with water to form sulfuric acid. This is an unfortunately common reaction that occurs in the atmosphere in some places where oxides of sulfur are present as pollutants. The acid formed in the reaction falls to the ground as acid rain.

$$\mathrm{SO_3}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow \mathrm{H_2SO_4}\,(aq)$$

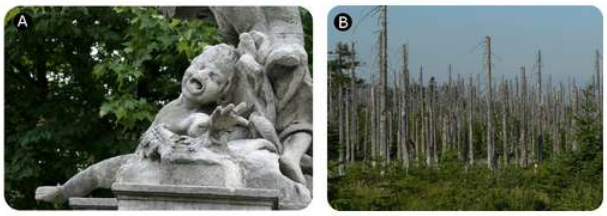


Figure 6.4.1: Acid rain has severe consequences on both natural and manmade objects. Acid rain degrades marble statues like the one on the left (A). The trees in the forest on the right (B) have been killed by acid rain.

? Exercise 6.4.1

a. Write the chemical equation for the synthesis of silver bromide, AgBr.
b. Predict the products for the following reaction: $\mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$

Answer a:

$2\mathrm{Ag} + \mathrm{Br_2} \rightarrow 2\mathrm{AgBr}$

Answer b:

$\mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow \mathrm{H_2CO_3}$

Decomposition Reactions

A **decomposition reaction** is a reaction in which a compound breaks down into two or more simpler substances. The general form of a decomposition reaction is:

$$\mathrm{AB} \rightarrow \mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B}$$

Most decomposition reactions require an input of energy in the form of heat, light, or electricity.

Binary compounds are compounds composed of just two elements. The simplest kind of decomposition reaction is when a binary compound decomposes into its elements. Mercury (II) oxide, a red solid, decomposes when heated to produce mercury and oxygen gas:

$$2\mathrm{HgO}\,(s) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{Hg}\,(l) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g)$$



***Video* 6.4.2:** *Mercury (II) oxide is a red solid. When it is heated, it decomposes into mercury metal and oxygen gas.*

A reaction is also considered to be a decomposition reaction even when one or more of the products are still compounds. A metal carbonate decomposes into a metal oxide and carbon dioxide gas. For example, calcium carbonate decomposes into calcium oxide and carbon dioxide:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}\,(s) \rightarrow \mathrm{CaO}\,(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g)$$

Metal hydroxides decompose on heating to yield metal oxides and water. Sodium hydroxide decomposes to produce sodium oxide and water:

$$2\text{NaOH}\,(s) \rightarrow \text{Na}_2\text{O}\,(s) + \text{H}_2\text{O}\,(g)$$

Some unstable acids decompose to produce nonmetal oxides and water. Carbonic acid decomposes easily at room temperature into carbon dioxide and water:

$$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3\,(aq) \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\,(g) + \text{H}_2\text{O}\,(l)$$

Example 6.4.2: Electrolysis of Water

When an electric current is passed through pure water, it decomposes into its elements. Write a balanced equation for the decomposition of water.

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.10.2

Steps	Example Solution
Plan the problem.	Water is a binary compound composed of hydrogen and oxygen. The hydrogen and oxygen gases produced in the reaction are both diatomic molecules.
Solve.	The skeleton (unbalanced) equation: $$\text{H}_2\text{O}\,(l) \overset{\text{elec}}{\rightarrow} \text{H}_2\,(g) + \text{O}_2\,(g)$$ Note the abbreviation "elec" above the arrow to indicate the passage of an electric current to initiate the reaction. Balance the equation. $$2\text{H}_2\text{O}\,(l) \overset{\text{elec}}{\rightarrow} 2\text{H}_2\,(g) + \text{O}_2\,(g)$$
Think about your result.	The products are elements and the equation is balanced.

Exercise 6.4.2

Write the chemical equation for the decomposition of:

a. Al_2O_3
b. Ag_2S

Answer a

$2\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 \rightarrow 4\text{Al} + 3\text{O}_2$

Answer b

$\text{Ag}_2\text{S} \rightarrow 2\text{Ag} + \text{S}$

Single Replacement Reactions

A third type of reaction is the single replacement reaction, in which one element replaces a similar element in a compound. The general form of a single-replacement (also called single-displacement) reaction is:

$$\text{A} + \text{BC} \rightarrow \text{AC} + \text{B}$$

In this general reaction, element A is a metal and replaces element B, also a metal, in the compound. When the element that is doing the replacing is a nonmetal, it must replace another nonmetal in a compound, and the general equation becomes:

$$\text{Y} + \text{XZ} \rightarrow \text{XY} + \text{Z}$$

where Y is a nonmetal and replaces the nonmetal Z in the compound with X.

Metal Replacement

Magnesium is a more reactive metal than copper. When a strip of magnesium metal is placed in an aqueous solution of copper (II) nitrate, it replaces the copper. The products of the reaction are aqueous magnesium nitrate and solid copper metal.

$$\mathrm{Mg}\,(s) + \mathrm{Cu(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{Mg(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Cu}\,(s)$$

This subcategory of single-replacement reactions is called a metal replacement reaction because it is a metal that is being replaced (copper).

Hydrogen Replacement

Many metals react easily with acids and when they do so, one of the products of the reaction is hydrogen gas. Zinc reacts with hydrochloric acid to produce aqueous zinc chloride and hydrogen (figure below).

$$\mathrm{Zn}\,(s) + 2\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{ZnCl_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(g)$$

In a hydrogen replacement reaction, the hydrogen in the acid is replaced by an active metal. Some metals are so reactive that they are capable of replacing the hydrogen in water. The products of such a reaction are the metal hydroxide and hydrogen gas. All Group 1 metals undergo this type of reaction. Sodium reacts vigorously with water to produce aqueous sodium hydroxide and hydrogen (see figure below).

$$2\mathrm{Na}\,(s) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(g)$$



Figure 6.4.2: (First image) Zinc metal reacts with hydrochloric acid to give off hydrogen gas in a single-displacement reaction. (Second image) Sodium metal reacts vigorously with water, giving off hydrogen gas. A large piece of sodium will often generate so much heat that the hydrogen will ignite.

Halogen Replacement

The element chlorine reacts with an aqueous solution of sodium bromide to produce aqueous sodium chloride and elemental bromine:

$$\mathrm{Cl_2}\,(g) + 2\mathrm{NaBr}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Br_2}\,(l)$$

The reactivity of the halogen group (group 17) decreases from top to bottom within the group. Fluorine is the most reactive halogen, while iodine is the least. Since chlorine is above bromine, it is more reactive than bromine and can replace it in a halogen replacement reaction.

Example 6.4.3

What are the products of the reaction between solid aluminum (Al) and iron (III) oxide ($\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$)?

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.10.3

Steps	Example Solution

Steps	Example Solution
Plan the problem.	To predict the products, we need to know that aluminum will replace iron and form aluminum oxide (the metal will replace the metal ion in the compound). Aluminum has a charge of $+3$ and oxygen has a charge of -2. The compound formed between aluminum and oxygen, therefore, will be Al_2O_3. Since iron is replaced in the compound by aluminum, the iron will now be the single element in the products.
Solve.	The unbalanced equation will be: $$Al + Fe_2O_3 \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + Fe$$ and the balanced equation will be: $$2Al + Fe_2O_3 \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 2Fe$$
Think about your result.	This is a single replacement reaction, and when balanced the coefficients accurately reflect that the iron and aluminum have the same charge in this reaction.

? Exercise 6.4.3

a. Write the chemical equation for the single replacement reaction between zinc solid and lead (II) nitrate solution to produce zinc nitrate solution and solid lead. (Note that zinc forms ions with a $+2$ charge.)
b. Predict the products for the following reaction: $Fe + CuSO_4$. (In this reaction, assume iron forms ions with a $+2$ charge.)

Answer a

$$Zn + Pb(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow Pb + Zn(NO_3)_2$$

Answer b

$$Fe + CuSO_4 \rightarrow Cu + FeSO_4$$

Double Replacement Reactions

A **double-replacement reaction** is a reaction in which the positive and negative ions of two ionic compounds exchange places to form two new compounds. The general form of a double-replacement (also called double-displacement) reaction is:

$$AB + CD \rightarrow AD + BC$$

In this reaction, A and C are positively-charged cations, while B and D are negatively-charged anions. Double-replacement reactions generally occur between substances in aqueous solution. In order for a reaction to occur, one of the products is usually a solid precipitate, a gas, or a molecular compound such as water.

Formation of a Precipitate

A precipitate forms in a double-replacement reaction when the cations from one of the reactants combine with the anions from the other reactant to form an insoluble ionic compound. When aqueous solutions of potassium iodide and lead (II) nitrate are mixed, the following reaction occurs:

$$2KI\,(aq) + Pb(NO_3)_2\,(aq) \rightarrow 2KNO_3\,(aq) + PbI_2\,(s) \qquad (6.4.1)$$

There are very strong attractive forces that occur between Pb^{2+} and I^- ions and the result is a brilliant yellow precipitate (Figure 6.4.3). The other product of the reaction, potassium nitrate, remains soluble.



Figure 6.4.3: Lead (II) iodide precipitates when potassium iodide is mixed with lead (II) nitrate (Equation 6.4.1). (CC BY-SA 3.0; PRHaney).

Formation of a Gas

Some double-replacement reactions produce a gaseous product which then bubbles out of the solution and escapes into the air. When solutions of sodium sulfide and hydrochloric acid are mixed, the products of the reaction are aqueous sodium chloride and hydrogen sulfide gas:

$$\mathrm{Na_2S}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2S}\,(g)$$

Formation of a Molecular Compound

Another kind of double-replacement reaction is one that produces a molecular compound as one of its products. Many examples in this category are reactions that produce water. When aqueous hydrochloric acid is reacted with aqueous sodium hydroxide, the products are aqueous sodium chloride and water:

$$\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

Example 6.4.4

Write a complete and balanced chemical equation for the double-replacement reaction $\mathrm{NaCN}\,(aq) + \mathrm{HBr}\,(aq) \rightarrow$ (hydrogen cyanide gas is formed).

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.10.4

Steps	Example Solution
Plan the problem.	The production of a gas drives the reaction.
Solve.	The cations of both reactants are $+1$ charged ions, while the anions are -1 charged ions. After exchanging partners, the balanced equation is: $$\mathrm{NaCN}\,(aq) + \mathrm{HBr}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaBr}\,(aq) + \mathrm{HCN}\,(g)$$
Think about your result.	This is a double replacement reaction. All formulas are correct and the equation is balanced.

Exercise 6.4.4

Write a complete and balanced chemical equation for the double-replacement reaction $(\mathrm{NH_4})_2\mathrm{SO_4}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Ba(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow$ (a precipitate of barium sulfate forms).

Answer a:

$$(\mathrm{NH_4})_2\mathrm{SO_4}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Ba(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NH_4NO_3}\,(aq) + \mathrm{BaSO_4}\,(s)$$

Occasionally, a reaction will produce both a gas and a molecular compound. The reaction of a sodium carbonate solution with hydrochloric acid produces aqueous sodium chloride, carbon dioxide gas, and water:

$$\mathrm{Na_2CO_3}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\ \square\ \mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

6.4: Classifying Chemical Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **7.10: Classifying Chemical Reactions** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Chemical Composition

Chapter 6 is concerned with the amounts of substances which participate in chemical reactions, the quantities of heat given off or absorbed when reactions occur, and the volumes of solutions which react exactly with one another. These seemingly unrelated subjects are discussed together because many of the calculations involving them are almost identical in form. The same is true of the density calculations, and of the calculations involving molar mass and the Avogadro constant.

7.1: Prelude to Chemical Composition - How Much Sodium?
7.2: Counting Nails by the Pound
7.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram
7.4: Counting Molecules by the Gram
7.5: Chemical Formulas as Conversion Factors
7.6: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions
7.7: Making Molecules- Mass-to-Mass Conversions
7.8: Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield

7: Chemical Composition is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

7.1: PRELUDE TO CHEMICAL COMPOSITION - HOW MUCH SODIUM?

Why is knowledge of composition important? Everything in nature is either chemically or physically combined with other substances. To find the amount of a material in a sample, you need to know what fraction of the sample it is. Some simple applications of composition are: the amount of sodium in sodium chloride for a diet, the amount of iron in iron ore for steel production, the amount of hydrogen in water for hydrogen fuel, and the amount of chlorine in freon to estimate ozone depletion.



How much salt is in this salt packet? (CC-BY-SA; 3.0; Swilliams).

7.1: Prelude to Chemical Composition - How Much Sodium? is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **6.1: Prelude to Chemical Composition - How Much Sodium?** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

7.2: COUNTING NAILS BY THE POUND

COUNTING BY WEIGHING AND AVOGADRO'S NUMBER

The size of molecule is so small that it is physically difficult, if not impossible, to directly count out molecules (Figure 7.2.1). However, we can count them indirectly by using a common trick of "counting by weighing".

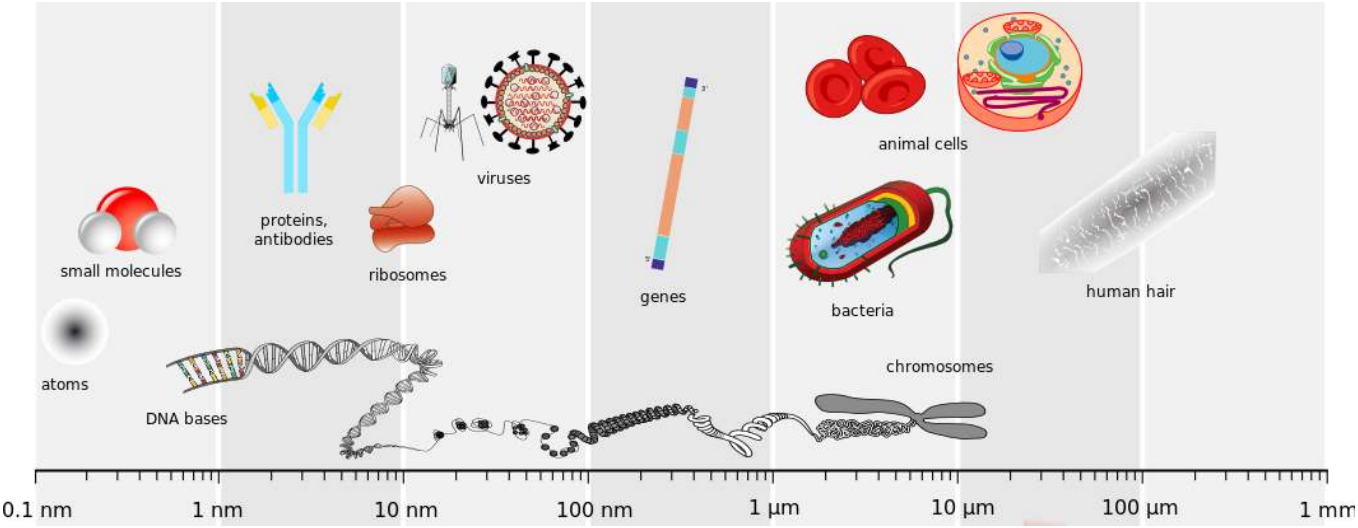


Figure 7.2.1: A comparison of the scales of various biological and technological objects. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Wikipedia)

Consider the example of counting nails in a big box at a hardware store. You need to estimate the number of nails in a box. The weight of an empty box is $213\,g$ and the weight of the box plus a bunch of big nails is $1340\,g$. Assume that we know that the weight of one big nail is 0.450 g. Hopefully it's not necessary to tear open the package and count the nails. We agree that

$$\text{mass of big nails} = 1340\,g - 213\,g = 1227\,g$$

Therefore

$$\text{Number of big nails in box} = \frac{1227\,g}{0.450\,g/\text{big nail}} = 2,726.6\,\text{big nails} = 2,730\,\text{big nails}. \tag{7.2.1}$$

You have just counted the number of big nails in the box by weighing them (rather than by counting them individually).



Figure 7.2.2: Galvanized nails. Individually counting nails in a box would would require significant effort. Alternatively, we can count them by weighing. (Public Domain; Wikipedia).

Now consider if the box of nails weighed the same, but the box were filled with small nails with an individual mass of $0.23\,g/\text{small nail}$ instead? You would do the same math, but use a different denominator in Equation 7.2.1:

$$\text{Number of small nails in box} = \frac{1227\,g}{0.230\,g/\text{small nail}} = 5,334.7\,\text{small nails} = 5,335\,\text{small nails}. \tag{7.2.2}$$

The individual mass is the conversion factor used in the calculation and changes, based on the nature of the nail (big or small). Let's ask a different question: how many *dozens* of nails are there in the same box of small nails described above?

If we know the information from Equation 7.2.2, we can just use the conversion of how many nails are in a dozen:

$$\frac{5,335 \text{ small nails}}{12 \text{ small nails/dozen}} = 444.6 \text{ dozen small nails} \tag{7.2.3}$$

If we want to get this value from weighing, we use the "dozen mass" instead of individual mass:

$$12 \times 0.23g = 2.76\, g/\text{dozen small nails}. \tag{7.2.4}$$

So following Equation 7.2.2, we get:

$$\text{Number of dozens of small nails} = \frac{1227\, g}{2.76\, g/\text{dozen small nails}} = 444.6 \text{ dozen small nails} \tag{7.2.5}$$

and this is the same result as Equation 7.2.3. These calculations demonstrate the difference between individual mass (i.e., per individual) and collective mass (e.g., per dozen or per gross). The collective mass of most importance to chemistry is *molar mass* (i.e., mass per mole or mass per 6.022×10^{23}).

AVOGADRO'S NUMBER

Avogadro's number is an accident of nature. It is the number of particles that delivers a mole of a substance. Avogadro's number = 6.022×10^{23} . The reason why the value is an accident of nature is that the mole is tied to the gram mass unit. The gram is a convenient mass unit because it matches human sizes. If we were a thousand times greater in size (like Paul Bunyan) we would find it handy to use kilogram amounts. This means the kilogram mole would be convenient. The number of particles handled in a kilogram mole is 1000 times greater. The kilo Avogadro number for the count of particles in a kilomole is 6.022×10^{26} .

If humans were tiny creatures (like Lilliputians) only 1/1000 our present size, milligrams would be more convenient. This means the milligram mole would be more useful. The number of particles handled in a milligram mole (millimole) would be 1/1000 times smaller. The milli Avogadro number for the count of particles in a millimole is 6.022×10^{20} .

What do you think would happen to Avogadro's number if the American system was used and amounts were measured in pound moles? Remember 1 pound = 454 grams. Avogadro's number would be larger by a factor of 454. A pound mole of hydrogen would weigh 1 pound, which is 454 grams. A gram mole of hydrogen weighs 1 gram and contains 6.022×10^{23} H atoms.

MOLAR MASS FOR ELEMENTS

You are able to read the periodic table and determine the average atomic mass for an element like carbon. The average mass is 12.01 amu. This mass is a ridiculously tiny number of grams. It is too small to handle normally. The molar mass of carbon is defined as the mass in grams that is numerically equal to the average atomic weight. This means

$$1g/molecarbon = 12.01\, g\, carbon$$

this is commonly written

$$1\, mol\ carbon = 12.01\, grams\ carbon.$$

This is the mass of carbon that contains 6.022×10^{23} carbon atoms.

- Avogadro's number is 6.022×10^{23} particles.

This same process gives us the molar mass of any element. For example:

- $1\, mol\ neon = 20.18\, g\, neon\, Ne$
- $1\, mol\ sodium = 22.99\, g\, sodium\, Na$

MOLAR MASS FOR COMPOUNDS

EXAMPLE 7.2.1: MOLAR MASS OF WATER

The formulas for compounds are familiar to you. You know the formula for water is H_2O. It should be reasonable that the weight of a formula unit can be calculated by adding up the weights for the atoms in the formula.

Solution

The formula weight for water

weight from hydrogen + weight from oxygen

The formula weight for water

2 H atoms x 1.008 amu + 1 O atom x 16.00 amu = 18.016 amu

The molar mass for water

18.016 grams water or 18 grams to the nearest gram

EXAMPLE 7.2.2: MOLAR MASS OF METHANE

The formula for methane, the major component in natural gas, is CH_4.

Solution

The formula weight for methane

weight from hydrogen + weight from carbon

The formula weight for methane

4 H atoms x 1.008 amu + 1 C atom x 12.01 amu = 16.04 amu

The molar mass for methane

16.04 grams per mole of methane

EXAMPLE 7.2.3: MOLAR MASS OF ETHYL CHLORIDE

What is its molar mass for ethyl chloride CH_3CH_2Cl?

Solution

The *formula weight*

weight from hydrogen + weight from carbon + weight from chlorine

The formula weight

5 H atoms x 1.008 amu + 2 C atom x 12.01 amu + 35.5 amu = 64.5 amu

The molar mass for ethyl chloride

64.5 grams per mole of ethyl chloride

EXAMPLE 7.2.4: MOLAR MASS OF SULFUR DIOXIDE

What is the molar mass for sulfur dioxide, $SO_2(g)$, a gas used in bleaching and disinfection processes?

Solution

Look up the atomic weight for each of the elements in the formula.

- 1 sulfur atom = 32.07 amu
- 1 oxygen atom = 16.00 amu

Count the atoms of each element in the formula unit.

- one sulfur atom
- two oxygen atoms

The formula weight

weight from sulfur + weight from oxygen

The formula weight

1 sulfur atom x (32. 07 amu) + 2 oxygen atoms x (16.00 amu)

The formula weight

SO_2 = 32. 07 amu + 32.00 amu = 64.07 amu = 64 amu SO_2

The molar mass for SO_2 is

64.07 grams of SO_2; 1 mol SO_2 = 64 grams per mole of SO_2

EXERCISE 7.2.1

What is the formula weight and molar mass for alum, $KAl(SO_4)_2 \bullet 12\,H_2O$?

Answer

1. Check the periodic table for the atomic masses for each atom in the formula.
2. Count the number of each type of atom in the formula.
3. Multiply the number of atoms by the atomic mass for each element.
4. Add up the masses for all of the elements.

Table 7.2.1: Masses of each element in alum, $KAl(SO_4)_2 \bullet 12\,H_2O$

element	average atomic mass	number of atoms in formula	rounded to nearest one unit for simplicity
potassium k	39.1 amu	1	39. amu
aluminum	26.98 amu	1	27. amu
sulfur	32.07 amu	2	64. amu
oxygen	16.00 amu	8 + 12 = 20	320. amu
hydrogen	1.008 amu	2 x 12 = 24	24. amu

Molar mass is 474 grams (add up the amu of each element to find the total of 474 amu). This is a mass in grams that is numerically (474) the same as the formula weight.

1 mole alum $KAl(SO_4)_2 \bullet 12\,H_2O$ = 474 grams alum $KAl(SO_4)_2 \bullet 12\,H_2O$

This page titled 7.2: Counting Nails by the Pound is shared under a CC BY-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Delmar Larsen, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Henry Agnew, & Henry Agnew.

- **6.2: Counting Nails by the Pound** by Delmar Larsen, Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-SA 3.0.

7.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram

Learning Objectives

- Use Avogadro's number to convert to moles and vice versa given the number of particles of an element.
- Use the molar mass to convert to grams and vice versa given the number of moles of an element.

When objects are very small, it is often inconvenient, inefficient, or even impossible to deal with the objects one at a time. For these reasons, we often deal with very small objects in groups, and have even invented names for various numbers of objects. The most common of these is "dozen" which refers to 12 objects. We frequently buy objects in groups of 12, like doughnuts or pencils. Even smaller objects such as straight pins or staples are usually sold in boxes of 144, or a dozen dozen. A group of 144 is called a "gross".

This problem of dealing with things that are too small to operate with as single items also occurs in chemistry. Atoms and molecules are too small to see, let alone to count or measure. Chemists needed to select a group of atoms or molecules that would be convenient to operate with.

Avogadro's Number and Mole

In chemistry, it is impossible to deal with a single atom or molecule because we can't see them, count them, or weigh them. Chemists have selected a number of particles with which to work that is convenient. Since molecules are extremely small, you may suspect this number is going to be very large, and you are right. The number of particles in this group is 6.02×10^{23} particles and the name of this group is the **mole** (the abbreviation for ***mole*** is mol). One mole of any object is 6.02×10^{23} of those objects. There is a particular reason that this number was chosen and this reason will become clear as we proceed.

When chemists are carrying out chemical reactions, it is important that the relationship between the numbers of particles of each reactant is known. Any readily measurable mass of an element or compound contains an extraordinarily large number of atoms, molecules, or ions, so an extremely large numerical unit is needed to count them. The mole is used for this purpose.

The **mole** (symbol: **mol**) is the base unit of amount of substance ("number of substance") in the International System of Units or System International (SI), defined as exactly $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$ particles, e.g., atoms, molecules, ions or electrons. The current definition was adopted in November 2018, revising its old definition based on the number of atoms in 12 grams of carbon-12 (^{12}C) (the isotope of carbon with relative atomic mass 12 Daltons, by definition). For most purposes, 6.022×10^{23} provides an adequate number of significant figures. Just as 1 mole of atoms contains 6.022×10^{23} atoms, 1 mole of eggs contains 6.022×10^{23} eggs. This number is called Avogadro's number, after the 19th-century Italian scientist who first proposed a relationship between the volumes of gases and the numbers of particles they contain.

It is not obvious why eggs come in dozens rather than 10s or 14s, or why a ream of paper contains 500 sheets rather than 400 or 600. The definition of a mole—that is, the decision to base it on 12 g of carbon-12—is also arbitrary. The important point is that 1 mole of carbon—or of anything else, whether atoms, compact discs, or houses—always has the same number of objects: 6.022×10^{23}.

Converting Between Number of Atoms to Moles and Vice Versa

We can use Avogadro's number as a conversion factor, or ratio, in dimensional analysis problems. If we are given the number of atoms of an element X, we can convert it into moles by using the relationship

$$1 \text{ mol X} = 6.022 \times 10^{23} \text{ X atoms.}$$

Example 7.3.1: Moles of Carbon

The element carbon exists in two primary forms: graphite and diamond. How many moles of carbon atoms is 4.72×10^{24} atoms of carbon?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.3.1

Steps for Problem Solving	**The element carbon exists in two primary forms: graphite and diamond. How many moles of carbon atoms is 4.72×10^{24} atoms of carbon?**
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 4.72×10^{24} C atoms Find: mol C
List other known quantities.	$1\,mol = 6.022 \times 10^{23}$ C atoms
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	# C atoms ➡ mol C $\frac{1\ mol\ C}{6.022\ \times 10^{23} C\ atoms}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.72 \times 10^{24}\ \cancel{\text{C atoms}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol C}}{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \cancel{\text{C atoms}}} = 7.84\ \text{mol C}$
Think about your result.	The given number of carbon atoms was greater than Avogadro's number, so the number of moles of C atoms is greater than 1 mole. Since Avogadro's number is a measured quantity with three significant figures, the result of the calculation is rounded to three significant figures.

Molar Mass

Molar mass is defined as the mass of one mole of representative particles of a substance. By looking at a periodic table, we can conclude that the molar mass of the element lithium is 6.94g, the molar mass of zinc is 65.38g, and the molar mass of gold is 196.97g. Each of these quantities contains 6.022×10^{23} atoms of that particular element. The units for molar mass are grams per mole or g/mol. 1.00 molof carbon-12 atoms has a mass of 12.0 gand contains 6.022×10^{23} atoms. 1.00 mole of any element has a mass numerically equal to its atomic mass in grams and contains 6.022×10^{23} particles. The mass, in grams, of 1 mole of particles of a substance is now called the **molar mass** (mass of 1.00 mole).

Converting Grams to Moles of an Element and Vice Versa

We can also convert back and forth between grams of an element and moles. The conversion factor for this is the molar mass of the substance. The **molar mass** is the ratio giving the number of grams for each one mole of the substance. This ratio is easily found by referring to the atomic mass of the element using the periodic table. This ratio has units of grams per mole or g/mol.

Conversions like this are possible for any substance, as long as the proper atomic mass, formula mass, or molar mass is known (or can be determined) and expressed in grams per mole. Figure 6.4.1 illustrates what conversion factor is needed and two examples are given below.

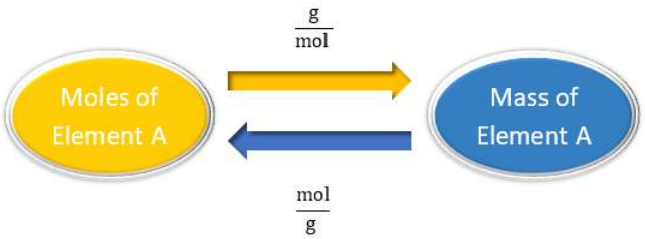


Figure 7.3.1: A Simple Flowchart for Converting Between Mass and Moles of an Element.
Flowchart: to convert moles of Element A to mass of Element A, use g/mol, and to convert vice versa, use mol/g.

Example 7.3.2: Chromium

Chromium metal is used for decorative electroplating of car bumpers and other surfaces. Find the mass of 0.560 moles of chromium.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.3.2

Steps for Problem Solving	**Chromium metal is used for decorative electroplating of car bumpers and other surfaces. Find the mass of 0.560 moles of chromium.**
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 0.560 mol Cr Find: g Cr
List other known quantities.	1 mol Cr = 52.00g Cr
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	mol Cr → g Cr $\frac{52.00g\ Cr}{1\ mol\ Cr}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$0.560\ \cancel{\text{mol Cr}} \times \frac{52.00\ \text{g Cr}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol Cr}}} = 29.1\ \text{g Cr}$
Think about your result.	Since the desired amount was slightly more than one half of a mole, the mass should be slightly more than one half of the molar mass. The answer has three significant figures because of the 0.560 mol

Example 7.3.3: Silicon

How many moles are in 107.6g of Si?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.3.3

Steps for Problem Solving	**How many moles are in 107.6g of Si.**
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 107.6g Si Find: mol Si
List other known quantities.	1 mol Si = 28.09g Si
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	g Si → mol Si $\frac{1\ mol\ Si}{28.09g\ Si}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$107.6\ \cancel{\text{g Si}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Si}}{28.09\ \cancel{\text{g Si}}} = 3.83\ \text{mol Si}$
Think about your result.	Since 1 mol of Si is 28.09g, 107.6 should be about 4 moles.

Exercise 7.3.1

a. How many moles are present in 100.0 g of Al?
b. What is the mass of 0.552 mol of Ag metal?

Answer a:

3.706 mol Al

Answer b:

59.5 g Ag

Summary

- A mole is defined as exactly $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$ particles, e.g., atoms, molecules, ions or electrons.
- There are $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$ particles in 1.00 mole. This number is called Avogadro's number.
- The molar mass of an element can be found by referring to the atomic mass on a periodic table with units of g/mol.
- Using dimensional analysis, it is possible to convert between grams, moles, and the number of atoms or molecules.

Further Reading/Supplemental Links

- learner.org/resources/series61.html - The ***learner.org*** website allows users to view streaming videos of the Annenberg series of chemistry videos. You are required to register before you can watch the videos, but there is no charge. The website has one video that relates to this lesson called ***The Mole***.
- Using Avogadro's law, the mass of a substance can be related to the number of particles contained in that mass. The Mole: (www.learner.org/vod/vod_window.html?pid=803)
- Vision Learning tutorial: The Mole http://visionlearning.com/library/mo...p?mid-53&1=&c3=

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Wikipedia

7.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **6.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.4: COUNTING MOLECULES BY THE GRAM

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Define molecular mass and formula mass.
- Perform conversions between mass and moles of a compound.
- Perform conversions between mass and number of particles.

MOLECULAR AND FORMULA MASSES

The molecular mass of a substance is the sum of the average masses of the atoms in one molecule of a substance. It is calculated by adding together the atomic masses of the elements in the substance, each multiplied by its subscript (written or implied) in the molecular formula. Because the units of atomic mass are atomic mass units, the units of molecular mass are also atomic mass units. The procedure for calculating molecular masses is illustrated in Example 7.4.1.

EXAMPLE 7.4.1: ETHANOL

Calculate the molecular mass of ethanol, whose condensed structural formula is CH_3CH_2OH. Among its many uses, ethanol is a fuel for internal combustion engines

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Calculate the molecular mass of ethanol, whose condensed structural formula is CH_3CH_2OH
Identify the "given"information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Ethanol molecule (CH_3CH_2OH) Find: molecular mass
Determine the number of atoms of each element in the molecule.	The molecular formula of ethanol may be written in three different ways: • CH_3CH_2OH (which illustrates the presence of an ethyl group • CH_3CH_{2-}, and an −OH group) • C_2H_5OH, and C_2H_6O; All show that ethanol has two carbon atoms, six hydrogen atoms, and one oxygen atom.
Obtain the atomic masses of each element from the periodic table and multiply the atomic mass of each element by the number of atoms of that element.	1 C atom = 12.011 amu 1 H atom = 1.0079 amu 1 O atom = 15.9994 amu
Add the masses together to obtain the molecular mass.	2C: (2 atoms)(12.011amu/atom) = 24.022 amu 6H: (6 atoms)(1.0079amu/atom) = 6.0474amu +1O: (1 atoms)(15.9994amu/atom) =15.9994amu C_2H_6O : molecular mass of ethanol = 46.069amu

EXERCISE 7.4.1: FREON

Calculate the molecular mass of trichlorofluoromethane, also known as Freon-11, which has a condensed structural formula of CCl_3F. Until recently, it was used as a refrigerant. The structure of a molecule of Freon-11 is as follows:

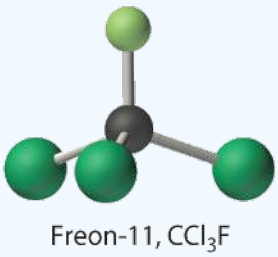


Figure 7.4.1: Molecular structure of freon-11, CCl_3F.

Answer

137.37 amu

Unlike molecules, which form covalent bonds, ionic compounds do not have a readily identifiable molecular unit. Therefore, for ionic compounds, the **formula mass** (also called the empirical formula mass) of the compound is used instead of the molecular mass. The formula mass is the sum of the atomic masses of all the elements in the empirical formula, each multiplied by its subscript (written or implied). It is directly analogous to the molecular mass of a covalent compound. The units are atomic mass units.

> *Atomic mass, molecular mass, and formula mass all have the same units: atomic mass units.*

EXAMPLE 7.4.2: CALCIUM PHOSPHATE

Calculate the formula mass of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, commonly called calcium phosphate. This compound is the principal source of calcium found in bovine milk.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Calculate the formula mass of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, commonly called calcium phosphate.
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$] formula unit Find: formula mass
Determine the number of atoms of each element in the molecule.	• The empirical formula—$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$—indicates that the simplest electrically neutral unit of calcium phosphate contains three Ca^{2+} ions and two PO_4^{3-} ions. • The formula mass of this molecular unit is calculated by adding together the atomic masses of three calcium atoms, two phosphorus atoms, and eight oxygen atoms.
Obtain the atomic masses of each element from the periodic table and multiply the atomic mass of each element by the number of atoms of that element.	1 Ca atom = 40.078 amu 1 P atom = 30.973761 amu 1 O atom = 15.9994 amu
Add together the masses to give the formula mass.	3Ca: (3 atoms) (40.078 amu/atom)=120.234amu 2P: (2 atoms) (30.973761amu/atom)=61.947522amu + 8O: (8 atoms)(15.9994amu/atom)=127.9952amu Formula mass of $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$=310.177amu

EXERCISE 7.4.2: SILICON NITRIDE

Calculate the formula mass of Si_3N_4, commonly called silicon nitride. It is an extremely hard and inert material that is used to make cutting tools for machining hard metal alloys.



Figure 7.4.2: Si_3N_4 bearing parts. (Public Domain; David W. Richerson and Douglas W. Freitag; Oak Ridge National Laboratory).

Answer

140.29 amu

MOLAR MASS

The molar mass of a substance is defined as the mass in grams of 1 mole of that substance. One mole of isotopically pure carbon-12 has a mass of 12 g. For an element, the molar mass is the mass of 1 mol of atoms of that element; for a covalent molecular compound, it is the mass of 1 mol of molecules of that compound; for an ionic compound, it is the mass of 1 mol of formula units. That is, the molar mass of a substance is the mass (in grams per mole) of 6.022×10^{23} atoms, molecules, or formula units of that substance. In each case, the number of

grams in 1 mol is the same as the number of atomic mass units that describe the atomic mass, the molecular mass, or the formula mass, respectively.

> *The molar mass of any substance is its atomic mass, molecular mass, or formula mass in grams per mole.*

The periodic table lists the atomic mass of carbon as 12.011 amu; the average molar mass of carbon—the mass of 6.022×10^{23} carbon atoms—is therefore 12.011 g/mol:

Table 7.4.1: Molar Mass of Select Substances

Substance (formula)	Basic Unit	Atomic, Molecular, or Formula Mass (amu)	Molar Mass (g/mol)
carbon (C)	atom	12.011 (atomic mass)	12.011
ethanol (C_2H_5OH)	molecule	46.069 (molecular mass)	46.069
calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$]	formula unit	310.177 (formula mass)	310.177

CONVERTING BETWEEN GRAMS AND MOLES OF A COMPOUND

The molar mass of any substance is the mass in grams of one mole of representative particles of that substance. The representative particles can be atoms, molecules, or formula units of ionic compounds. This relationship is frequently used in the laboratory. Suppose that for a certain experiment you need 3.00 moles of calcium chloride $(CaCl_2)$. Since calcium chloride is a solid, it would be convenient to use a balance to measure the mass that is needed. Dimensional analysis will allow you to calculate the mass of $CaCl_2$ that you should measure as shown in Example 7.4.3.

EXAMPLE 7.4.3: CALCIUM CHLORIDE

Calculate the mass of 3.00 moles of calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$).



Figure 7.4.3: Calcium chloride is used as a drying agent and as a road deicer.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.3

Steps for Problem Solving	Calculate the mass of 3.00 moles of calcium chloride
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 3.00 moles of $CaCl_2$ Find: g $CaCl_2$
List other known quantities.	1 mol $CaCl_2$ = 110.98 g $CaCl_2$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	mol $CaCl_2$ → g $CaCl_2$ $\frac{110.98\ g\ CaCl_2}{1\ mol\ CaCl_2}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$3.00\ \text{mol}\ CaCl_2 \times \frac{110.98\ \text{g}\ CaCl_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ CaCl_2} = 333\ \text{g}\ CaCl_2$
Think about your result.	

EXERCISE 7.4.3: CALCIUM OXIDE

What is the mass of 7.50 mol of (calcium oxide) CaO?

Answer

420.60 g

EXAMPLE 7.4.4: WATER

How many moles are present in 108 grams of water?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.4

Steps for Problem Solving	How many moles are present in 108 grams of water?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 108 g H_2O Find: mol H_2O
List other known quantities.	1 mol H_2O = 18.02 g H2O
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	g H_2O → mol H_2O $\frac{1\ mol\ H_2O}{18.02\ g\ H_2O}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$108\ \text{g}\ H_2O \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ H_2O}{18.02\ \text{g}\ H_2O} = 5.99\ \text{mol}\ H_2O$
Think about your result.	

EXERCISE 7.4.4: NITROGEN GAS

What is the mass of 7.50 mol of Nitrogen gas N_2?

Answer

210 g

CONVERSIONS BETWEEN MASS AND NUMBER OF PARTICLES

In "Conversions Between Moles and Mass", you learned how to convert back and forth between moles and the number of representative particles. Now you have seen how to convert back and forth between moles and mass of a substance in grams. We can combine the two types of problems into one. Mass and number of particles are both related to moles. To convert from mass to number of particles or vice-versa, it will first require a conversion to moles as shown in Figure 7.4.1 and Example 7.4.5.

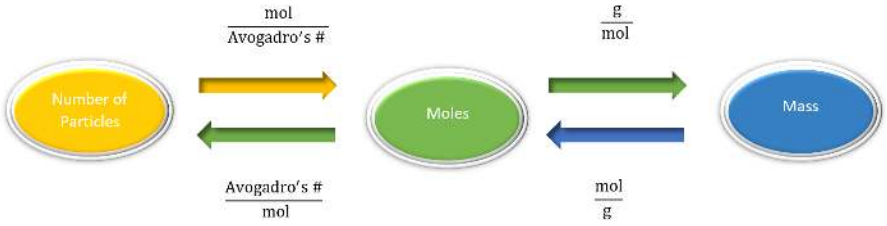


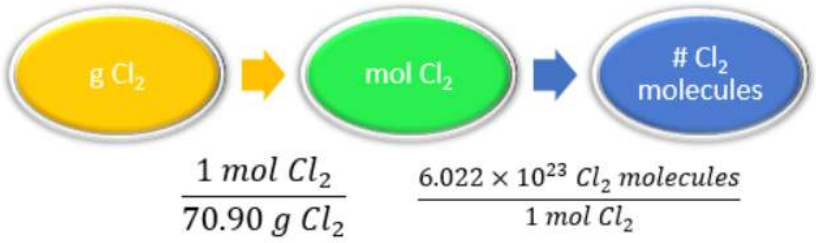
Figure 7.4.4: Conversion from number of particles to mass, or from mass to number of particles, requires two steps. To convert from number of particles to moles, use mol/Avogrado's #, an d to convert from moles to mass, use g/mol.

EXAMPLE 7.4.5: CHLORINE

How many molecules is 20.0 g of chlorine gas, Cl_2?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.4.5

Steps for Problem Solving	How many molecules is 20.0 g of chlorine gas, Cl_2?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 20.0 g Cl_2 Find: # Cl_2 molecules
List other known quantities.	• 1 mol Cl_2 = 70.90 g Cl_2, • 1mol Cl_2 = 6.022×10^{23} Cl_2 molecules
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ Cl_2}{70.90\ g\ Cl_2}$ $\frac{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ Cl_2\ molecules}{1\ mol\ Cl_2}$ The conversion factors are 1 mole Cl_2 over 70.90 grams Cl_2, and $6.022 \times 10^{2}3Cl_2$ molecules over 1 mole Cl_2.
Cancel units and calculate.	$20.0\ \text{g Cl}_2 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Cl}_2}{70.90\ \text{g Cl}_2} \times \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{molecules Cl}_2}{1\ \text{mol Cl}_2}$ $= 1.70 \times 10^{23}\ \text{molecules Cl}_2$
Think about your result.	Since the given mass is less than half of the molar mass of chlorine, the resulting number of molecules is less than half of Avogadro's number.

? EXERCISE 7.4.5: CALCIUM CHLORIDE

How many formula units are in 25.0 g of $CaCl_2$?

Answer

1.36 x 10^{23} $CaCl_2$ formula units

SUMMARY

- Calculations for formula mass and molecular mass are described.
- Calculations involving conversions between moles of a material and the mass of that material are described.
- Calculations are illustrated for conversions between mass and number of particles.

This page titled 7.4: Counting Molecules by the Gram is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **6.4: Counting Molecules by the Gram** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

7.5: Chemical Formulas as Conversion Factors

Learning Objectives

- Use chemical formulas as conversion factors.

Figure 7.5.1 shows that we need 2 hydrogen atoms and 1 oxygen atom to make one water molecule. If we want to make two water molecules, we will need 4 hydrogen atoms and 2 oxygen atoms. If we want to make five molecules of water, we need 10 hydrogen atoms and 5 oxygen atoms. The ratio of atoms we will need to make any number of water molecules is the same: 2 hydrogen atoms to 1 oxygen atom.

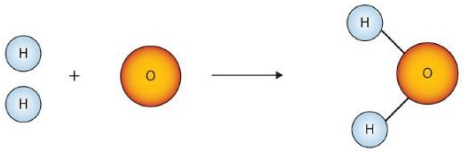


Figure 7.5.1 Water Molecules. The ratio of hydrogen atoms to oxygen atoms used to make water molecules is always 2:1, no matter how many water molecules are being made.

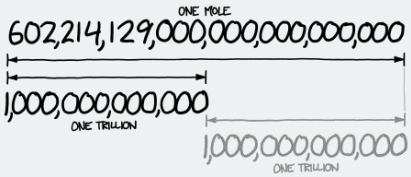
Using formulas to indicate how many atoms of each element we have in a substance, we can relate the number of moles of molecules to the number of moles of atoms. For example, in 1 mol of water (H_2O) we can construct the relationships given in (Table 7.5.1).

Table 7.5.1: Molecular Relationships for Water

1 Molecule of H_2O Has	1 Mol of H_2O Has	Molecular Relationships
2 H atoms	2 mol of H atoms	$\frac{2\text{ mol H atoms}}{1\text{ mol }H_2O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }H_2O\text{ molecules}}{2\text{ mol H atoms}}$
1 O atom	1 mol of O atoms	$\frac{1\text{ mol O atoms}}{1\text{ mol }H_2O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }H_2O\text{ molecules}}{1\text{ mol O atoms}}$

The Mole is big

A mole represents a very large number! The number 602,214,129,000,000,000,000,000 looks about twice as long as a trillion, which means it's about a trillion trillion.



(CC BY-SA NC; what if? [what-if.xkcd.com]).

A trillion trillion kilograms is how much a planet weighs. If 1 mol of quarters were stacked in a column, it could stretch back and forth between Earth and the sun *6.8 billion* times.

Table 7.5.2: Molecular and Mass Relationships for Ethanol

1 Molecule of C_2H_6O Has	1 Mol of C_2H_6O Has	Molecular and Mass Relationships
2 C atoms	2 mol of C atoms	$\frac{2\text{ mol C atoms}}{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}{2\text{ mol C atoms}}$
6 H atoms	6 mol of H atoms	$\frac{6\text{ mol H atoms}}{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}{6\text{ mol H atoms}}$

1 Molecule of C_2H_6O Has	1 Mol of C_2H_6O Has	Molecular and Mass Relationships
1 O atom	1 mol of O atoms	$\frac{1\text{ mol O atoms}}{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}{1\text{ mol O atoms}}$
2 (12.01 amu) C 24.02 amu C	2 (12.01 g) C 24.02 g C	$\frac{24.02\text{ g C}}{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}{24.02\text{ g C}}$
6 (1.008 amu) H 6.048 amu H	6 (1.008 g) H 6.048 g H	$\frac{6.048\text{ g H}}{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}{6.048\text{ g H}}$
1 (16.00 amu) O 16.00 amu O	1 (16.00 g) O 16.00 g O	$\frac{16.00\text{ g O}}{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}$ or $\frac{1\text{ mol }C_2H_6O\text{ molecules}}{16.00\text{ g O}}$

The following example illustrates how we can use the relationships in Table 7.5.2 as conversion factors.

Example 7.5.1: Ethanol

If a sample consists of 2.5 mol of ethanol (C_2H_6O), how many moles of carbon atoms does it have?

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.5.1

Steps for Problem Solving	If a sample consists of 2.5 mol of ethanol (C_2H_6O), how many moles of carbon atoms does it have?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 2.5 mol C_2H_6O Find: mol C atoms
List other known quantities.	1 mol C_2H_6O = 2 mol C
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	mol C_2H_6O → mol C atom $\frac{2\ mol\ C}{1\ mol\ C_2H_6O}$
Cancel units and calculate.	Note how the unit *mol C_2H_6O molecules* cancels algebraically. $2.5\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O\ \text{molecules} \times \frac{2\text{ mol C atoms}}{1\ \text{mol}\ C_2H_6O\ \text{molecules}} = 5.0\text{ mol C at}$
Think about your result.	There are twice as many C atoms in one C_2H_6O molecule, so the final amount should be double.

Exercise 7.5.1

If a sample contains 6.75 mol of Na_2SO_4, how many moles of sodium atoms, sulfur atoms, and oxygen atoms does it have?

Answer

13.5 mol Na atoms, 6.75 mol S atoms, and 27.0 mol O atoms

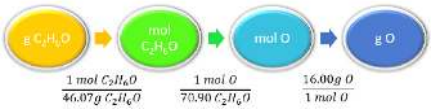
The fact that 1 mol equals 6.022×10^{23} items can also be used as a conversion factor.

Example 7.5.2: Oxygen Mass

Determine the mass of Oxygen in 75.0g of C_2H_6O.

Solution

Solutions to Example 6.5.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Determine the mass of Oxygen in 75.0g of C_2H_6O
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 75.0g C_2H_6O Find: g O
List other known quantities.	1 mol O = 16.0g O 1 mol C_2H_6O = 1 mol O 1 mol C_2H_6O = 46.07g C_2H_6O
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 The conversion factors are 1 mol C2H6O over 46.07 g C2H6O, 1 mol O over 1 mol C2H6O, and 16.00 g O over 1 mole O.
Cancel units and calculate.	$75.0\ \cancel{\text{g C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}}}{46.07\ \cancel{\text{g C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mol O}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}}} \times \frac{16.00\ \text{g O}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol O}}} = 26$
Think about your result.	

Exercise 7.5.2

a. How many molecules are present in 16.02 mol of C_4H_{10}? How many C atoms are in 16.02 mol?
b. How many moles of each type of atom are in 2.58 mol of Na_2SO_4?

Answer a:

9.647 x 10^{24} C_4H_{10} molecules and 3.859 x 10^{25} C atoms

Answer b:

5.16 mol Na atoms, 2.58 mol S atoms, and 10.3 mol O atoms

Summary

In any given formula, the ratio of the number of moles of molecules (or formula units) to the number of moles of atoms can be used as a conversion factor.

7.5: Chemical Formulas as Conversion Factors is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **6.5: Chemical Formulas as Conversion Factors** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.6: MAKING MOLECULES- MOLE-TO-MOLE CONVERSIONS

/;LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Use a balanced chemical equation to determine molar relationships between substances.

Previously, you learned to balance chemical equations by comparing the numbers of each type of atom in the reactants and products. The coefficients in front of the chemical formulas represent the numbers of molecules or formula units (depending on the type of substance). As follows, we will extend the meaning of the coefficients in a chemical equation.

Consider the simple chemical equation:

$$2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$$

The convention for writing balanced chemical equations is to use the lowest whole-number ratio for the coefficients. However, the equation is balanced as long as the coefficients are in a 2:1:2 ratio. For example, this equation is also balanced if we write it as

$$4H_2 + 2O_2 \rightarrow 4H_2O$$

The ratio of the coefficients is 4:2:4, which reduces to 2:1:2. The equation is also balanced if we were to write it as

$$22H_2 + 11O_2 \rightarrow 22H_2O$$

because 22:11:22 also reduces to 2:1:2.

Suppose we want to use larger numbers. Consider the following coefficients:

$$12.044 \times 10^{23}\ \mathrm{H_2} + 6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow 12.044 \times 10^{23}\ \mathrm{H_2O}$$

These coefficients also have the ratio 2:1:2 (check it and see), so this equation is balanced. But 6.022×10^{23} is 1 mol, while 12.044×10^{23} is 2 mol (and the number is written that way to make this more obvious), so we can simplify this version of the equation by writing it as

$$2\ mol\ \mathrm{H_2} + 1\ mol\ \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow 2\ mol\ \mathrm{H_2O}$$

We can leave out the word *mol* and not write the 1 coefficient (as is our habit), so the final form of the equation, still balanced, is

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O}$$

Now we interpret the coefficients as referring to molar amounts, not individual molecules. The lesson? *Balanced chemical equations are balanced not only at the molecular level, but also in terms of molar amounts of reactants and products.* Thus, we can read this reaction as "two moles of hydrogen react with one mole of oxygen to produce two moles of water."

By the same token, the ratios we constructed to describe a molecular reaction can also be constructed in terms of moles rather than molecules. For the reaction in which hydrogen and oxygen combine to make water, for example, we can construct the following ratios:

$$\frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}} \text{ or } \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}$$

$$\frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}} \text{ or } \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}}$$

$$\frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}} \text{ or } \frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2O}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ H_2}}$$

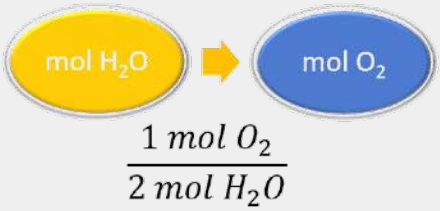
We can use these ratios to determine what amount of a substance, in moles, will react with or produce a given number of moles of a different substance. The study of the numerical relationships between the reactants and the products in balanced chemical reactions is called *stoichiometry*.

EXAMPLE 7.6.1

How many moles of oxygen react with hydrogen to produce 27.6 mol of $\mathrm{H_2O}$?

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.3.1

Steps for Problem Solving	How many moles of oxygen react with hydrogen to produce 27.6 mol of H_2O?
Find a balanced equation that describes the reaction.	Unbalanced: $H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow H_2O$ Balanced: $\underline{2}H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow \underline{2}H_2O$
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: moles H_2O Find: moles oxygen
List other known quantities.	1 mol O_2 = 2 mol H_2O
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ O_2}{2\ mol\ H_2O}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$27.6\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{H_2O} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ O_2}{2\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{H_2O}} = 13.8\ \text{mol}\ O_2$ To produce 27.6 mol of H_2O, 13.8 mol of O_2 react.
Think about your result.	Since each mole of oxygen produces twice as many moles of water, it makes sense that the produced amount is greater than the reactant amount

EXAMPLE 7.6.2

How many moles of ammonia are produced if 4.20 moles of hydrogen are reacted with an excess of nitrogen?

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.3.2

Steps for Problem Solving	How many moles of ammonia are produced if 4.20 moles of hydrogen are reacted with an excess of nitrogen?
Find a balanced equation that describes the reaction.	Unbalanced: $N_2 + H_2 \rightarrow NH_3$ Balanced: $N_2 + \underline{3}H_2 \rightarrow \underline{2}NH_3$
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $H_2 = 4.20$ mol Find: mol of NH_3
List other known quantities.	3 mol H_2 = 2 mol NH_3
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{2\ mol\ NH_3}{3\ mol\ H_2}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.20\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{H_2} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ NH_3}{3\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{H_2}} = 2.80\ \text{mol}\ NH_3$ The reaction of 4.20 molof hydrogen with excess nitrogen produces 2.80 molof ammonia.
Think about your result.	The result corresponds to the 3:2 ratio of hydrogen to ammonia from the balanced equation.

EXERCISE 7.6.3

a. Given the following balanced chemical equation:

$$C_5H_{12} + 8\,O_2 \rightarrow 5\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O$$

, How many moles of H_2O can be formed if 0.0652 mol of C_5H_{12} were to react?

b. Balance the following unbalanced equation and determine how many moles of H_2O are produced when 1.65 mol of NH_3 react:

$$NH_3 + O_2 \rightarrow N_2 + H_2O$$

Answer a

0.391 mol H_2O

Answer b

$4NH_3 + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2N_2 + 6H_2O$; 2.48 mol H_2O

SUMMARY

- The balanced chemical reaction can be used to determine molar relationships between substances.

7.6: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **8.3: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

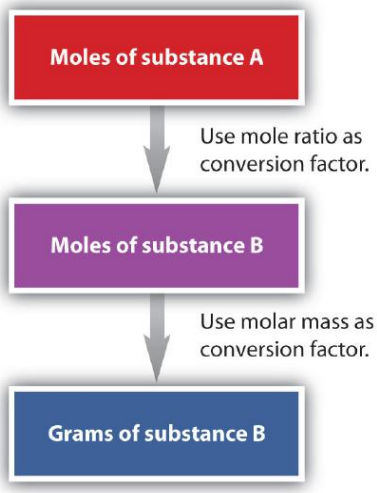
7.7: MAKING MOLECULES- MASS-TO-MASS CONVERSIONS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Convert from mass or moles of one substance to mass or moles of another substance in a chemical reaction.

MOLE TO MASS CONVERSIONS

We have established that a balanced chemical equation is balanced in terms of moles, as well as atoms or molecules. We have used balanced equations to set up ratios, in terms of moles of materials, that we can use as conversion factors to answer stoichiometric questions—such as how many moles of substance A react with so many moles of reactant B. We can extend this technique even further. Recall that we can relate a molar amount to a mass amount using molar mass. We can use that relation to answer stoichiometry questions in terms of the masses of a particular substance, in addition to moles. We do this using the following sequence:



Collectively, these conversions are called mole-mass calculations. Flowchart of mole mass calculations: To convert from moles of substance A to moles of substance B, use the mole ratio conversion factor, and to convert from moles to grams of substance B, use molar mass conversion factor

As an example, consider the balanced chemical equation

$$\mathrm{Fe_2O_3} + 3\,\mathrm{SO_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2(SO_4)_3} \tag{7.7.1}$$

If we have 3.59 mol of $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$, how many grams of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ can react with it? Using the mole-mass calculation sequence, we can determine the required mass of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ in two steps. First, we construct the appropriate molar ratio, determined from the balanced chemical equation, to calculate the number of moles of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ needed. Then, using the molar mass of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ as a conversion factor, we determine the mass that this number of moles of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ has.

As usual, we start with the quantity we were given:

$$3.59\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}} \times \left(\frac{3\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{SO_3}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}}}\right) = 10.77\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{SO_3} \tag{7.7.2}$$

The mol $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$ units cancel, leaving mol $\mathrm{SO_3}$ unit. Now, we take this answer and convert it to grams of $\mathrm{SO_3}$, using the molar mass of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ as the conversion factor:

$$10.77\ \cancel{\text{mol}\ \mathrm{SO_3}} \times \left(\frac{80.06\ \text{g}\ \mathrm{SO_3}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol}\ \mathrm{SO_3}}}\right) = 862\ \text{g}\ \mathrm{SO_3} \tag{7.7.3}$$

Our final answer is expressed to three significant figures. Thus, in a two-step process, we find that 862 g of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ will react with 3.59 mol of $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$. Many problems of this type can be answered in this manner.

The same two-step problem can also be worked out in a single line, rather than as two separate steps, as follows:

$$3.59\ \cancel{mol\ Fe_2O_3} \times \underbrace{\left(\frac{3\ \cancel{mol\ SO_3}}{1\ \cancel{mol\ Fe_2O_3}}\right)}_{\text{converts to moles of SO}_3} \times \underbrace{\left(\frac{80.06\ g\ SO_3}{1\ \cancel{mol\ SO_3}}\right)}_{\text{converts to grams of SO}_3} = 862\ g\ SO_3$$

We get exactly the same answer when combining all math steps together.

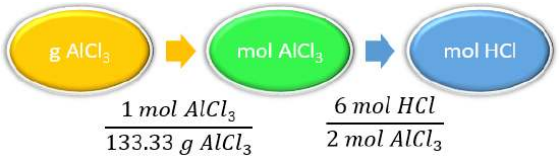
EXAMPLE 7.7.1: GENERATION OF ALUMINUM OXIDE

How many moles of HCl will be produced when 249 g of $AlCl_3$ are reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$2\,AlCl_3 + 3\,H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6\,HCl(g)$$

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.5.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 7.7.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 249 g AlCl3 Find: moles HCl
List other known quantities.	1 mol AlCl3 = 133.33 g AlCl3 6 mol of HCl to 2 mol $AlCl_3$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ AlCl_3}{133.33\ g\ AlCl_3}$ $\frac{6\ mol\ HCl}{2\ mol\ AlCl_3}$ Flowchart of needed conversion factors: 1 mole AlCl3 to 133.33 grams AlCl3, and 6 moles HCl to 2 moles AlCl3
Cancel units and calculate.	$249\ \cancel{g\ AlCl_3} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ AlCl_3}}{133.33\ \cancel{g\ AlCl_3}} \times \frac{6\,mol\,HCl}{2\ \cancel{mol\ AlCl_3}} = 5.60\,mol\,HCl$
Think about your result.	Since 249 g of $AlCl_3$ is less than 266.66 g, the mass for 2 moles of $AlCl_3$ and the relationship is 6 mol of HCl to 2 mol $AlCl_3$, the answer should be less than 6 moles of HCl.

EXERCISE 7.7.1: GENERATION OF ALUMINUM OXIDE

How many moles of Al_2O_3 will be produced when 23.9 g of H_2O are reacted according to this chemical equation?

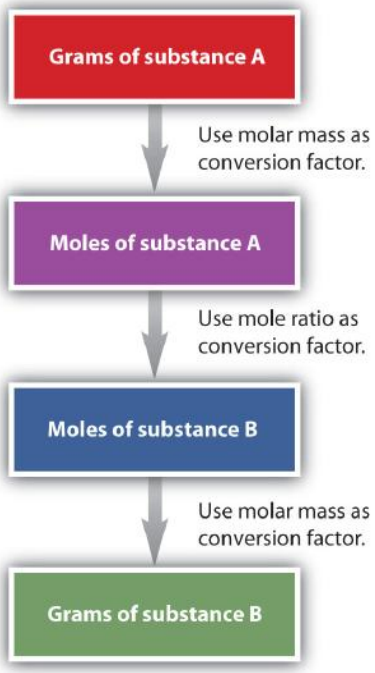
$$2\,AlCl_3 + 3\,H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6\,HCl(g)$$

Answer

0.442 mol Al_2O_3

MASS TO MASS CONVERSIONS

It is a small step from mole-mass calculations to mass-mass calculations. If we start with a known mass of one substance in a chemical reaction (instead of a known number of moles), we can calculate the corresponding masses of other substances in the reaction. The first step in this case is to convert the known mass into moles, using the substance's molar mass as the conversion factor. Then—and only then—we use the balanced chemical equation to construct a conversion factor to convert that quantity to moles of another substance, which in turn can be converted to a corresponding mass. Sequentially, the process is as follows:



This three-part process can be carried out in three discrete steps or combined into a single calculation that contains three conversion factors. The following example illustrates both techniques. Flowchart of mole mass calculations: To convert from grams to moles of substance A, use molar mass conversion factor; To convert from moles of substance A to moles of substance B, use the mole ratio conversion factor, and to convert from moles to grams of substance B, use molar mass conversion factor

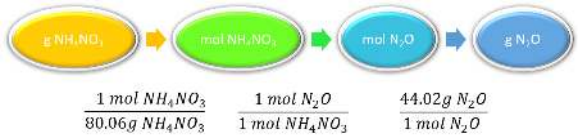
✔ EXAMPLE 7.7.2: DECOMPOSITION OF AMMONIUM NITRATE

Ammonium nitrate decomposes to dinitrogen monoxide and water according to the following equation.

$$\mathrm{NH_4NO_3}\,(s) \rightarrow \mathrm{N_2O}\,(g) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

In a certain experiment, 45.7 g of ammonium nitrate is decomposed. Find the mass of each of the products formed.

Solutions to Example 8.5.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 7.7.2
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 45.7 g NH_4NO_3 Find: Mass N_2O =? g Mass H_2O =? g
List other known quantities.	1 mol NH_4NO_3 = 80.06 g 1 mol N_2O = 44.02 g 1 mol H_2O = 18.02 g 1 mol NH_4NO_3 to 1 mol N_2O to 2 mol H_2O
Prepare two concept maps and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06g\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{1\ mol\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{44.02g\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ N_2O}$ Flowchart of conversion factors: 1 mole NH4NO3 to 80.06 grams NH4NO3, 1 mole N2O to 1 mole NH4NO3, 44.02 grams N2O to 1 mole N2O  $\frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06g\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{2\ mol\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{18.02g\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ H_2O}$ Flowchart of conversion factors: 1 mole NH4NO3 to 80.06 grams NH4NO3, 2 moles H2O to 1 mole NH4NO3, 18.02 grams H2O to 1 mole H2O
Cancel units and calculate.	$45.7\ g\ NH_4NO_3 \times \frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06\ g\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{1\ mol\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{44.02\ g\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ N_2O} = 25.1\ g\ N_2O$ $45.7\ g\ NH_4NO_3 \times \frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06\ g\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{2\ mol\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{18.02\ g\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ H_2O} = 20.6\ g\ H_2O$
Think about your result.	The total mass of the two products is equal to the mass of ammonium nitrate which decomposed, demonstrating the law of conservation of mass. Each answer has three significant figures.

? EXERCISE 7.7.2: CARBON TETRACHLORIDE

Methane can react with elemental chlorine to make carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4). The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$CH_4(g) + 4\,Cl_2(g) \rightarrow CCl_2(l) + 4\,HCl(l)$$

How many grams of HCl are produced by the reaction of 100.0 g of CH_4?

Answer

908.7g HCl

SUMMARY

- Calculations involving conversions between moles of a substance and the mass of that substance can be done using conversion factors.
- A balanced chemical reaction can be used to determine molar and mass relationships between substances.

7.7: Making Molecules- Mass-to-Mass Conversions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **8.4: Making Molecules- Mass-to-Mass Conversions** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

7.8: LIMITING REACTANT AND THEORETICAL YIELD

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Identify the limiting reactant (limiting reagent) in a given chemical reaction.
- Calculate how much product will be produced from the limiting reactant.
- Calculate how much reactant(s) remains when the reaction is complete.

In all examples discussed thus far, the reactants were assumed to be present in stoichiometric quantities. Consequently, none of the reactants were left over at the end of the reaction. This is often desirable—as in the case of a space shuttle—where excess oxygen or hydrogen is not only extra freight to be hauled into orbit, but also an explosion hazard. More often, however, reactants are present in mole ratios that are not the same as the ratio of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. As a result, one or more of them will not be used up completely, but will be left over when the reaction is completed. In this situation, the amount of product that can be obtained is limited by the amount of only one of the reactants. The reactant that restricts the amount of product obtained is called the limiting reactant. The reactant that remains after a reaction has gone to completion is in excess.

Consider a nonchemical example. Assume you have invited some friends for dinner and want to bake brownies for dessert. You find two boxes of brownie mix in your pantry and see that each package requires two eggs. The balanced equation for brownie preparation is:

$$1\,\text{box mix} + 2\,\text{eggs} \rightarrow 1\,\text{batch brownies} \tag{7.8.1}$$

If you have a dozen eggs, which ingredient will determine the number of batches of brownies that you can prepare? Because each box of brownie mix requires two eggs and you have two boxes, you need four eggs. Twelve eggs is eight more eggs than you need. Although the ratio of eggs to boxes in is 2:1, the ratio in your possession is 6:1. Hence the eggs are the ingredient (reactant) present in excess, and the brownie mix is the limiting reactant. Even if you had a refrigerator full of eggs, you could make only two batches of brownies.

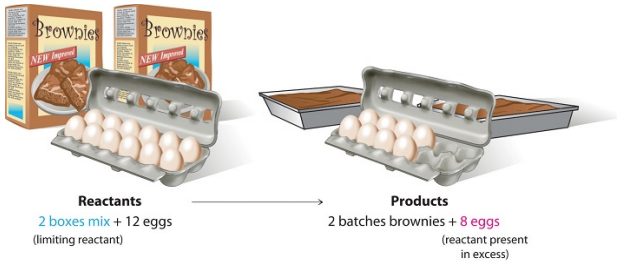


Figure 7.8.1: The Concept of a Limiting Reactant in the Preparation of Brownies. For a chemist, the **balanced** chemical equation is the recipe that must be followed. 2 boxes of brownie mix and 12 eggs results in 2 batches of brownies and 8 eggs; in this case the 8 eggs are reactant present in excess

PHET SIMULATION: REACTANTS, PRODUCTS AND LEFTOVERS

View this interactive simulation illustrating the concepts of limiting and excess reactants.



Consider this concept now with regard to a chemical process, the reaction of hydrogen with chlorine to yield hydrogen chloride:

$$\text{H}_2 + \text{Cl}_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,\text{HCl}(g)$$

The balanced equation shows that hydrogen and chlorine react in a 1:1 stoichiometric ratio. If these reactants are provided in any other amounts, one of the reactants will nearly always be entirely consumed, thus limiting the amount of product that may be generated. This substance is the limiting reactant, and the other substance is the excess reactant. Identifying the limiting and excess reactants for a given situation requires computing the molar amounts of each reactant provided and comparing them to the stoichiometric amounts represented in the balanced chemical equation. For example, imagine combining 3 moles of H_2

and 2 moles of Cl_2. This represents a 3:2 (or 1.5:1) ratio of hydrogen to chlorine present for reaction, which is greater than the stoichiometric ratio of 1:1. Hydrogen, therefore, is present in excess, and chlorine is the limiting reactant. Reaction of all the provided chlorine (2 mol) will consume 2 mol of the 3 mol of hydrogen provided, leaving 1 mol of hydrogen non-reacted.

An alternative approach to identifying the limiting reactant involves comparing the amount of product expected for the complete reaction of each reactant. Each reactant amount is used to separately calculate the amount of product that would be formed per the reaction's stoichiometry. The reactant yielding the lesser amount of product is the limiting reactant. For the example, in the previous paragraph, complete reaction of the hydrogen would yield:

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 3\ \text{mol } H_2 \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol } H_2} = 6\ \text{mol HCl}$$

Complete reaction of the provided chlorine would produce:

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 2\ \text{mol } Cl_2 \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol } Cl_2} = 4\ \text{mol HCl}$$

The chlorine will be completely consumed once 4 moles of HCl have been produced. Since enough hydrogen was provided to yield 6 moles of HCl, there will be non-reacted hydrogen remaining once this reaction is complete. Chlorine, therefore, is the limiting reactant and hydrogen is the excess reactant (Figure 7.8.2).

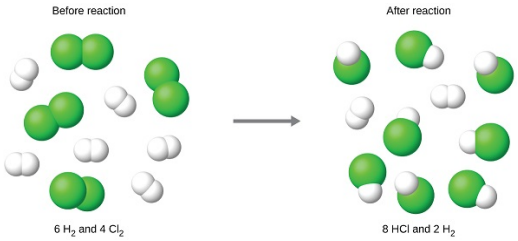


Figure 7.8.2: When H_2 and Cl_2 are combined in nonstoichiometric amounts, one of these reactants will limit the amount of HCl that can be produced. This illustration shows a reaction in which hydrogen is present in excess and chlorine is the limiting reactant. The figure shows a space-filling molecular models reacting. There is a reaction arrow pointing to the right in the middle. To the left of the reaction arrow there are three molecules each consisting of two green spheres bonded together. There are also five molecules each consisting of two smaller, white spheres bonded together. Above these molecules is the label, "Before reaction," and below these molecules is the label, "6 H subscript 2 and 4 C l subscript 2." To the right of the reaction arrow, there are eight molecules each consisting of one green sphere bonded to a smaller white sphere. There are also two molecules each consisting of two white spheres bonded together. Above these molecules is the label, "After reaction," and below these molecules is the label, "8 H C l and 2 H subscript 2."

A similar situation exists for many chemical reactions: you usually run out of one reactant before all of the other reactant has reacted. The reactant you run out of is called the limiting reactant; the other reactant or reactants are considered to be *in excess*. A crucial skill in evaluating the conditions of a chemical process is to determine which reactant is the limiting reactant and which is in excess.

HOW TO IDENTIFY THE LIMITING REACTANT (LIMITING REAGENT)

There are two ways to determine the limiting reactant. One method is to find and compare the mole ratio of the reactants used in the reaction (Approach 1). Another way is to calculate the grams of products produced from the given quantities of reactants; the reactant that produces the **smallest** amount of product is the limiting reactant (Approach 2). This section will focus more on the second method.

Approach 1 (The "Reactant Mole Ratio Method"): Find the limiting reactant by looking at the number of moles of each reactant.

1. Determine the balanced chemical equation for the chemical reaction.
2. Convert all given information into moles (most likely, through the use of molar mass as a conversion factor).
3. Calculate the mole ratio from the given information. Compare the calculated ratio to the actual ratio.
4. Use the amount of limiting reactant to calculate the amount of product produced.
5. If necessary, calculate how much is left in excess of the non-limiting (excess) reactant.

Approach 2 (The "The Product Method"): Find the limiting reactant by calculating and comparing the amount of product that each reactant will produce.

1. Balance the chemical equation for the chemical reaction.
2. Convert the given information into moles.
3. Use stoichiometry for each individual reactant to find the mass of product produced.
4. The reactant that produces a lesser amount of product is the limiting reactant.
5. The reactant that produces a larger amount of product is the excess reactant.
6. To find the amount of remaining excess reactant, subtract the mass of excess reactant consumed from the total mass of excess reactant given.

The key to recognizing which reactant is the limiting reactant is based on a mole-mass or mass-mass calculation: whichever reactant gives the *lesser* amount of product is the limiting reactant. What we need to do is determine an amount of one product (either moles or mass) assuming all of each reactant reacts. Whichever reactant gives the least amount of that particular product is the limiting reactant. It does not matter which product we use, as long as we use the same one each time. It does not matter whether we determine the number of moles or grams of that product; however, we will see shortly that knowing the final mass of product can be useful.

EXAMPLE 7.8.1: IDENTIFYING THE LIMITING REACTANT

As an example, consider the balanced equation

$$4\,C_2H_3Br_3 + 11\,O_2 \rightarrow 8\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O + 6\,Br_2$$

What is the limiting reactant if 76.4 grams of $C_2H_3Br_3$ reacted with 49.1 grams of O_2?

Solution

Using Approach 1:

Step 1: *Balance the chemical equation.*

The equation is already balanced with the relationship

$$4\ \text{mol } C_2H_3Br_3 \text{ to } 11\ \text{mol } O_2 \text{ to } 6\ \text{mol } H_2O \text{ to } 6\ \text{mol Br}$$

Step 2: Convert all given information into moles.

$$76.4\ \text{g } C_2H_3Br_3 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol } C_2H_3Br_3}{266.72\ \text{g } C_2H_3Br_3} = 0.286\ \text{mol } C_2H_3Br_3$$

$$49.1\ \text{g } O_2 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol } O_2}{32.00\ \text{g } O_2} = 1.53\ \text{mol } O_2$$

Step 3: Calculate the mole ratio from the given information. Compare the calculated ratio to the actual ratio.

Assuming that all of the oxygen is used up,

$$1.53\ \text{mol } O_2 \times \frac{4\ \text{mol } C_2H_3Br_3}{11\ \text{mol } O_2} = 0.556\ \text{mol } C_2H_3Br_3 \text{ are required.}$$

Because 0.556 moles of $C_2H_3Br_3$ required > 0.286 moles of $C_2H_3Br_3$ available, $C_2H_3Br_3$ is the limiting reactant.

Using Approach 2:

Step 1: *Balance the chemical equation.*
The equation is already balanced with the relationship

$$4 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3 \text{ to } 11 \text{ mol } O_2 \text{ to } 6 \text{ mol } H_2O \text{ to } 6 \text{ mol } Br_2$$

Step 2 and Step 3: Convert mass to moles and stoichiometry.

$$76.4 \text{ g } C_2H_3Br_3 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3}{266.72 \text{ g } C_2H_3Br_3} \times \frac{8 \text{ mol } CO_2}{4 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3} \times \frac{44.01 \text{ g } CO_2}{1 \text{ mol } CO_2} = 25.2 \text{ g } CO_2$$

$$49.1 \text{ g } O_2 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } O_2}{32.00 \text{ g } O_2} \times \frac{8 \text{ mol } CO_2}{11 \text{ mol } O_2} \times \frac{44.01 \text{ g } CO_2}{1 \text{ mol } CO_2} = 49.1 \text{ g } CO_2$$

Step 4: The reactant that produces a smaller amount of product is the limiting reactant.
Therefore, by either method, $C_2H_3Br_3$ is the limiting reactant.

EXAMPLE 7.8.2: IDENTIFYING THE LIMITING REACTANT AND THE MASS OF EXCESS REACTANT

For example, in the reaction of magnesium metal and oxygen, calculate the mass of magnesium oxide that can be produced if 2.40 g Mg reacts with 10.0 g O_2. Also determine the amount of excess reactant. MgO is the only product in the reaction.

Solution
Following Approach 1:

Step 1: Balance the chemical equation.

$$\underline{2} \text{ Mg (s)} + O_2 \text{ (g)} \rightarrow \underline{2} \text{ MgO (s)}$$

The balanced equation provides the relationship of 2 mol Mg to 1 mol O_2 to 2 mol MgO

Step 2 and Step 3: Convert mass to moles and stoichiometry.

$$2.40 \text{ g Mg} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol Mg}}{24.31 \text{ g Mg}} \times \frac{2 \text{ mol MgO}}{2 \text{ mol Mg}} \times \frac{40.31 \text{ g MgO}}{1 \text{ mol MgO}} = 3.98 \text{ g MgO}$$

$$10.0 \text{ g } O_2 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } O_2}{32.00 \text{ g } O_2} \times \frac{2 \text{ mol MgO}}{1 \text{ mol } O_2} \times \frac{40.31 \text{ g MgO}}{1 \text{ mol MgO}} = 25.2 \text{ g MgO}$$

Step 4: The reactant that produces a smaller amount of product is the limiting reactant.
Mg produces less MgO than does O_2 (3.98 g MgO vs. 25.2 g MgO), therefore Mg is the limiting reactant in this reaction.
Step 5: The reactant that produces a larger amount of product is the excess reactant.
O_2 produces more amount of MgO than Mg (25.2g MgO vs. 3.98 MgO), therefore O_2 is the excess reactant in this reaction.
Step 6: Find the amount of remaining excess reactant by subtracting the mass of the excess reactant consumed from the total mass of excess reactant given.
Mass of excess reactant calculated using the limiting reactant:

$$2.40 \text{ g Mg} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol Mg}}{24.31 \text{ g Mg}} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } O_2}{2 \text{ mol Mg}} \times \frac{32.00 \text{ g } O_2}{1 \text{ mol } O_2} = 1.58 \text{ g } O_2$$

OR
Mass of excess reactant calculated using the mass of the product:

$$3.98 \text{ g MgO} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol MgO}}{40.31 \text{ g MgO}} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } O_2}{2 \text{ mol MgO}} \times \frac{32.0 \text{ g } O_2}{1 \text{ mol } O_2} = 1.58 \text{ g } O_2$$

Mass of total excess reactant given – mass of excess reactant consumed in the reaction:

$$10.0\text{g } O_2 \text{ - (available) } 1.58\text{g } O_2 \text{ (used)} = 8.42\text{g } O_2 \text{ (excess)}$$

Therefore, O_2 is in excess.

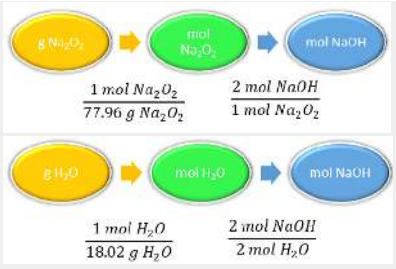
EXAMPLE 7.8.3: LIMITING REACTANT

What is the limiting reactant if 78.0 grams of Na_2O_2 were reacted with 29.4 grams of H_2O? The unbalanced chemical equation is

$$Na_2O_2(s) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow NaOH(aq) + H_2O_2(l)$$

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.4.3

Steps for Problem Solving- The Product Method	Example 7.8.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 78.0 grams of Na_2O_2 29.4 g H_2O Find: limiting reactant
List other known quantities.	1 mol Na_2O_2= 77.96 g/mol 1 mol H_2O = 18.02 g/mol Since the amount of product in grams is not required, only the molar mass of the reactants is needed.
Balance the equation.	Na_2O_2 (s) + 2H_2O (l) → 2NaOH (aq) + H_2O_2 (l) The balanced equation provides the relationship of 1 mol Na_2O_2 to 2 mol H_2O 2mol NaOH to 1 mol H_2O_2
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 Because the question only asks for the limiting reactant, we can perform two **mass-mole** calculations and determine which amount is less.
Cancel units and calculate.	$78.0\ \text{g Na}_2\text{O}_2 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Na}_2\text{O}_2}{77.96\ \text{g Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol NaOH}}{1\ \text{mol Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{40\ \text{g NaOH}}{1\ \text{mol NaOH}} = 2.00\ \text{mol NaOH}$ $29.4\ \text{g H}_2\text{O} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol H}_2\text{O}}{18.02\ \text{g H}_2\text{O}} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol NaOH}}{2\ \text{mol Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{40\ \text{g NaOH}}{1\ \text{mol NaOH}} = 1.63\ \text{mol NaOH}$ Therefore, H_2O is the *limiting reactant*.

Think about your result.

✔ EXAMPLE 7.8.4: LIMITING REACTANT AND MASS OF EXCESS REACTANT

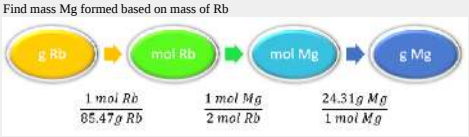
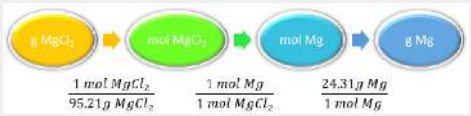
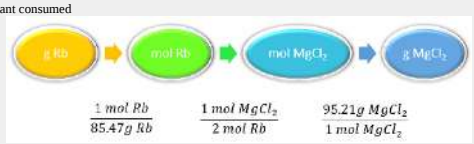
A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$ according to this chemical reaction:

$$2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$$

What mass of Mg is formed, and what mass of remaining reactant is left over?

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.4.10

Steps for Problem Solving- The Product Method	Example 7.8.2
Steps for Problem Solving	A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$ according to this chemical reaction: $$2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$$ What mass of Mg is formed, and what mass of remaining reactant is left over?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 5.00g Rb, 2.44g MgCl2 Find: mass of Mg formed, mass of remaining reactant
List other known quantities.	• molar mass: Rb = 85.47 g/mol • molar mass: $MgCl_2$ = 95.21 g/mol • molar mass: Mg = 24.31 g/mol
Prepare concept maps and use the proper conversion factor.	Find mass Mg formed based on mass of Rb  Find mass of Mg formed based on mass of $MgCl_2$  Conversion factors: 1 mole MgCl2 to 95.21 grams MgCl2, 1 mole Mg to 1 mole MgCl2, 24.31 grams Mg to 1 mole Mg Use limiting reactant to determine amount of excess reactant consumed  Conversion factors: 1 mole Rb to 85.47 grams Rb, 1 mole MgCl2 to 2 moles Rb, 95.21 grams MgCl2 to 1 mole MgCl2
Cancel units and calculate.	Because the question asks what mass of magnesium is formed, we can perform two mass-mass calculations and determine which amount is less. $$5.00\ g\ Rb \times \frac{1\ mol\ Rb}{85.47\ g\ Rb} \times \frac{1\ mol\ Mg}{2\ mol\ Rb} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ mol\ Mg} = 0.711\ g\ Mg$$ $$3.44\ g\ MgCl_2 \times \frac{1\ mol\ MgCl_2}{95.21\ g\ MgCl_2} \times \frac{1\ mol\ Mg}{1\ mol\ MgCl_2} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ mol\ Mg} = 0.878\ g\ Mg$$ The 0.711 g of Mg is the lesser quantity, so the associated reactant—5.00 g of Rb—is the limiting reactant. To determine how much of the other reactant is left, we have to do one more mass-mass calculation to determine what mass of $MgCl_2$ reacted with the 5.00 g of Rb, and then subtract the amount reacted from the original amount. $$5.00\ g\ Rb \times \frac{1\ mol\ Rb}{85.47\ g\ Rb} \times \frac{1\ mol\ MgCl_2}{2\ mol\ Rb} \times \frac{95.21\ g\ MgCl_2}{1\ mol\ MgCl_2} = 2.78\ g\ MgCl_2\ \ reacted$$ Because we started with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$, we have 3.44 g $MgCl_2$ − 2.78 g $MgCl_2$ reacted = 0.66 g $MgCl_2$ left
Think about your result.	It usually is not possible to determine the limiting reactant using just the initial masses, as the reagents have different molar masses and coefficients.

? EXERCISE 7.8.1

Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reactant, and what is the mass of the leftover reactant?

$$\underbrace{22.7\ g}_{MgO(s)} + \underbrace{17.9\ g}_{H_2S} \rightarrow MgS(s) + H_2O(l)$$

Answer

H_2S is the limiting reagent; 1.5 g of MgO are left over.

7.8: Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Sarick Shah, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Henry Agnew, & Henry Agnew.

- **8.6: Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Sarick Shah is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/531370



https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/531370

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Chemical Bonding

How do atoms make compounds? Typically they join together in such a way that they lose their identities as elements and adopt a new identity as a compound. These joins are called *chemical bonds*. But how do atoms join together? Ultimately, it all comes down to electrons. Before we discuss how electrons interact, we need to introduce a tool to simply illustrate electrons in an atom.

8.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots

8.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred

8.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared

8.4: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds

8.5: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule

---

8: Chemical Bonding is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

8.1: REPRESENTING VALENCE ELECTRONS WITH DOTS

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

- Draw a Lewis electron dot diagram for an atom or a monatomic ion.

In almost all cases, chemical bonds are formed by interactions of valence electrons in atoms. To facilitate our understanding of how valence electrons interact, a simple way of representing those valence electrons would be useful.

A **Lewis electron dot diagram** (or electron dot diagram, or a Lewis diagram, or a Lewis structure) is a representation of the valence electrons of an atom that uses dots around the symbol of the element. The number of dots equals the number of valence electrons in the atom. These dots are arranged to the right and left and above and below the symbol, with no more than two dots on a side. (The order in which the positions are used does not matter.) For example, the Lewis electron dot diagram for hydrogen is simply

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot$$

Because the side is not important, the Lewis electron dot diagram could also be drawn as follows:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}} \quad or \quad \cdot\mathbf{H} \quad or \quad \underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{H}}$$

The electron dot diagram for helium, with two valence electrons, is as follows:

$$\mathbf{He:}$$

By putting the two electrons together on the same side, we emphasize the fact that these two electrons are both in the 1*s* subshell; this is the common convention we will adopt, although there will be exceptions later. The next atom, lithium, has an electron configuration of $1s^2 2s^1$, so it has only one electron in its valence shell. Its electron dot diagram resembles that of hydrogen, except the symbol for lithium is used:

$$\mathbf{Li}\cdot$$

Beryllium has two valence electrons in its 2*s* shell, so its electron dot diagram is like that of helium:

$$\mathbf{Be:}$$

The next atom is boron. Its valence electron shell is $2s^2 2p^1$, so it has three valence electrons. The third electron will go on another side of the symbol:

$$\dot{\mathbf{B}}\mathbf{:}$$

Again, it does not matter on which sides of the symbol the electron dots are positioned.

For carbon, there are four valence electrons, two in the 2*s* subshell and two in the 2*p* subshell. As usual, we will draw two dots together on one side, to represent the 2*s* electrons. However, conventionally, we draw the dots for the two *p* electrons on different sides. As such, the electron dot diagram for carbon is as follows:

$$\cdot\dot{\mathbf{C}}\mathbf{:}$$

With N, which has three *p* electrons, we put a single dot on each of the three remaining sides:

$$\cdot\dot{\underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{N}}}\mathbf{:}$$

For oxygen, which has four *p* electrons, we now have to start doubling up on the dots on one other side of the symbol. When doubling up electrons, make sure that each side has no more than two electrons.

$$\cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{O}}}\mathbf{:}$$

Fluorine and neon have seven and eight dots, respectively:

$$\mathbf{:}\ddot{\underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{F}}}\mathbf{:}$$

$$\mathbf{:}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\mathbf{Ne}}}\mathbf{:}$$

With the next element, sodium, the process starts over with a single electron because sodium has a single electron in its highest-numbered shell, the $n = 3$ shell. By going through the periodic table, we see that the Lewis electron dot diagrams of atoms will never have more than

eight dots around the atomic symbol.

EXAMPLE 8.1.1: LEWIS DOT DIAGRAMS

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. aluminum
b. selenium

Solution

a. The valence electron configuration for aluminum is $3s^2 3p^1$. So it would have three dots around the symbol for aluminum, two of them paired to represent the 3*s* electrons:

$$\dot{A}\dot{l}:$$

2. The valence electron configuration for selenium is $4s^2 4p^4$. In the highest-numbered shell, the $n = 4$ shell, there are six electrons. Its electron dot diagram is as follows:

$$\cdot\dot{\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\mathbf{Se}}}\mathbf{:}$$

EXERCISE 8.1.1

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. phosphorus
b. argon

Answer a

$$\cdot\dot{\underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{P}}}\mathbf{:}$$

Answer b

$$\mathbf{:}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\mathbf{Ar}}}\mathbf{:}$$

SUMMARY

- Lewis electron dot diagrams use dots to represent valence electrons around an atomic symbol.
- Lewis electron dot diagrams for ions have less (for cations) or more (for anions) dots than the corresponding atom.

8.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **10.2: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

8.2: LEWIS STRUCTURES OF IONIC COMPOUNDS- ELECTRONS TRANSFERRED

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- State the octet rule.
- Define *ionic bond*.
- Draw Lewis structures for ionic compounds.

In Section 4.7, we demonstrated that ions are formed by losing electrons to make cations, or by gaining electrons to form anions. The astute reader may have noticed something: many of the ions that form have eight electrons in their valence shell. Either atoms gain enough electrons to have eight electrons in the valence shell and become the appropriately charged anion, or they lose the electrons in their original valence shell; the *lower* shell, now the valence shell, has eight electrons in it, so the atom becomes positively charged. For whatever reason, having eight electrons in a valence shell is a particularly energetically stable arrangement of electrons. The **octet rule** explains the favorable trend of atoms having eight electrons in their valence shell. When atoms form compounds, the octet rule is not always satisfied for all atoms at all times, but it is a very good rule of thumb for understanding the kinds of bonding arrangements that atoms can make.

It is not impossible to violate the octet rule. Consider sodium: in its elemental form, it has one valence electron and is stable. It is rather reactive, however, and does not require a lot of energy to remove that electron to make the Na^+ ion. We *could* remove another electron by adding even more energy to the ion, to make the Na^{2+} ion. However, that requires much more energy than is normally available in chemical reactions, so sodium stops at a 1+ charge after losing a single electron. It turns out that the Na^+ ion has a complete octet in its new valence shell, the $n = 2$ shell, which satisfies the octet rule. The octet rule is a result of trends in energies and is useful in explaining why atoms form the ions that they do.

Now consider an Na atom in the presence of a Cl atom. The two atoms have these Lewis electron dot diagrams and electron configurations:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \qquad \cdot\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}$$

$$[Ne]\,3s^1 \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^5$$

For the Na atom to obtain an octet, it must lose an electron; for the Cl atom to gain an octet, it must gain an electron. An electron transfers from the Na atom to the Cl atom:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \curvearrowright \cdot\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}$$

resulting in two ions—the Na^+ ion and the Cl^- ion:

$$\mathbf{Na}^+ \qquad \mathbf{:}\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}^-$$

$$[Ne] \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^6$$

Both species now have complete octets, and the electron shells are energetically stable. From basic physics, we know that opposite charges attract. This is what happens to the Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathbf{Na}^+ + \mathbf{:}\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}\mathbf{:}^- \rightarrow Na^+Cl^- \quad or \quad NaCl$$

where we have written the final formula (the formula for sodium chloride) as per the convention for ionic compounds, without listing the charges explicitly. The attraction between oppositely charged ions is called an **ionic bond,** and it is one of the main types of chemical bonds in chemistry. Ionic bonds are caused by electrons *transferring* from one atom to another.

In electron transfer, the number of electrons lost must equal the number of electrons gained. We saw this in the formation of NaCl. A similar process occurs between Mg atoms and O atoms, except in this case two electrons are transferred:



The two ions each have octets as their valence shell, and the two oppositely charged particles attract, making an ionic bond:

$$\mathbf{Mg}^{2+} + \left[\mathbf{:}\ddot{\mathbf{O}}\mathbf{:}\right]^{2-} \qquad Mg^{2+}O^{2-} \; or \; MgO$$

Remember, in the final formula for the ionic compound, we do not write the charges on the ions.

What about when an Na atom interacts with an O atom? The O atom needs two electrons to complete its valence octet, but the Na atom supplies only one electron:



The O atom still does not have an octet of electrons. What we need is a second Na atom to donate a second electron to the O atom:



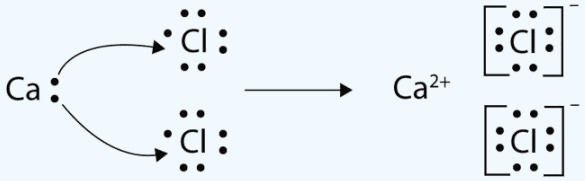
These three ions attract each other to give an overall neutral-charged ionic compound, which we write as Na_2O. The need for the number of electrons lost being equal to the number of electrons gained explains why ionic compounds have the ratio of cations to anions that they do. This is required by the law of conservation of matter as well.

EXAMPLE 8.2.1: SYNTHESIS OF CALCIUM CHLORIDE FROM ELEMENTS

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form calcium chloride from Ca atoms and Cl atoms.

Solution

A Ca atom has two valence electrons, while a Cl atom has seven electrons. A Cl atom needs only one more to complete its octet, while Ca atoms have two electrons to lose. Thus we need two Cl atoms to accept the two electrons from one Ca atom. The transfer process looks as follows:

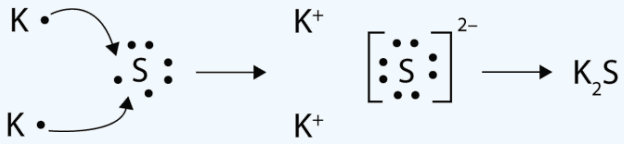


The oppositely charged ions attract each other to make $CaCl_2$.

EXERCISE 8.2.1

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form potassium sulfide from K atoms and S atoms.

Answer



SUMMARY

- The tendency to form species that have eight electrons in the valence shell is called the octet rule.
- The attraction of oppositely charged ions caused by electron transfer is called an ionic bond.
- The strength of ionic bonding depends on the magnitude of the charges and the sizes of the ions.

8.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **10.3: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

8.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared

Learning Objectives

- Define *covalent bond*.
- Illustrate covalent bond formation with Lewis electron dot diagrams.

Ionic bonding typically occurs when it is easy for one atom to lose one or more electrons and another atom to gain one or more electrons. However, some atoms won't give up or gain electrons easily. Yet they still participate in compound formation. How? There is another mechanism for obtaining a complete valence shell: *sharing* electrons. When electrons are shared between two atoms, they make a bond called a **covalent bond**.

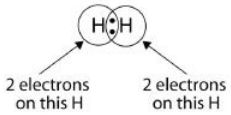
Let us illustrate a covalent bond by using H atoms, with the understanding that H atoms need only two electrons to fill the 1*s* subshell. Each H atom starts with a single electron in its valence shell:

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot \quad \cdot\mathbf{H}$$

The two H atoms can share their electrons:

$$\mathbf{H:H}$$

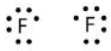
We can use circles to show that each H atom has two electrons around the nucleus, completely filling each atom's valence shell:



Because each H atom has a filled valence shell, this bond is stable, and we have made a diatomic hydrogen molecule. (This explains why hydrogen is one of the diatomic elements.) For simplicity's sake, it is not unusual to represent the covalent bond with a dash, instead of with two dots:

H–H

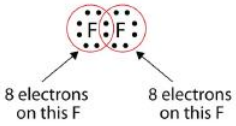
Because two atoms are sharing one pair of electrons, this covalent bond is called a **single bond**. As another example, consider fluorine. F atoms have seven electrons in their valence shell:



These two atoms can do the same thing that the H atoms did; they share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond.



Note that each F atom has a complete octet around it now:

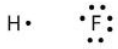


We can also write this using a dash to represent the shared electron pair:

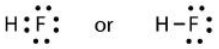


There are two different types of electrons in the fluorine diatomic molecule. The **bonding electron pair** makes the covalent bond. Each F atom has three other pairs of electrons that do not participate in the bonding; they are called **lone pair electrons**. Each F atom has one bonding pair and three lone pairs of electrons.

Covalent bonds can be made between different elements as well. One example is HF. Each atom starts out with an odd number of electrons in its valence shell:



The two atoms can share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond:



We note that the H atom has a full valence shell with two electrons, while the F atom has a complete octet of electrons.

Example 8.3.1:

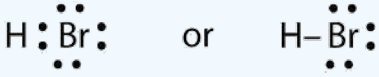
Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in HBr.

Solution

HBr is very similar to HF, except that it has Br instead of F. The atoms are as follows:



The two atoms can share their unpaired electron:



Exercise 8.3.1

Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in Cl_2.

Answer



When working with covalent structures, it sometimes looks like you have leftover electrons. You apply the rules you learned so far, and there are still some electrons that remain unattached. You can't just leave them there. So where do you put them?

Multiple Covalent Bonds

Some molecules are not able to satisfy the octet rule by making only single covalent bonds between the atoms. Consider the compound ethene, which has a molecular formula of C_2H_4. The carbon atoms are bonded together, with each carbon also bonded to two hydrogen atoms.

$$\text{two C atoms} = 2 \times 4 = 8 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$\text{four H atoms} = 4 \times 1 = 4 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$\text{total of 12 valence electrons in the molecule}$$

If the Lewis electron dot structure was drawn with a single bond between the carbon atoms and with the octet rule followed, it would look like this:

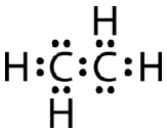


Figure 8.3.1: Incorrect dot structure of ethene. (CK12 License)

This Lewis structure is incorrect because it contains a total of 14 electrons. However, the Lewis structure can be changed by eliminating the lone pairs on the carbon atoms and having to share two pairs instead of only one pair.

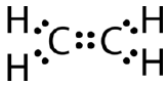


Figure 8.3.2: Correct dot structure for ethene. (CK12 License)

A **double covalent bond** is a covalent bond formed by atoms that share two pairs of electrons. The double covalent bond that occurs between the two carbon atoms in ethane can also be represented by a structural formula and with a molecular model as shown in the figure below.

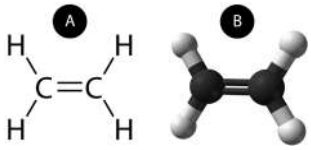


Figure 8.3.3: (A) The structural model for C_2H_4 consists of a double covalent bond between the two carbon atoms and single bonds to the hydrogen atoms. (B) Molecular model of C_2H_4.

A **triple covalent bond** is a covalent bond formed by atoms that share three pairs of electrons. The element nitrogen is a gas that composes the majority of Earth's atmosphere. A nitrogen atom has five valence electrons, which can be shown as one pair and three single electrons. When combining with another nitrogen atom to form a diatomic molecule, the three single electrons on each atom combine to form three shared pairs of electrons.

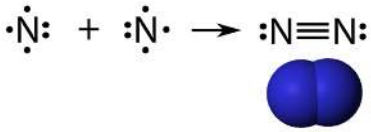


Figure 8.3.4: Triple bond in N_2.

Each nitrogen atom follows the octet rule with one lone pair of electrons, and six electrons that are shared between the atoms.

Summary

- Covalent bonds are formed when atoms share electrons.
- Lewis electron dot diagrams can be drawn to illustrate covalent bond formation.
- Double bonds or triple bonds between atoms may be necessary to properly illustrate the bonding in some molecules.

Contributions & Attributions

-
- Anonymous by request

8.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared is shared under a mixed license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **10.4: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed notset.

8.4: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Draw Lewis structures for covalent compounds.

The following procedure can be used to construct Lewis electron structures for more complex molecules and ions.

How-to: Constructing Lewis electron structures

1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.

- Add together the valence electrons from each atom. (Recall that the number of valence electrons is indicated by the position of the element in the periodic table.)
- If the species is a polyatomic ion, remember to add or subtract the number of electrons necessary to give the total charge on the ion.

  For CO_3^{2-}, for example, we add two electrons to the total because of the -2 charge.

2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.

- When there is a central atom, it is usually the least electronegative element in the compound. Chemists usually list this central atom first in the chemical formula (as in CCl_4 and CO_3^{2-}, which both have C as the central atom), which is another clue to the compound's structure.
- Hydrogen and the halogens are almost always connected to only one other atom, so they are usually *terminal* rather than central.

3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.

- In H_2O, for example, there is a bonding pair of electrons between oxygen and each hydrogen.

4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).

- These electrons will usually be lone pairs.

5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.

- We will explain later that some atoms are able to accommodate more than eight electrons.

6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.

- This will not change the number of electrons on the terminal atoms.

7. Final check

- Always make sure all valence electrons are accounted for and that each atom has an octet of electrons, except for hydrogen (with two electrons).
- The central atom is usually the least electronegative element in the molecule or ion; hydrogen and the halogens are usually terminal.

Now let's apply this procedure to some particular compounds, beginning with one we have already discussed.

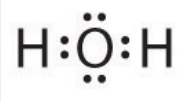
Example 8.4.1: Water

Write the Lewis Structure for H_2O.

Solution

Solutions to Example 10.4.1

Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 8.4.1
1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.	Each H atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, and the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 8 valence electrons.

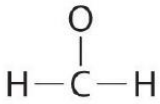
Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 8.4.1
2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.	H O H Because H atoms are almost always terminal, the arrangement within the molecule must be HOH.
3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond. 4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).	Placing one bonding pair of electrons between the O atom and each H atom gives H -O- H with 4 electrons left over. Each H atom has a full valence shell of 2 electrons.
5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.	Adding the remaining 4 electrons to the oxygen (as two lone pairs) gives the following structure: 
6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.	Not necessary.
7. Final check.	The Lewis structure gives oxygen an octet and each hydrogen 2 electrons.

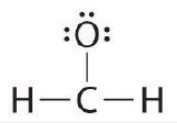
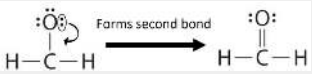
Example 8.4.2

Write the Lewis structure for the CH_2O molecule

Solution

Solutions to Example 10.4.2

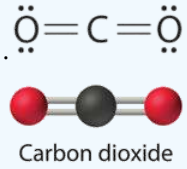
Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 8.4.2
1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.	Each hydrogen atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, carbon (group 14) has 4 valence electrons, and oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of [(2)(1) + 4 + 6] = 12 valence electrons.
2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.	 Because carbon is less electronegative than oxygen and hydrogen is normally terminal, C must be the central atom.
3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.	Placing a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms gives the following:  6 electrons are used, and 6 are left over.

Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 8.4.2
4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).	Adding all 6 remaining electrons to oxygen (as three lone pairs) gives the following:  Although oxygen now has an octet and each hydrogen has 2 electrons, carbon has only 6 electrons.
5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.	Not necessary. There are no electrons left to place on the central atom.
6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.	To give carbon an octet of electrons, we use one of the lone pairs of electrons on oxygen to form a carbon–oxygen double bond: 
7. Final check	Both the oxygen and the carbon now have an octet of electrons, so this is an acceptable Lewis electron structure. The O has two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, and C has four bonding pairs. This is the structure of formaldehyde, which is used in embalming fluid.

? Exercise 8.4.1

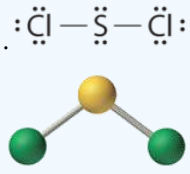
Write Lewis electron structures for CO_2 and SCl_2, a vile-smelling, unstable red liquid that is used in the manufacture of rubber.

Answer CO_2



Carbon dioxide

Answer SCl_2



Sulfur dichloride

The United States Supreme Court has the unenviable task of deciding what the law is. This responsibility can be a major challenge when there is no clear principle involved or where there is a new situation not encountered before. Chemistry faces the same challenge in extending basic concepts to fit a new situation. Drawing of Lewis structures for polyatomic ions uses the same approach, but tweaks the process a little to fit a somewhat different set of circumstances.

Writing Lewis Structures for Polyatomic Ions (CK-12)

Recall that a polyatomic ion is a group of atoms that are covalently bonded together and which carry an overall electrical charge. The ammonium ion, NH_4^+, is formed when a hydrogen ion $\left(H^+\right)$ attaches to the lone pair of an ammonia $\left(NH_3\right)$ molecule in a coordinate covalent bond.

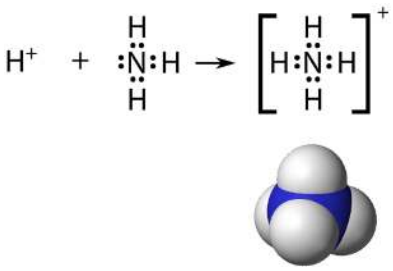


Figure 8.4.3: The ammonium ion. (CK12 License)

When drawing the Lewis structure of a polyatomic ion, the charge of the ion is reflected in the number of total valence electrons in the structure. In the case of the ammonium ion:

$$1 \text{ N atom} = 5 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$4 \text{ H atoms} = 4 \times 1 = 4 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$\text{subtract 1 electron for the } 1+ \text{ charge of the ion}$$

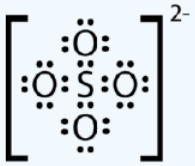
$$\text{total of 8 valence electrons in the ion}$$

It is customary to put the Lewis structure of a polyatomic ion into a large set of brackets, with the charge of the ion as a superscript outside of the brackets.

Exercise 8.4.2

Draw the Lewis electron dot structure for the sulfate ion.

Answer (CK12 License)



Exceptions to the Octet Rule (BC Campus)

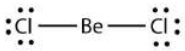
As important and useful as the octet rule is in chemical bonding, there are some well-known violations. This does not mean that the octet rule is useless—quite the contrary. As with many rules, there are exceptions, or violations.

There are three violations to the octet rule. Odd-electron molecules represent the first violation to the octet rule. Although they are few, some stable compounds have an odd number of electrons in their valence shells. With an odd number of electrons, at least one atom in the molecule will have to violate the octet rule. Examples of stable odd-electron molecules are NO, NO_2, and ClO_2. The Lewis electron dot diagram for NO is as follows:

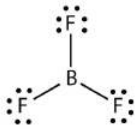


Although the O atom has an octet of electrons, the N atom has only seven electrons in its valence shell. Although NO is a stable compound, it is very chemically reactive, as are most other odd-electron compounds.

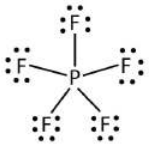
Electron-deficient molecules represent the second violation to the octet rule. These stable compounds have less than eight electrons around an atom in the molecule. The most common examples are the covalent compounds of beryllium and boron. For example, beryllium can form two covalent bonds, resulting in only four electrons in its valence shell:



Boron commonly makes only three covalent bonds, resulting in only six valence electrons around the B atom. A well-known example is BF_3:



The third violation to the octet rule is found in those compounds with more than eight electrons assigned to their valence shell. These are called expanded valence shell molecules. Such compounds are formed only by central atoms in the third row of the periodic table or beyond that have empty *d* orbitals in their valence shells that can participate in covalent bonding. One such compound is PF_5. The only reasonable Lewis electron dot diagram for this compound has the P atom making five covalent bonds:



Formally, the P atom has 10 electrons in its valence shell.

Example 8.4.3: Octet Violations

Identify each violation to the octet rule by drawing a Lewis electron dot diagram.

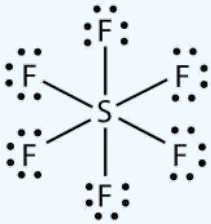
a. ClO
b. SF_6

Solution

a. With one Cl atom and one O atom, this molecule has 6 + 7 = 13 valence electrons, so it is an odd-electron molecule. A Lewis electron dot diagram for this molecule is as follows:



b. In SF_6, the central S atom makes six covalent bonds to the six surrounding F atoms, so it is an expanded valence shell molecule. Its Lewis electron dot diagram is as follows:



Exercise 8.4.3: Xenon Difluoride

Identify the violation to the octet rule in XeF_2 by drawing a Lewis electron dot diagram.

Answer



The Xe atom has an expanded valence shell with more than eight electrons around it.

Summary

Lewis dot symbols provide a simple rationalization of why elements form compounds with the observed stoichiometries. A plot of the overall energy of a covalent bond as a function of internuclear distance is identical to a plot of an ionic pair because both result from attractive and repulsive forces between charged entities. In Lewis electron structures, we encounter **bonding pairs**, which are shared by two atoms, and **lone pairs**, which are not shared between atoms. Lewis structures for polyatomic ions follow the same rules as those for other covalent compounds. There are three violations to the octet rule: odd-electron molecules, electron-deficient molecules, and expanded valence shell molecules.

8.4: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds is shared under a mixed license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **10.5: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed notset. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.5: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule

Learning Objectives

- Explain the concept of resonance and how it works with within molecules.

Resonance

There are some cases in which more than one viable Lewis structure can be drawn for a molecule. An example is the ozone (O_3) molecule in Figure 8.5.1. There are a total of 18 electrons in the structure and so the following two structures are possible.

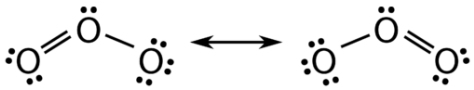


Figure 8.5.1: Resonance forms of ozone. Note the use of the double-headed arrow.

The structure on the left (8.5.1) can be converted to the structure on the right by a shifting of electrons without altering the positions of the atoms.

It was once thought that the structure of a molecule such as O_3 consisted of one single bond and one double bond which then shifted back and forth as shown above. However, further studies showed that the two bonds are identical. Any double covalent bond between two given atoms is typically shorter than a single covalent bond. Studies of the O_3 and other similar molecules showed that the bonds were identical in length. Interestingly, the length of the bond is in between the lengths expected for an $O-O$ single bond and a double bond.

Resonance is the use of two or more Lewis structures to represent the covalent bonding in a molecule. One of the valid structures is referred to as a resonance structure. It is now understood that the true structure of a molecule which displays resonance is that of an average or a hybrid of all the resonance structures. In the case of the O_3 molecule, each of the covalent bonds between O atoms are best thought of as being "one and a half" bonds, as opposed to either a pure single bond or a pure double bond. This "half-bond" can be shown as a dotted line in both the Lewis structure and the molecular model (Figure 8.5.2).

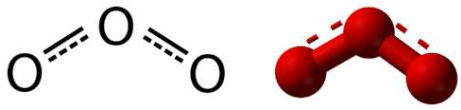


Figure 8.5.2: "Half-bond" model of ozone molecule. This is a better description of the electronic structure of ozone than either of the resonance structures in Figure 8.5.1.

Many polyatomic ions also display resonance. In some cases, the true structure may be an average of three valid resonance structures, as in the case of the nitrate ion, NO_3^- in Figure 8.5.3.

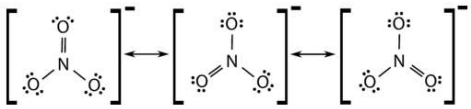


Figure 8.5.3: Resonance structure of nitrate anion.

The bond lengths between the central N atom and each O atom are identical and the bonds can be approximated as being equal to one and one-third bonds.

Summary

- Resonance structures are averages of different Lewis structure possibilities.
- Bond lengths are intermediate between covalent bonds and covalent double bonds.

8.5: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Marisa Alviar-Agnew & Henry Agnew.

- **10.6: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Molecular Compounds

9.1: Molecular shapes –Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory
9.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity
9.3: Polar Molecules
9.4: Intermolecular Forces

9: Molecular Compounds is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.1: Molecular shapes –Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory

The Lewis structure tells the connection between atoms and any lone pair present, but it does not tell the exact angles of bonds around the central atom or the actual shape of the molecule. The conventional way of presenting a Lewis structure of a molecule shows it as a planer, e.g., CH_4 as  which implies the molecule to be planar and H-C-H bond angles to be either 90° or 180°. The actual CH_4 molecule is nonplanar as  with all H-C-H bond angles 109.5^o. the following theory helps explain the actual shapes of molecules.

Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSERP) theory

The valence shell electron pair repulsion theory predicts the shape of the molecule and bond angles based on the fact that valence shell electrons around the central atom in a molecule are grouped. The electron groups repel each other and go as far apart from each other as possible.

Electron groups

A lone pair, a single bond, a double bond, and a triple bond, each of these is one electron group. This is because two elections of single bond, four electrons of a double bond, and six electrons of a triple bond are located in the region along the axis of the bond, i.e., they are grouped together. Similarly, a lone pair is located in a defined space around the atom. For example, carbon in methane () has four electron groups that are the four single bonds (C-H bonds) around the carbon. Carbon in carbon dioxide (O=C=O) has two electron groups that are the two double bonds around the carbon, and in H-C≡N has two electron groups that are a single bond (C-H bond) and a triple bond (C≡N bond).

Molecular shapes and bond angles based on VSEPR theory

One electron group

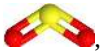
One electron group between two atoms is always a linear molecule. For example, H-H ,O=O, N≡N, and H-Cl  , are linear molecules, where hydrogen is white and chlorine is green in the H-Cl model.

Two-electron groups

Two-electron groups are farthest apart in a **linear geometry** with the central atom in the middle of the line and the bond angles of 180° around the central atom. The examples include CO_2  and HCN  , where the central carbon atom is gray, hydrogen is white, nitrogen is blue, and oxygen is red.

Three-electron groups

Three-electron groups are farthest apart when they are at the corners of a triangle in a **planar trigonal geometry** with the central atom in the middle of the triangle and the bond angles of 120° around the central atom. Examples include BF_3  , and H_2CO  , where boron is pink, F is green, carbon is gray, oxygen is red, and hydrogen is white.

If one of the electron domains is a lone pair, the electron domain geometry remains the same, but the geometry of the atoms in the molecule, i.e., **molecule geometry,** is **bent**. For example,  has three electron domains and trigonal planar electron domain geometry, but there is one lone pair. So, the molecule geometry is **bent** as  , where sulfur is yellow, and oxygen is red (lone pair in not shown).

Four-electron groups

Four-electron groups are farthest apart when they are at the corners of a tetrahedron in a **tetrahedral geometry** with the central atom at the center of the tetrahedron and the bond angles of 109.5^o around the central atom as: . An example is methane CH_4

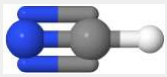
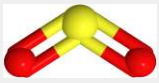
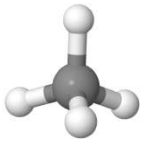
 , where carbon is gray, and hydrogens are white.

If one of the electron domains is a lone pair, the electron domain geometry is still tetrahedral, but the molecule geometry is **trigonal pyramidal** as  with three pereferal atoms at the corners of the triangel and the central atom raised to the top of the pyramid. An example is ammonia ($:NH_3$)  , where nitrogen is blue, and hydrogens are white.

If two electron domains are lone pairs, the electron domains geometry is still tetrahedral, but the molecule geometry is bent. An example is water (), where oxygen is red, and hydrogens are white.

Table 1 is the summary of the electron domain geometries and the corresponding molecular geometries.

Table 1: Common molecular geometries around the central atom

Electron domain	Lone pair	Electron domain geometry	Molecule geometry	Bond angles	Examples
1	0	Linear	Linear	-	HCl 
2	0	Linear	Linear	180º	CO_2  HCN 
3	0	Trigonal pyramidal	Trigonal pyramidal	120º	H_2CO 
3	2	Trigonal pyramidal	Bent	120º	 
4	0	Tetrahedral	Tetrahedral	109.5º	CH_4 
4	1	Tetrahedral	Trigonal pyramidal	109.5º	$:NH_3$ 
4	2	Tetrahedral	Bent	109.5º	

This page titled 9.1: Molecular shapes –Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Muhammad Arif Malik.

- **3.7: Molecular shapes –Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory** by Muhammad Arif Malik is licensed Public Domain.

9.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity

Learning Objectives

- Describe electronegativity and polarity.
- Use electronegativity values to predict bond polarity.

Our discussions of bonding thus far have focused on two types, ionic and covalent. In ionic bonds, like $NaCl$, electrons are *transferred*; the 3s electron is stripped from the Na atom and is incorporated into the electronic structure of the Cl atom, and the compound is most accurately described as consisting of individual Na^+ and Cl^- ions. In covalent bonding, unpaired electrons from individual atoms are *shared* in order to fill the valence shell of each atom. When a covalent bond is formed between the same type of atoms, such as Cl_2, the electrons are *shared equally* between the two. However, when a covalent bond is formed between different types of atoms, the electrons are not necessarily shared equally. In these compounds their bond character falls *between* the two extremes: transferred and shared equally.

Bond Polarity

As demonstrated below, **bond polarity** is a useful concept for describing the sharing of electrons between atoms, within a covalent bond:

- A **nonpolar covalent bond** (Figure $9.2.1a$)is one in which the electrons are shared *equally* between two atoms.
- A **polar covalent bond** (Figure $9.2.1b$) is one in which one atom has a greater attraction for the electrons than the other atom.
- If the relative attraction of an atom for electrons is great enough, then the bond is an **ionic bond (**Figure $9.2.1c$).

Electron density in a polar bond is distributed unevenly and is greater around the atom that attracts the electrons more than the other. For example, the electrons in the H–Cl bond of a hydrogen chloride molecule spend more time near the chlorine atom than near the hydrogen atom. Note that the shaded area around Cl in Figure $9.2.1b$ is much larger than it is around H. This imbalance in electron density results in a buildup of *partial negative charge* (designated as δ−) on one side of the bond (Cl) and a *partial positive charge* (designated δ+) on the other side of the bond (H).

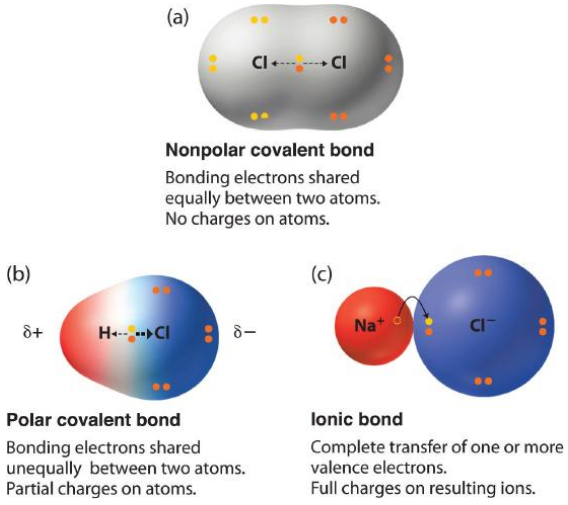


Figure 9.2.1: The Electron Distribution in a Nonpolar Covalent Bond, a Polar Covalent Bond, and an Ionic Bond Using Lewis Electron Structures. In a purely covalent bond (a), the bonding electrons are shared equally between the atoms. In a purely ionic bond (c), an electron has been transferred completely from one atom to the other. A polar covalent bond (b) is intermediate between the two extremes: the bonding electrons are shared unequally between the two atoms, and the electron distribution is asymmetrical with the electron density being greater around the more electronegative atom. Electron-rich (negatively charged) regions are shown in blue; electron-poor (positively charged) regions are shown in red.

Any covalent bond between atoms of different elements is a polar bond, but the degree of polarity varies widely. Some bonds between different elements are only minimally polar, while others are strongly polar. Ionic bonds can be considered the ultimate in polarity, with electrons being transferred rather than shared. To judge the relative polarity of a covalent bond, chemists use electronegativity, which is a relative measure of how strongly an atom attracts electrons when it forms a covalent bond.

Electronegativity

Because the tendency of an element to gain or lose electrons is so important in determining its chemistry, various methods have been developed to quantitatively describe this tendency. The most important method uses a measurement called **electronegativity**, defined as the *relative ability* of an atom to attract electrons to itself in a chemical compound. Elements with high electronegativities tend to acquire electrons in chemical reactions and are found in the upper right corner of the periodic table. Elements with low electronegativities tend to lose electrons in chemical reactions and are found in the lower left corner of the periodic table.

> *Electronegativity is defined as the ability of an atom in a particular molecule to attract electrons to itself. The greater the value, the greater the attractiveness for electrons.*

The Pauling Electronegativity Scale

The original electronegativity scale, developed in the 1930s by Linus Pauling (1901– 1994) was based on measurements of the strengths of covalent bonds between different elements. Pauling arbitrarily set the electronegativity of fluorine at 4.0 (although today it has been refined to 3.98), thereby creating a scale in which all elements have values between 0 and 4.0.

The polarity of a covalent bond can be judged by determining the difference in the electronegativities of the two atoms making the bond. The greater the difference in electronegativities, the greater the imbalance of electron sharing in the bond. Although there are no hard and fast rules, the general rule, is if the difference in electronegativities is less than about 0.4, the bond is considered nonpolar; if the difference is greater than 0.4, the bond is considered polar. If the difference in electronegativities is large enough (generally greater than about 1.8), the resulting compound is considered ionic rather than covalent. An electronegativity difference of zero, of course, indicates a nonpolar covalent bond.

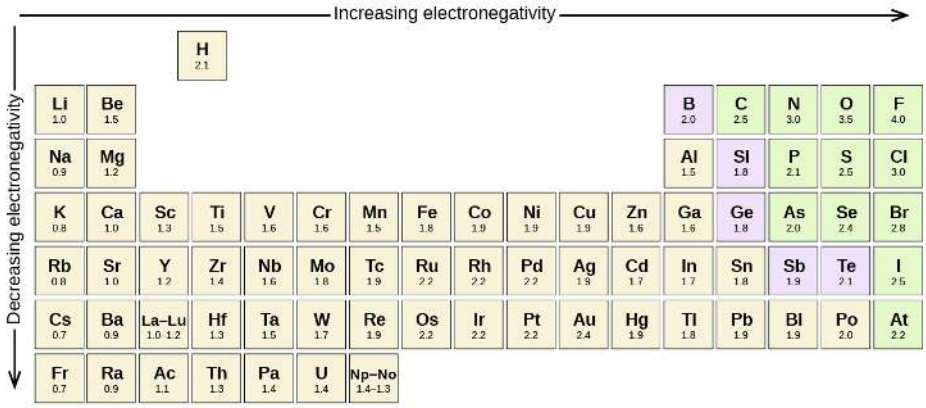
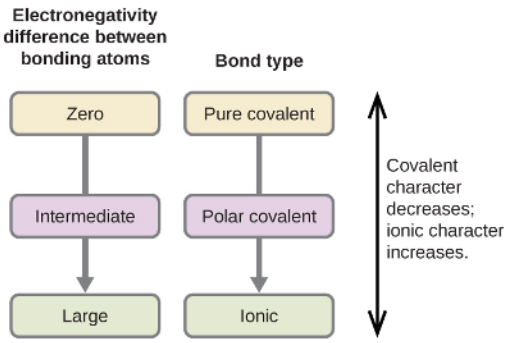


Figure 9.2.4 The electronegativity values derived by Pauling follow predictable periodic trends with the higher electronegativities toward the upper right of the periodic table. Fluorine has the highest value (4.0).



Bond Type	Electronegativity Difference
pure covalent	< 0.4
polar covalent	between 0.4 and 1.8
ionic	> 1.8

Figure 9.2.5: As the electronegativity difference increases between two atoms, the bond becomes more ionic.

Example 9.2.1

Describe the electronegativity difference between each pair of atoms and the resulting polarity (or bond type).

a. C and H

b. H and H
c. Na and Cl
d. O and H

Solution

a. Carbon has an electronegativity of 2.5, while the value for hydrogen is 2.1. The difference is 0.4, which is rather small. The C–H bond is therefore considered nonpolar.
b. Both hydrogen atoms have the same electronegativity value—2.1. The difference is zero, so the bond is nonpolar.
c. Sodium's electronegativity is 0.9, while chlorine's is 3.0. The difference is 2.1, which is rather high, and so sodium and chlorine form an ionic compound.
d. With 2.1 for hydrogen and 3.5 for oxygen, the electronegativity difference is 1.4. We would expect a very polar bond. The sharing of electrons between O and H is unequal with the electrons more strongly drawn towards O.

? Exercise 9.2.1

Describe the electronegativity (EN) difference between each pair of atoms and the resulting polarity (or bond type).

a. C and O
b. K and Br
c. N and N
d. Cs and F

Answer a:

The EN difference is 1.0 , hence polar. The sharing of electrons between C and O is unequal with the electrons more strongly drawn towards O.

Answer b:

The EN difference is greater than 1.8, hence ionic.

Answer c:

Identical atoms have zero EN difference, hence nonpolar.

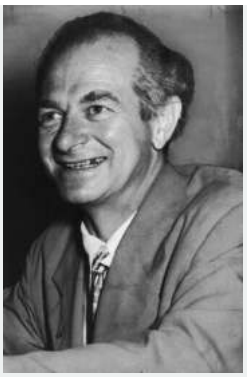
Answer d:

The EN difference is greater than 1.8, hence ionic.

Looking Closer: Linus Pauling

Arguably the most influential chemist of the 20th century, Linus Pauling (1901–94) is the only person to have won two individual (that is, unshared) Nobel Prizes. In the 1930s, Pauling used new mathematical theories to enunciate some fundamental principles of the chemical bond. His 1939 book *The Nature of the Chemical Bond* is one of the most significant books ever published in chemistry.

By 1935, Pauling's interest turned to biological molecules, and he was awarded the 1954 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his work on protein structure. (He was very close to discovering the double helix structure of DNA when James Watson and James Crick announced their own discovery of its structure in 1953.) He was later awarded the 1962 Nobel Peace Prize for his efforts to ban the testing of nuclear weapons.



Linus Pauling was one of the most influential chemists of the 20th century.

In his later years, Pauling became convinced that large doses of vitamin C would prevent disease, including the common cold. Most clinical research failed to show a connection, but Pauling continued to take large doses daily. He died in 1994, having spent a lifetime establishing a scientific legacy that few will ever equal.

9.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.4: Bond Polarity and Electronegativity** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

9.3: Polar Molecules

Learning Objectives

- Recognize bond characteristics of covalent compounds: bond length and bond polarity.
- Use electronegativity values to predict bond polarity.

If there is only one bond in the molecule, the bond polarity determines the *molecular polarity*. Any diatomic molecule in which the two atoms are the same element must be a nonpolar molecule. A diatomic molecule that consists of a polar covalent bond, such as HF, is a polar molecule where one end of the molecule is slightly positive, while the other end is slightly negative. The two electrically charged regions on either end of the molecule are called poles, similar to a magnet having a north and a south pole. Hence, a molecule with two poles has a **dipole moment**.

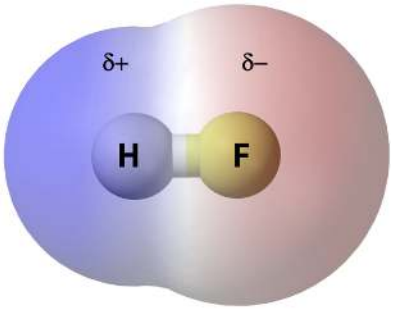


Figure 9.3.1: A molecular dipole results from the unequal distribution of electron density throughout a molecule. The H, with less electron density is partially positive and the F, with more electron density is partially negative. (Figure modified from: Wikipedia [en.Wikipedia.org])

For molecules with more than two atoms, the molecular geometry must also be taken into account when determining if the molecule is polar or nonpolar. The figure below shows a comparison between carbon dioxide and water.

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) is a linear molecule with carbon in the center and two oxygens at the terminal ends. The oxygen atoms are more electronegative than the carbon atom, so there are two individual dipoles pointing outward from the C atom to each O atom. However, since the dipoles are of equal strength and pointing in opposite directions, they *cancel out* and the overall molecular polarity of CO_2 is zero (no net dipole), therefore CO_2 is a *nonpolar molecule*.

Water has a bent molecular structure because it has four electron groups, two bonded groups and two lone electron groups on the central oxygen atom. The individual O–H bond dipoles point from the slightly positive H atoms toward the more electronegative O atom. Because of the bent shape, the dipoles, which are equal in strength, both point towards the oxygen atom and will not cancel each other out, therefore, the water molecule is polar. In the figure below, you can see that the oxygen end of the molecule is slightly negative and the hydrogen side is slightly positive, there is a separation of charge throughout the whole molecule, a **net dipole** (shown in blue) that points upward.

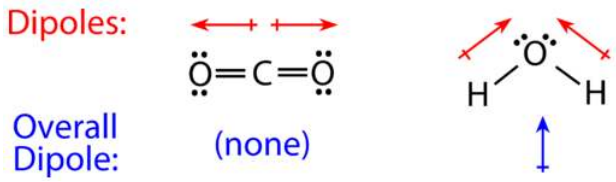


Figure 9.3.2: The molecular geometry of a molecule affects its polarity. Each CO bond has a dipole moment, but they point in opposite directions so that the net CO_2 molecule is nonpolar. In contrast, water is polar because the OH bond dipole moments do not cancel out. There is a net separation of charge or overall dipole moment.

Some other molecules are shown in the figure below. Notice that a tetrahedral molecule such as CH_4 is nonpolar. However, if one of the peripheral H atoms is replaced with another atom that has a different electronegativity, the molecule becomes polar. A trigonal planar molecule (BF_3) may be nonpolar if all three peripheral atoms are the same, but a trigonal pyramidal molecule (NH_3) is polar.

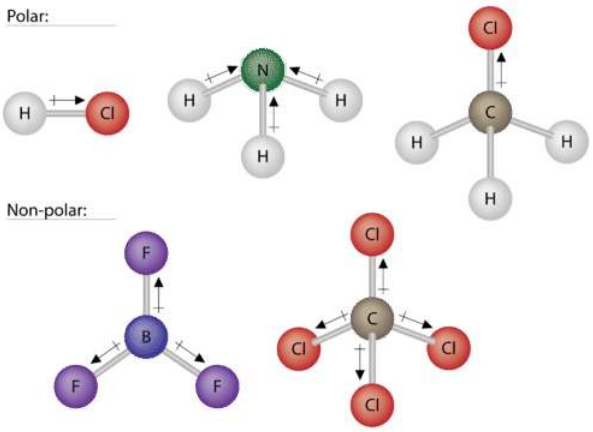


Figure 9.3.3: Some examples of polar and nonpolar molecules based on molecular geometry.

To summarize, to be polar, a molecule must:

1. Contain at least one polar covalent bond.
2. Have a molecular structure such that the sum of the vectors of each bond dipole moment do not cancel.

Steps to Identify Polar Molecules

1. Draw the Lewis structure.
2. Figure out the geometry (using VSEPR theory).
3. Visualize or draw the geometry.
4. Find the net dipole moment (you don't have to actually do calculations if you can visualize it).
5. If the net dipole moment is zero, it is non-polar. Otherwise, it is polar.

Properties of Polar Molecules

Polar molecules tend to align when placed in an electric field with the positive end of the molecule oriented toward the negative plate and the negative end toward the positive plate (Figure 9.3.4). We can use an electrically charged object to attract polar molecules, but nonpolar molecules are not attracted. Also, polar solvents are better at dissolving polar substances, and nonpolar solvents are better at dissolving nonpolar substances.

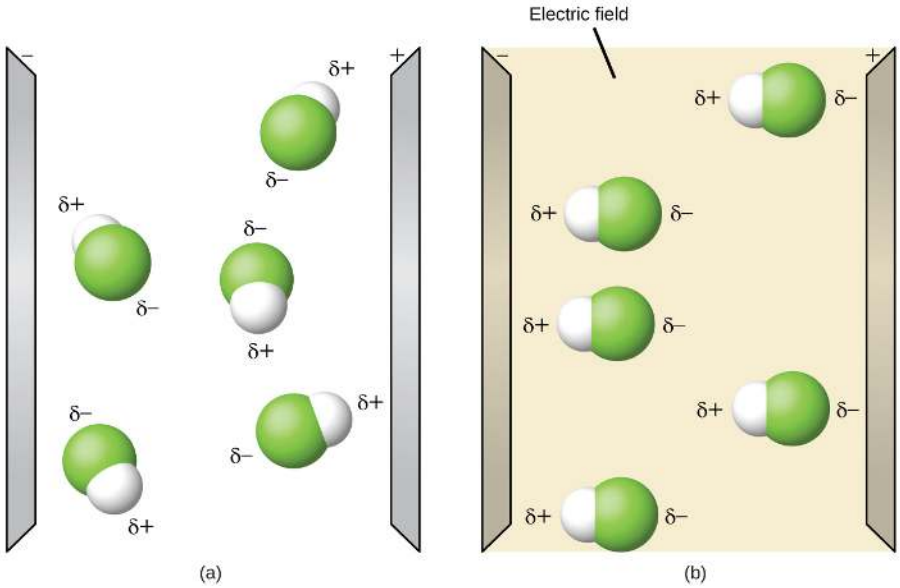


Figure 9.3.4: (a) Molecules are always randomly distributed in the liquid state in the absence of an electric field. (b) When an electric field is applied, polar molecules like HF will align to the dipoles with the field direction. (OpenStax CC-BY-SA);

While molecules can be described as "polar covalent" or "ionic", it must be noted that this is often a relative term, with one molecule simply being *more polar* or *less polar* than another. However, the following properties are typical of such molecules. Polar molecules tend to:

- have higher melting points than nonpolar molecules
- have higher boiling points than nonpolar molecules
- be more soluble in water (dissolve better) than nonpolar molecules
- have lower vapor pressures than nonpolar molecules

Example 9.3.1: Polarity Simulations

Open the molecule polarity simulation (above) and select the “Three Atoms” tab at the top. This should display a molecule ABC with three electronegativity adjustors. You can display or hide the bond moments, molecular dipoles, and partial charges at the right. Turning on the Electric Field will show whether the molecule moves when exposed to a field.

Use the electronegativity controls to determine how the molecular dipole will look for the starting bent molecule if:

a. A and C are very electronegative and B is in the middle of the range.
b. A is very electronegative, and B and C are not.

Solution

a. Molecular dipole moment points immediately between A and C.
b. Molecular dipole moment points along the A–B bond, toward A.

Exercise 9.3.1

Determine the partial charges that will give the largest possible bond dipoles.

Answer

The largest bond moments will occur with the largest partial charges. The two solutions above represent how unevenly the electrons are shared in the bond. The bond moments will be maximized when the electronegativity difference is greatest. The controls for A and C should be set to one extreme, and B should be set to the opposite extreme. Although the magnitude of the bond moment will not change based on whether B is the most electronegative or the least, the direction of the bond moment will.

9.3: Polar Molecules is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.8: Electronegativity and Polarity - Why Oil and Water Do not Mix** by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.
- **7.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.4: Intermolecular Forces

Learning Objective

- Identify the different types of intermolecular forces.
- Relate the physical properties of a substance to the strength of attractive forces.

Why does a substance exist as a solid, liquid, or a gas at specific temperatures? Why do some substances evaporate quickly or melt more easily? These questions can be answered by considering the balance between the energy of the particles and **intermolecular forces** (or intermolecular interactions) between the particles. If the forces between particles are strong enough, the substance is a liquid or, if stronger, a solid. If the forces between particles are weak and sufficient energy is present, the particles separate from each other, so the gas phase is the preferred phase. The energy of the particles is mostly determined by temperature, so temperature is the main variable that determines what phase is stable at any given point.

There are three types of intermolecular forces: *London Dispersion, dipole-dipole, and hydrogen bonding*, collectively termed van der Waals forces, that will be introduced below.

London Dispersion Forces

There are forces between all molecules that are caused by electrons being in different places in a molecule at any one time, which sets up a temporary separation of charge (a temporary dipole moment) that disappears almost as soon as it appears. These very weak intermolecular interactions are called **dispersion forces** (or **London dispersion forces**, named for the physicist Fritz London, who first described this force in the early 1900s).

Dispersion forces that develop between atoms in different molecules can attract the two molecules to each other. The forces are relatively weak, however, and become significant only when the molecules are very close. **Larger and heavier atoms and molecules** exhibit **stronger dispersion forces** than do smaller and lighter atoms and molecules. F_2 and Cl_2 are gases at room temperature (reflecting weaker attractive forces); Br_2 is a liquid, and I_2 is a solid (reflecting stronger attractive forces). Trends in observed melting and boiling points for the halogens clearly demonstrate this effect, as seen in Table 9.4.1.

Table 9.4.1: **Melting and Boiling Points of the Halogens**

Halogen	Molar Mass	Atomic Radius	Melting Point	Boiling Point
fluorine, F_2	38 g/mol	72 pm	53 K	85 K
chlorine, Cl_2	71 g/mol	99 pm	172 K	238 K
bromine, Br_2	160 g/mol	114 pm	266 K	332 K
iodine, I_2	254 g/mol	133 pm	387 K	457 K
astatine, At_2	420 g/mol	150 pm	575 K	610 K

The increase in melting and boiling points with increasing atomic/molecular size may be rationalized by considering how the strength of dispersion forces is affected by the electronic structure of the atoms or molecules in the substance. In a larger atom, the valence electrons are, on average, farther from the nuclei than in a smaller atom. Thus, they are less tightly held and can more easily form the temporary dipoles that produce the attraction. The measure of how easy or difficult it is for another electrostatic charge (for example, a nearby ion or polar molecule) to distort a molecule's charge distribution (its electron cloud) is known as **polarizability**. A molecule that has a charge cloud that is easily distorted is said to be very polarizable and will have large dispersion forces; one with a charge cloud that is difficult to distort is not very polarizable and will have small dispersion forces.

Example 9.4.1

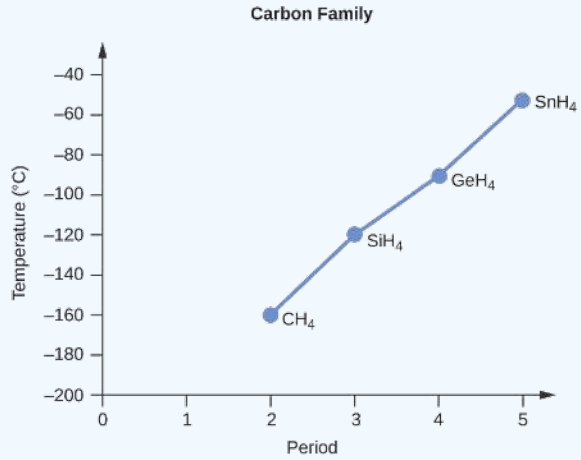
Order the following compounds of a group 14 element and hydrogen from lowest to highest boiling point: CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

Applying the skills acquired in the chapter on chemical bonding and molecular geometry, all of these compounds are predicted to be nonpolar, so they may experience only dispersion forces: the smaller the molecule, the less polarizable and the weaker the dispersion forces; the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces. The molar masses of CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4 are approximately 16 g/mol, 32 g/mol, 77 g/mol, and 123 g/mol, respectively. Therefore, CH_4 is expected to have the lowest boiling point and SnH_4 the highest boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is expected to be

$CH_4 < SiH_4 < GeH_4 < SnH_4$

A graph of the actual boiling points of these compounds versus the period of the group 14 elements shows this prediction to be correct:



Exercise 9.4.1

Order the following hydrocarbons from lowest to highest boiling point: C_2H_6, C_3H_8, and C_4H_{10}.

Answer

All of these compounds are nonpolar and only have London dispersion forces: the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces and the higher the boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is therefore

$$C_2H_6 < C_3H_8 < C_4H_{10}.$$

Dipole-Dipole Intermolecular Forces

Recall that a polar molecule will have a net unequal distribution of electrons in its covalent bonds resulting in a partial positive charge on one side of the molecule and a partial negative charge on the other side of the molecule—a separation of charge called a ***dipole***. The electrostatic attraction between oppositely charged ends of polar molecules are called **dipole-dipole interactions**, (as illustrated in Figure 9.4.1). Dipole-dipole attractions are between permanent dipoles and are therefore generally *stronger* than dispersion forces, which are between temporary dipoles. Thus, a polar molecule such as CH_2Cl_2 has a significantly higher boiling point (313 K, or 40°C) than a nonpolar molecule like CF_4 (145 K, or −128°C), even though it has a lower molar mass (85 g/mol vs. 88 g/mol).

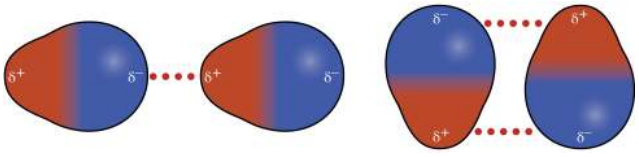


Figure 9.4.1: This image illustrates a dipole-dipole interaction, two arrangements of polar molecules that allow an attraction between the partial negative end of one molecule and the partial positive end of another.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/531662

Example 9.4.2

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: N_2 or CO. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

CO and N_2 are both diatomic molecules with masses of about 28 amu, so they experience similar London dispersion forces. Because CO is a polar molecule, it experiences dipole-dipole attractions. Because N_2 is nonpolar, its molecules cannot exhibit dipole-dipole attractions. The dipole-dipole attractions between CO molecules are comparably stronger than the dispersion forces between nonpolar N_2 molecules, so CO is expected to have the higher boiling point.

Exercise 9.4.2

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: ICl or Br_2. Explain your reasoning.

Answer

ICl. ICl and Br_2 have similar masses (~160 amu) and therefore experience similar London dispersion forces. ICl is polar and thus also exhibits dipole-dipole attractions; Br_2 is nonpolar and does not. The relatively stronger dipole-dipole attractions require more energy to overcome, so ICl will have the higher boiling point.

Hydrogen Bonds

An unusually strong form of dipole-dipole interaction is called **hydrogen bonding**. Hydrogen bonding is found in molecules with an H atom bonded to an N atom, an O atom, or an F atom. Such covalent bonds are very polar, and the dipole-dipole interaction between these bonds in two or more molecules is strong enough to create a new category of intermolecular force. Hydrogen bonding is the reason water has unusual properties. For such a small molecule (its molar mass is only 18 g/mol), H_2O has relatively high melting and boiling points. Its boiling point is 373 K (100°C), while the boiling point of a similar molecule, H_2S, is 233 K (−60°C). This is because H_2O molecules experience hydrogen bonding, while H_2S molecules do not. This strong attraction between H_2O molecules requires additional energy to separate the molecules in the condensed phase, so its boiling point is higher than would be expected. Hydrogen bonding is also responsible for water's ability as a solvent, its high heat capacity, and its ability to expand when freezing; the molecules line up in such a way that there is extra space between the molecules, increasing its volume in the solid state (Figure 9.4.2).

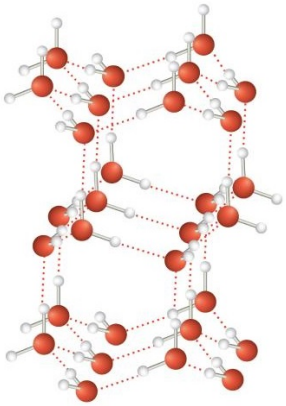


Figure 9.4.2: Hydrogen Bonding. When water solidifies, hydrogen bonding between the molecules forces the molecules to line up in a way that creates empty space between the molecules, increasing the overall volume of the solid. This is why ice is less dense than liquid water.

Despite use of the word “bond,” keep in mind that hydrogen bonds are *intermolecular* attractive forces, not *intramolecular* attractive forces (covalent bonds). Hydrogen bonds are much weaker than covalent bonds, but are generally much stronger than other dipole-dipole attractions and dispersion forces.

Hydrogen Bonding and DNA

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is found in every living organism and contains the genetic information that determines the organism's characteristics, provides the blueprint for making the proteins necessary for life, and serves as a template to pass this information on to the organism's offspring. A DNA molecule consists of two (anti-)parallel chains of repeating nucleotides, which form its well-known double helical structure, as shown in Figure 9.4.3.

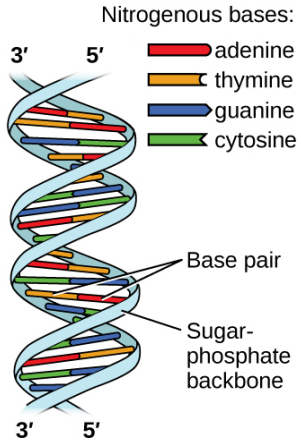


Figure 9.4.3: Two separate DNA molecules form a double-stranded helix in which the molecules are held together via hydrogen bonding. (credit: modification of work by Jerome Walker, Dennis Myts)

Each nucleotide contains a (deoxyribose) sugar bound to a phosphate group on one side, and one of four nitrogenous bases on the other. Two of the bases, cytosine (C) and thymine (T), are single-ringed structures known as pyrimidines. The other two, adenine (A) and guanine (G), are double-ringed structures called purines. These bases form complementary base pairs consisting of one purine and one pyrimidine, with adenine pairing with thymine, and cytosine with guanine. Each base pair is held together by hydrogen bonding. A and T share two hydrogen bonds, C and G share three, and both pairings have a similar shape and structure Figure 9.4.4

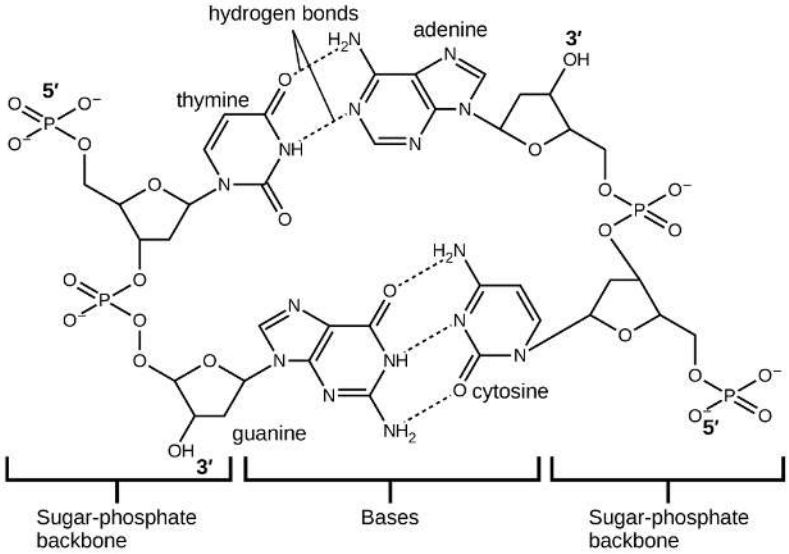


Figure 9.4.4: The geometries of the base molecules result in maximum hydrogen bonding between adenine and thymine (AT) and between guanine and cytosine (GC), so-called "complementary base pairs."

The cumulative effect of millions of hydrogen bonds effectively holds the two strands of DNA together. Importantly, the two strands of DNA can relatively easily "unzip" down the middle since hydrogen bonds are relatively weak compared to the covalent bonds that hold the atoms of the individual DNA molecules together. This allows both strands to function as a template for replication.

Applications: Geckos and Intermolecular Forces

Geckos have an amazing ability to adhere to most surfaces. They can quickly run up smooth walls and across ceilings that have no toe-holds, and they do this without having suction cups or a sticky substance on their toes. And while a gecko can lift its feet easily as it walks along a surface, if you attempt to pick it up, it sticks to the surface. How are geckos (as well as spiders and some other insects) able to do this? Although this phenomenon has been investigated for hundreds of years, scientists only recently uncovered the details of the process that allows geckos' feet to behave this way.

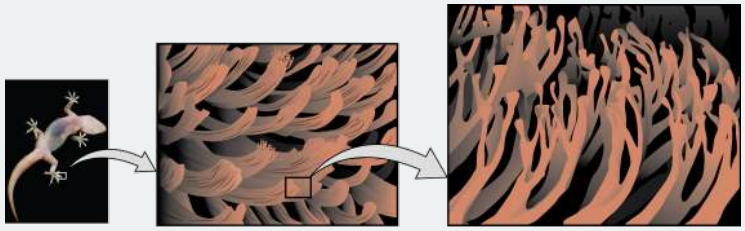


Figure 9.4.12: *Geckos' toes contain large numbers of tiny hairs (setae), which branch into many triangular tips (spatulae). Geckos adhere to surfaces because of van der Waals attractions between the surface and a gecko's millions of spatulae. By changing how the spatulae contact the surface, geckos can turn their stickiness "on" and "off." (credit photo: modification of work by "JC*+A!"/Flickr)*

Geckos' toes are covered with hundreds of thousands of tiny hairs known as *setae*, with each seta, in turn, branching into hundreds of tiny, flat, triangular tips called *spatulae*. The huge numbers of spatulae on its setae provide a gecko, shown in Figure 8.1.12, with a large total surface area for sticking to a surface. In 2000, Kellar Autumn, who leads a multi-institutional gecko research team, found that geckos adhered equally well to both polar silicon dioxide and nonpolar gallium arsenide. This proved that geckos stick to surfaces because of dispersion forces—weak intermolecular attractions arising from temporary, synchronized charge distributions between adjacent molecules. Although dispersion forces are very weak, the total attraction over millions of spatulae is large enough to support many times the gecko's weight.

In 2014, two scientists developed a model to explain how geckos can rapidly transition from "sticky" to "non-sticky." Alex Greaney and Congcong Hu at Oregon State University described how geckos can achieve this by changing the angle between their spatulae and the surface. Geckos' feet, which are normally nonsticky, become sticky when a small shear force is applied. By curling and uncurling their toes, geckos can alternate between sticking and unsticking from a surface, and thus easily move across it. Further investigations may eventually lead to the development of better adhesives and other applications.

Boiling Points and Bonding Types

In order for a substance to enter the gas phase, its particles must completely overcome the intermolecular forces holding them together. Therefore, a comparison of boiling points is essentially equivalent to comparing the strengths of the attractive intermolecular forces exhibited by the individual molecules. For small molecular compounds, London dispersion forces are the weakest intermolecular forces. Dipole-dipole forces are somewhat stronger, and hydrogen bonding is a particularly strong form of dipole-dipole interaction. However, when the mass of a nonpolar molecule is sufficiently large, its dispersion forces can be stronger than the dipole-dipole forces in a lighter polar molecule. Thus, nonpolar Cl_2 has a higher boiling point than polar HCl.

Table 9.4.3: Intermolecular Forces and Boiling Points

Substance	Strongest Intermolecular Force	Boiling Point (°C)
H_2	dispersion	-253
Ne	dispersion	-246
O_2	dispersion	-183
Cl_2	dispersion	-34
HCl	dipole-dipole	-85
HBr	dipole-dipole	-66
H_2S	dipole-dipole	-61

Substance	Strongest Intermolecular Force	Boiling Point (°C)
NH_3	hydrogen bonding	-33
HF	hydrogen bonding	20
H_2O	hydrogen bonding	100

Example 9.4.3

Consider the compounds dimethylether (CH_3OCH_3), ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH), and propane ($CH_3CH_2CH_3$). Their boiling points, not necessarily in order, are −42.1 °C, −24.8 °C, and 78.4 °C. Match each compound with its boiling point. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

The shapes of CH_3OCH_3, CH_3CH_2OH, and $CH_3CH_2CH_3$ are similar, as are their molar masses (46 g/mol, 46 g/mol, and 44 g/mol, respectively), so they will exhibit similar dispersion forces. Since $CH_3CH_2CH_3$ is nonpolar, it may exhibit *only* dispersion forces. Because CH_3OCH_3 is polar, it will also experience dipole-dipole attractions. Finally, CH_3CH_2OH has an −OH group, and so it will experience the uniquely strong dipole-dipole attraction known as hydrogen bonding. So the ordering in terms of strength of IMFs, and thus boiling points, is $CH_3CH_2CH_3 < CH_3OCH_3 < CH_3CH_2OH$. The boiling point of propane is −42.1 °C, the boiling point of dimethylether is −24.8 °C, and the boiling point of ethanol is 78.5 °C.

Exercise 9.4.3

Ethane (CH_3CH_3) has a melting point of −183 °C and a boiling point of −89 °C. Predict the melting and boiling points for methylamine (CH_3NH_2). Explain your reasoning.

Answer

The melting point and boiling point for methylamine are predicted to be significantly greater than those of ethane. CH_3CH_3 and CH_3NH_2 are similar in size and mass, but methylamine possesses an −NH group and therefore may exhibit hydrogen bonding. This greatly increases its IMFs, and therefore its melting and boiling points. It is difficult to predict values, but the known values are a melting point of −93 °C and a boiling point of −6 °C.

Example 9.4.4: Intermolecular Forces

What intermolecular forces besides dispersion forces, if any, exist in each substance? Are any of these substances solids at room temperature?

a. potassium chloride (KCl)
b. ethanol (C_2H_5OH)
c. bromine (Br_2)

Solution

a. Potassium chloride is composed of ions, so the intermolecular interaction in potassium chloride is ionic forces. Because ionic interactions are strong, it might be expected that potassium chloride is a solid at room temperature.
b. Ethanol has a hydrogen atom attached to an oxygen atom, so it would experience hydrogen bonding. If the hydrogen bonding is strong enough, ethanol might be a solid at room temperature, but it is difficult to know for certain. (Ethanol is actually a liquid at room temperature.)
c. Elemental bromine has two bromine atoms covalently bonded to each other. Because the atoms on either side of the covalent bond are the same, the electrons in the covalent bond are shared equally, and the bond is a nonpolar covalent bond. Thus, diatomic bromine does not have any intermolecular forces other than dispersion forces. It is unlikely to be a solid at room temperature unless the dispersion forces are strong enough. Bromine is a liquid at room temperature.

? Exercise 9.4.4

What intermolecular forces besides dispersion forces, if any, exist in each substance? Are any of these substances solids at room temperature?

a. methylamine (CH_3NH_2)
b. calcium sulfate ($CaSO_4$)
c. carbon monoxide (CO)

Answer

a. dipole-dipole, hydrogen bonding

b. ionic forces (solid at room temperature)

c. dipole-dipole

Concept Review Exercise

1. What types of intermolecular interactions can exist in compounds?

2. What is the difference between covalent network and covalent molecular compounds?

Answer

1. ionic bonding, network covalent, dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding.

2. Covalent network compounds contain atoms that are covalently bonded to other individual atoms in a giant 3-dimensional network. Covalent molecular compounds contain individual molecules that are attracted to one another through dispersion, dipole-dipole or hydrogen bonding.

Key Takeaways

- A phase is a form of matter that has the same physical properties throughout.
- Molecules interact with each other through various forces: dipole-dipole interactions, hydrogen bonding, and dispersion forces.
- Dipole-dipole attractions result from the electrostatic attraction of the partial negative end of one dipolar molecule for the partial positive end of another.
- Hydrogen bonds are a special type of dipole-dipole attraction that results when hydrogen is bonded to one of the three most electronegative elements: F, O, or N.
- The temporary dipole that results from the motion of the electrons in an atom can induce a dipole in an adjacent atom and give rise to the London dispersion force. London forces increase with increasing molecular size.

Exercises

1. List the three common phases in the order you are likely to find them—from lowest temperature to highest temperature.

2. List the three common phases in the order they exist from lowest energy to highest energy.

3. List these intermolecular interactions from weakest to strongest: London forces, hydrogen bonding, and ionic interactions.

4. List these intermolecular interactions from weakest to strongest: covalent network bonding, dipole-dipole interactions, and dispersion forces.

5. What type of intermolecular interaction is predominate in each substance?

   a. water (H_2O)
   b. sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4)
   c. decane ($C_{10}H_{22}$)

6. What type of intermolecular interaction is predominate in each substance?

   a. diamond (C, crystal)
   b. helium (He)
   c. ammonia (NH_3)

7. Explain how a molecule like carbon dioxide (CO_2) can have polar covalent bonds but be nonpolar overall.
8. Sulfur dioxide (SO_2) has a formula similar to that of carbon dioxide (see Exercise 7) but is a polar molecule overall. What can you conclude about the shape of the SO_2 molecule?
9. What are some of the physical properties of substances that experience covalent network bonding?
10. What are some of the physical properties of substances that experience only dispersion forces?

Answers

1. solid, liquid, and gas

2. solid, liquid, and gas

3. London forces, hydrogen bonding, and ionic interactions

4. dispersion, dipole-dipole, network covalent

5. a. hydrogen bonding
   b. ionic interactions
   c. dispersion forces

6. a. network covalent
b. dispersion
c. hydrogen bonding

7. The two covalent bonds are oriented in such a way that their dipoles cancel out.

8. SO_2 is not a linear molecule. It has a bent or V-shape.

9. very hard, high melting point

10. very soft, very low melting point

9.4: Intermolecular Forces is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.2: Intermolecular Forces** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Solutions

10.1: Prelude to Solutions
10.2: Definitions
10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration
10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations
10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors
10.6: Electrolytes
10.7: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes

This page titled 10: Solutions is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Muhammad Arif Malik.

10.1: Prelude to Solutions

More than 70% of the earth's surface is covered by a very important solution—seawater. It is likely that without seawater, no life would exist on Earth.

At its simplest, seawater is mostly H_2O. However, about 3.5% of seawater is dissolved solids—mostly NaCl—but other ions as well. Table 10.1.1 lists the percentage by mass of the various ions in seawater. Because it is highly likely that life on Earth originated in the oceans, it should not be surprising that many bodily fluids resemble seawater, especially blood. Table 10.1.1 also lists the percentage by mass of ions in a typical sample of blood.

Table 10.1.1: Percentage by Mass of Ions in Seawater and Blood

Ion	Percentage in Seawater	Percentage in Blood
Na^+	2.36	0.322
Cl^-	1.94	0.366
Mg^{2+}	0.13	0.002
SO_4^{2-}	0.09	-
K^+	0.04	0.016
Ca^{2+}	0.04	0.0096
HCO_3^-	0.002	0.165
HPO_4^{2-}, $H_2PO_4^-$	-	0.01

Most ions are more abundant in seawater than they are in blood, with some notable exceptions. There is far more hydrogen carbonate ion (HCO_3^-) in blood than in seawater; indeed, it is the third most common ion in blood. This difference is significant because the HCO_3^- ion and some related species [CO_3^{2-}, $CO_2(aq)$] have an important role in controlling the acid-base properties of blood. Although there is a negligible amount of the two hydrogen phosphate ions (HPO_4^{2-} and $H_2PO_4^-$) in seawater, there is a small amount in blood, where these ions affect acid-base properties. Another notable difference is that blood has a negligible amount of the sulfate ion (SO_4^{2-}), but this ion is present in seawater. Gold is present in seawater—but only a tiny amount. A current estimate of the amount of gold is about 1 part per every 1×10^{13} parts of seawater, which makes the extraction of gold from seawater unfeasible. However, it does mean that there are about 1.4×10^{14} g of gold in the world's oceans!



Figure 10.1.1: Gold in the Ocean. There are approximately 1.4×10^{14} g of gold in the oceans, but extracting it effectively is beyond current technologies. (CC SA-BY; Evgeni Dinev, Flickr.)

A solution is a *homogeneous mixture*: a mixture of two or more substances that are so intimately mixed that the mixture behaves in many ways like a single substance. Many chemical reactions occur when the reactants are dissolved in solution. In this chapter, we will introduce concepts that are applicable to solutions and the chemical reactions that occur in them.

This page titled 10.1: Prelude to Solutions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.1: Prelude to Solutions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

10.2: Definitions

Learning Objective

- Learn some terminology involving solutions.
- Recognize which terminology is qualitative and which terminology is quantitative.
- Explain why certain substances dissolve in other substances.

The major component of a solution is called the **solvent.** The minor component of a solution is called the **solute**. "Major" and "minor" indicate which component has the greater or lesser presence by mass or moles, respectively. Sometimes this becomes confusing, especially when considering substances with very different molar masses. We will confine the discussion here to solutions for which the major component and the minor component are obvious.

Solutions exist for every possible phase of the solute and the solvent. Salt water, for example, is a solution of solid NaCl in liquid water; soda water is a solution of gaseous CO_2 in liquid water, while air is a solution of a gaseous solute (O_2) in a gaseous solvent (N_2). In all cases, however, the overall phase of the solution is the same phase as the solvent.

Example 10.2.1: Sugar Water

A solution is made by dissolving 1.00 g of sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) in 100.0 g of liquid water. Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Solution

Either by mass or by moles, the obvious minor component is sucrose, so it is the solute. Water—the majority component—is the solvent. The fact that the resulting solution is the same phase as water also suggests that water is the solvent.

Exercise 10.2.1

A solution is made by dissolving 3.33 g of HCl(g) in 40.0 g of liquid methyl alcohol (CH_3OH). Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Answer

solute: HCl(g); solvent: CH_3OH

One important concept of solutions is in defining how much solute is dissolved in a given amount of solvent. This concept is called **concentration**. Various words are used to describe the relative amounts of solute. **Dilute** describes a solution that has very little solute, while **concentrated** describes a solution that has a lot of solute. One problem is that these terms are qualitative; they describe more or less but not exactly how much.

In most cases, only a certain maximum amount of solute can be dissolved in a given amount of solvent. This maximum amount is called the **solubility** of the solute. It is usually expressed in terms of the amount of solute that can dissolve in 100 g of the solvent at a given temperature. Table 10.2.1 lists the solubilities of some simple ionic compounds. These solubilities vary widely: NaCl can dissolve up to 31.6 g per 100 g of H_2O, while AgCl can dissolve only 0.00019 g per 100 g of H_2O.

Table 10.2.1: Solubilities of Some Ionic Compounds

Solute	Solubility (g per 100 g of H_2O at 25°C)
AgCl	0.00019
$CaCO_3$	0.0006
KBr	70.7
NaCl	36.1
$NaNO_3$	94.6

When the maximum amount of solute has been dissolved in a given amount of solvent, we say that the solution is **saturated** with solute. When less than the maximum amount of solute is dissolved in a given amount of solute, the solution is **unsaturated**. These terms are also qualitative terms because each solute has its own solubility. A solution of 0.00019 g of AgCl per 100 g of H_2O may be saturated, but with so little solute dissolved, it is also rather dilute. A solution of 36.1 g of NaCl in 100 g of H_2O is also saturated but rather concentrated. Ideally, we need more precise ways of specifying the amount of solute in a solution. We will introduce such ways in Section 11.3.

In some circumstances, it is possible to dissolve more than the maximum amount of a solute in a solution. Usually, this happens by heating the solvent, dissolving more solute than would normally dissolve at regular temperatures, and letting the solution cool down slowly and carefully. Such solutions are called **supersaturated** solutions and are not stable; given an opportunity (such as dropping a crystal of solute in the solution), the excess solute will precipitate from the solution.

It should be obvious that some solutes dissolve in certain solvents but not others. NaCl, for example, dissolves in water but not in vegetable oil. Beeswax dissolves in liquid hexane but not water. What is it that makes a solute soluble in some solvents but not others?

The answer is intermolecular interactions. The intermolecular interactions include London dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding (as described in Chapter 10). From experimental studies, it has been determined that if molecules of a solute experience the same intermolecular forces that the solvent does, the solute will likely dissolve in that solvent. So, NaCl—a very polar substance because it is composed of ions—dissolves in water, which is very polar, but not in oil, which is generally nonpolar. Nonpolar wax dissolves in nonpolar hexane but not in polar water. This concept leads to the general rule that "like dissolves like" for predicting whether a solute is soluble in a given solvent. However, this is a general rule, not an absolute statement, so it must be applied with care.

✔ Example 10.2.2: Polar and Nonpolar Solvents

Would I_2 be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Solution

I_2 is nonpolar. Of the two solvents, CCl_4 is nonpolar and H_2O is polar, so I_2 would be expected to be more soluble in CCl_4.

? Exercise 10.2.2

Would C_3H_7OH be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Answer

H_2O because both experience hydrogen bonding

Summary

- Solutions are composed of a solvent (major component) and a solute (minor component).
- Concentration is the expression of the amount of solute in a given amount of solvent and can be described by several qualitative terms.
- Solubility is a specific amount of solute that can dissolve in a given amount of solvent.
- "Like dissolves like" is a useful rule for deciding if a solute will be soluble in a solvent.

This page titled 10.2: Definitions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.2: Definitions** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration

Learning Objective

- Learn to determine specific concentrations with several common units.

Rather than qualitative terms (Section 11.2 - Definitions), we need quantitative ways to express the amount of solute in a solution; that is, we need specific units of concentration. In this section, we will introduce several common and useful units of concentration.

Molarity (M) is defined as the number of moles of solute divided by the number of liters of solution:

$$molarity = \frac{moles\ of\ solute}{liters\ of\ solution}$$

which can be simplified as

$$M = \frac{mol}{L},\ or\ mol/L$$

As with any mathematical equation, if you know any two quantities, you can calculate the third, unknown, quantity.

For example, suppose you have 0.500 L of solution that has 0.24 mol of NaOH dissolved in it. The concentration of the solution can be calculated as follows:

$$molarity = \frac{0.24\ mol\ NaOH}{0.500 L} = 0.48\ M\ NaOH$$

The concentration of the solution is 0.48 M, which is spoken as "zero point forty-eight molarity" or "zero point forty-eight molar." If the quantity of the solute is given in mass units, you must convert mass units to mole units before using the definition of molarity to calculate concentration. For example, what is the molar concentration of a solution of 22.4 g of HCl dissolved in 1.56 L? First, convert the mass of solute to moles using the molar mass of HCl (36.5 g/mol):

$$22.4\ g\cancel{HCl} \times \frac{1\ mol\ Hcl}{36.5\ g\cancel{HCl}} = 0.614\ M\ HCl$$

Now we can use the definition of molarity to determine a concentration:

$$M = \frac{0.614\ mol\ HCl}{1.56 L} = 0.394\ M$$

Example 10.3.1

What is the molarity of a solution made when 32.7 g of NaOH are dissolved to make 445 mL of solution?

Solution

To use the definition of molarity, both quantities must be converted to the proper units. First, convert the volume units from milliliters to liters:

$$445\ m\cancel{L} \times \frac{1\ L}{1000\ m\cancel{L}} = 0.445\ L$$

Now we convert the amount of solute to moles, using the molar mass of NaOH, which is 40.0 g/mol:

$$32.7\ g\cancel{NaOH} \times \frac{1\ mol\ NaOH}{40.0\ g\cancel{NaOH}} = 0.818\ mol\ NaOH$$

Now we can use the definition of molarity to determine the molar concentration:

$$M = \frac{0.818\ mol\ NaOH}{0.445 L} = 1.84\ M\ NaOH$$

? Exercise 10.3.1

What is the molarity of a solution made when 66.2 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ are dissolved to make 235 mL of solution?

Answer

1.57 M

The definition of molarity can be used to determine the amount of solute or the volume of solution, if the other information is given. Example 4 illustrates this situation.

✓ Example 10.3.2

How many moles of solute are present in 0.108 L of a 0.887 M NaCl solution?

Solution

We know the volume and the molarity; we can use the definition of molarity to mathematically solve for the amount in moles. Substituting the quantities into the definition of molarity:

$$0.887\ M\ =\ \frac{mol\ NaCl}{0.108 L}$$

We multiply the 0.108 L over to the other side of the equation and multiply the units together; "molarity × liters" equals moles, according to the definition of molarity. So

mol NaCl = (0.887 M)(0.108 L) = 0.0958 mol

? Exercise 10.3.2

How many moles of solute are present in 225 mL of a 1.44 M $CaCl_2$ solution?

Answer

0.324 mol

If you need to determine volume, remember the rule that the unknown quantity must be by itself and in the numerator to determine the correct answer. Thus, rearrangement of the definition of molarity is required.

✓ Example 10.3.3

What volume of a 2.33 M $NaNO_3$ solution is needed to obtain 0.222 mol of solute?

Solution

Using the definition of molarity, we have

$$2.33\ M\ =\ \frac{0.222 mol}{L}$$

To solve for the number of liters, we bring the 2.33 M over to the right into the denominator, and the number of liters over to the left in the numerator. We now have

$$L\ =\ \frac{0.222 mol}{2.33\ M}$$

Dividing, **the volume is 0.0953 L = 95.3 mL.**

Exercise 10.3.3

What volume of a 0.570 M K_2SO_4 solution is needed to obtain 0.872 mol of solute?

Answer

1.53 L

A similar unit of concentration is **molality** (*m*), which is defined as the number of moles of solute per kilogram of solvent, not per liter of solution:

$$molality = \frac{moles\ solute}{kilograms\ solvent}$$

Mathematical manipulation of molality is the same as with molarity.

Another way to specify an amount is **percentage composition by mass** (or *mass percentage*, % m/m). It is defined as follows:

$$\%m/m = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ entire\ sample} \times 100\%$$

It is not uncommon to see this unit used on commercial products (see Figure 10.3.1- Concentration in Commercial Applications).



Figure 10.3.1 Concentration in Commercial Applications © Thinkstock. *The percentage of urea in this package is 5% m/m, meaning that there are 5 g of urea per 100 g of product.*

Example 10.3.4

What is the mass percentage of Fe in a piece of metal with 87.9 g of Fe in a 113 g sample?

Solution

Using the definition of mass percentage, we have

$$\%m/m = \frac{87.9\ g\ Fe}{113\ g\ sample} \times 100\% = 77.8\%\ Fe$$

Exercise 10.3.4

What is the mass percentage of H_2O_2 in a solution with 1.67 g of H_2O_2 in a 55.5 g sample?

Answer

3.01%

Related concentration units are **parts per thousand (ppth), parts per million (ppm)** and **parts per billion (ppb).** Parts per thousand is defined as follows:

$$ppth = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ sample} \times 1000$$

There are similar definitions for parts per million and parts per billion:

$$ppm = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ sample} \times 1,000,000$$

and

$$ppb = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ sample} \times 1,000,000,000$$

Each unit is used for progressively lower and lower concentrations. The two masses must be expressed in the same unit of mass, so conversions may be necessary.

Example 10.3.5

If there are 0.6 g of Pb present in 277 g of solution, what is the Pb concentration in parts per thousand?

Solution

Use the definition of parts per thousand to determine the concentration. Substituting

$$\frac{0.6 g\ Pb}{277 g\ solution} \times 1000 = 2.17\ ppth$$

Exercise 10.3.5

If there are 0.551 mg of As in 348 g of solution, what is the As concentration in ppm?

Answer

1.58 ppm

As with molarity and molality, algebraic rearrangements may be necessary to answer certain questions.

Example 10.3.6

The concentration of Cl^- ion in a sample of H_2O is 15.0 ppm. What mass of Cl^- ion is present in 240.0 mL of H_2O, which has a density of 1.00 g/mL?

Solution

First, use the density of H_2O to determine the mass of the sample:

$$240.0\ \cancel{mL} \times \frac{1.00\ g}{\cancel{mL}} = 240.0\ g$$

Now we can use the definition of ppm:

$$15.0\,ppm = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{240.0\ g\ solution} \times 1,000,000$$

Rearranging to solve for the mass of solute,

$$mass\ solute = \frac{(15.0\,ppm)(240.0\ g\ solution)}{1,000,000} = 0.0036g = 3.6\,mg$$

? Exercise 10.3.6

The concentration of Fe^{3+} ion in a sample of H_2O is 335.0 ppm. What mass of Fe^{3+} ion is present in 3,450 mL of H_2O, which has a density of 1.00 g/mL?

Answer

1.16 g

For ionic solutions, we need to differentiate between the concentration of the salt versus the concentration of each individual ion. Because the ions in ionic compounds go their own way when a compound is dissolved in a solution, the resulting concentration of the ion may be different from the concentration of the complete salt. For example, if 1 M NaCl were prepared, the solution could also be described as a solution of 1 M Na^+(aq) and 1 M Cl^-(aq) because there is one Na^+ ion and one Cl^- ion per formula unit of the salt. However, if the solution were 1 M $CaCl_2$, there are two Cl^-(aq) ions for every formula unit dissolved, so the concentration of Cl^-(aq) would be 2 M, not 1 M.

In addition, the total ion concentration is the sum of the individual ion concentrations. Thus for the 1 M NaCl, the total ion concentration is 2 M; for the 1 M $CaCl_2$, the total ion concentration is 3 M.

Key Takeaway

- Quantitative units of concentration include molarity, molality, mass percentage, parts per thousand (ppth), parts per million (ppm), and parts per billion (ppb).

This page titled 10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations

Learning Objective

- Learn how to dilute and concentrate solutions.

Often, a worker will need to change the concentration of a solution by changing the amount of solvent. **Dilution** is the addition of solvent, which decreases the concentration of the solute in the solution. **Concentration** is the removal of solvent, which increases the concentration of the solute in the solution. (Do not confuse the two uses of the word *concentration* here!)

In both dilution and concentration, the amount of solute stays the same. This gives us a way to calculate what the new solution volume must be for the desired concentration of solute. From the definition of molarity,

$$\text{molarity} = \frac{\text{moles of solute}}{\text{liters of solution}}$$

we can solve for the number of moles of solute:

moles of solute = (molarity)(liters of solution)

A simpler way of writing this is to use M to represent molarity and V to represent volume. So the equation becomes

moles of solute = MV

Because this quantity does not change before and after the change in concentration, the product MV must be the same before and after the concentration change. Using numbers to represent the initial and final conditions, we have

$$M_1V_1 = M_2V_2$$

as the **dilution equation**. The volumes must be expressed in the same units. Note that this equation gives only the initial and final conditions, not the amount of the change. The amount of change is determined by subtraction.

Example 10.4.1

If 25.0 mL of a 2.19 M solution are diluted to 72.8 mL, what is the final concentration?

Solution

It does not matter which set of conditions is labeled 1 or 2, as long as the conditions are paired together properly. Using the dilution equation, we have

$$(2.19\text{ M})(25.0\text{ mL}) = M_2(72.8\text{ mL})$$

Solving for the second concentration (noting that the milliliter units cancel),

$$M_2 = 0.752\text{ M}$$

The concentration of the solution has decreased. In going from 25.0 mL to 72.8 mL, 72.8 − 25.0 = 47.8 mL of solvent must be added.

Exercise 10.4.1

A 0.885 M solution of KBr whose initial volume is 76.5 mL has more water added until its concentration is 0.500 M. What is the new volume of the solution?

Answer

135.4 mL

Concentrating solutions involves removing solvent. Usually this is done by evaporating or boiling, assuming that the heat of boiling does not affect the solute. The dilution equation is used in these circumstances as well.

Chemistry is Everywhere: Preparing IV Solutions

In a hospital emergency room, a physician orders an intravenous (IV) delivery of 100 mL of 0.5% KCl for a patient suffering from hypokalemia (low potassium levels). Does an aide run to a supply cabinet and take out an IV bag containing this concentration of KCl?

Not likely. It is more probable that the aide must make the proper solution from an IV bag of sterile solution and a more concentrated, sterile solution, called a *stock solution*, of KCl. The aide is expected to use a syringe to draw up some stock solution and inject it into the waiting IV bag and dilute it to the proper concentration. Thus the aide must perform a dilution calculation.



Figure 10.4.1 Preparing IV Solution © Thinkstock. Medical personnel commonly must perform dilutions for IV solutions.

If the stock solution is 10.0% KCl and the final volume and concentration need to be 100 mL and 0.50%, respectively, then it is easy to calculate how much stock solution to use:

$$(10\%)V_1 = (0.50\%)(100\text{ mL})V_1 = 5\text{ mL}$$

Of course, the addition of the stock solution affects the total volume of the diluted solution, but the final concentration is likely close enough even for medical purposes.

Medical and pharmaceutical personnel are constantly dealing with dosages that require concentration measurements and dilutions. It is an important responsibility: calculating the *wrong* dose can be useless, harmful, or even fatal!

Summary

- Molarity and volume are used to determine dilutions and concentrations of solutions.

This page titled 10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.4: Dilutions and Concentrations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors

Learning Objective

- Apply concentration units as conversion factors.

Concentration can be a conversion factor between the amount of solute and the amount of solution or solvent (depending on the definition of the concentration unit). As such, concentrations can be useful in a variety of stoichiometry problems. In many cases, it is best to use the original definition of the concentration unit; it is that definition that provides the conversion factor.

A simple example of using a concentration unit as a conversion factor is one in which we use the definition of the concentration unit and rearrange; we can do the calculation again as a unit conversion, rather than as a definition. For example, suppose we ask how many moles of solute are present in 0.108 L of a 0.887 M NaCl solution. Because 0.887 M means 0.887 mol/L, we can use this second expression for the concentration as a conversion factor:

$$0.108\ L\ \cancel{NaCl} \times \frac{0.887\ mol\ NaCl}{L\ \cancel{NaCl}} = 0.0958\ mol\ NaCl$$

(There is an understood 1 in the denominator of the conversion factor.) If we used the definition approach, we get the same answer, but now we are using conversion factor skills. Like any other conversion factor that relates two different types of units, the reciprocal of the concentration can be also used as a conversion factor.

Example 10.5.1

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 2.35 M $CuSO_4$ are needed to obtain 4.88 mol of $CuSO_4$?

Solution

This is a one-step conversion, but the concentration must be written as the reciprocal for the units to work out:

$$4.88\ mol\ \cancel{CuSO_4} \times \frac{1\ L}{2.35\ \cancel{mol}} = 2.08\ L\ of\ solution$$

Exercise 10.5.1

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 0.0444 M CH_2O are needed to obtain 0.0773 mol of CH_2O?

Answer:

1.74 L

Of course, once quantities in moles are available, another conversion can give the mass of the substance, using molar mass as a conversion factor.

Example 10.5.2

What mass of solute is present in 0.765 L of 1.93 M NaOH?

Solution

This is a two-step conversion, first using concentration as a conversion factor to determine the number of moles and then the molar mass of NaOH (40.0 g/mol) to convert to mass:

$$0.765\ \cancel{L} \times \frac{1.93\ mol\ \cancel{NaOH}}{L\ \cancel{solution}} \times \frac{40.0g\ NaOH}{1\ mol\ \cancel{NaOH}} = 59.1\ g\ NaOH$$

Exercise 10.5.2

What mass of solute is present in 1.08 L of 0.0578 M H_2SO_4?

Answer

6.12 g

More complex stoichiometry problems using balanced chemical reactions can also use concentrations as conversion factors. For example, suppose the following equation represents a chemical reaction:

$$2\,AgNO_3(aq) + CaCl_2(aq) \rightarrow 2\,AgCl(s) + Ca(NO_3)_2(aq)$$

If we wanted to know what volume of 0.555 M $CaCl_2$ would react with 1.25 mol of $AgNO_3$, we first use the balanced chemical equation to determine the number of moles of $CaCl_2$ that would react and then use concentration to convert to liters of solution:

$$1.25\ mol\ \cancel{AgNO_3} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{CaCl_2}}{2\ mol\ \cancel{AgNO_3}} \times \frac{1L\ solution}{0.555\ mol\ \cancel{CaCl_2}} = 1.13\ L\ CaCl_2$$

This can be extended by starting with the mass of one reactant, instead of moles of a reactant.

Example 10.5.3

What volume of 0.0995 M Al(NO3)3 will react with 3.66 g of Ag according to the following chemical equation?

$$3\,Ag(s) + Al(NO_3)_3(aq) \rightarrow 3\,AgNO_3 + Al(s)$$

Solution

Here, we first must convert the mass of Ag to moles before using the balanced chemical equation and then the definition of molarity as a conversion factor:

$$3.66\ g\ \cancel{Ag} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Ag}}{107.97\ g\ \cancel{Ag}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Al(NO_3)_3}}{3\ mol\ \cancel{Ag}} \times \frac{1L\ solution}{0.0995\ mol\ \cancel{Al(NO_3)_3}} = 0.114\ L$$

The strikeouts show how the units cancel.

Exercise 10.5.3

What volume of 0.512 M NaOH will react with 17.9 g of $H_2C_2O_4(s)$ according to the following chemical equation?

$$H_2C_2O_4(s) + 2\,NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Na_2C_2O_4(aq) + 2\,H_2O(\ell)$$

Answer:

0.777 L

We can extend our skills even further by recognizing that we can relate quantities of one solution to quantities of another solution. Knowing the volume and concentration of a solution containing one reactant, we can determine how much of another solution of another reactant will be needed using the balanced chemical equation.

Example 10.5.4

A student takes a precisely measured sample, called an *aliquot*, of 10.00 mL of a solution of FeCl3. The student carefully adds 0.1074 M $Na_2C_2O_4$ until all the Fe^{3+}(aq) has precipitated as $Fe_2(C_2O_4)_3$(s). Using a precisely measured tube called a burette, the student finds that 9.04 mL of the $Na_2C_2O_4$ solution was added to completely precipitate the Fe^{3+}(aq). What was the concentration of the FeCl3 in the original solution? (A precisely measured experiment like this, which is meant to determine the amount of a substance in a sample, is called a *titration*.) The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$2\,\mathrm{FeCl_3(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{Na_2C_2O_4(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2(C_2O_4)_3(s)} + 6\,\mathrm{NaCl(aq)}$$

Solution

First we need to determine the number of moles of $Na_2C_2O_4$ that reacted. We will convert the volume to liters and then use the concentration of the solution as a conversion factor:

$$9.04\ \cancel{mL} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{L}}{1000\ \cancel{mL}} \times \frac{0.1074 mol\ Na_2C_2O_4}{\cancel{L}} = 0.000971\ mol\ Na_2C_2O_4$$

Now we will use the balanced chemical equation to determine the number of moles of Fe^{3+}(aq) that were present in the initial aliquot:

$$0.000971\ mol\ \cancel{Na_2C_2O_4} \times \frac{2 mol\ FeCl_3}{3\ mol \cancel{Na_2C_2O_4}} = 0.000647 mol\ FeCl_3$$

Then we determine the concentration of $FeCl_3$ in the original solution. Converting 10.00 mL into liters (0.01000 L), we use the definition of molarity directly:

$$M = \frac{mol}{L} = \frac{0.000647 mol\ FeCl_3}{0.01000 L} = 0.0647 M\ FeCl_3$$

Exercise 10.5.4

A student titrates 25.00 mL of H_3PO_4 with 0.0987 M KOH. She uses 54.06 mL to complete the chemical reaction. What is the concentration of H_3PO_4?

$$\mathrm{H_3PO_4(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{KOH(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{K_3PO_4(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}$$

Answer:

0.0711 M



Figure 10.5.1 Titration © Thinkstock. When a student performs a titration, a measured amount of one solution is added to another reactant.

We have used molarity exclusively as the concentration of interest, but that will not always be the case. The next example shows a different concentration unit being used.

Example 10.5.5

H_2O_2 is used to determine the amount of Mn according to this balanced chemical equation:

$$2\,MnO_4^-(aq) + 5\,H_2O_2(aq) + 6\,H^+(aq) \rightarrow 2\,Mn_2^+(aq) + 5\,O_2(g) + 8\,H_2O(\ell)$$

What mass of 3.00% m/m H_2O_2 solution is needed to react with 0.355 mol of MnO_4^-(aq)?

Solution

Because we are given an initial amount in moles, all we need to do is use the balanced chemical equation to determine the number of moles of H_2O_2 and then convert to find the mass of H_2O_2. Knowing that the H_2O_2 solution is 3.00% by mass, we can determine the mass of solution needed:

$$0.355\ mol\ \cancel{MnO_4^-} \times \frac{5\ mol\ \cancel{H_2O_2}}{2\ mol\cancel{MnO_4^-}} \times \frac{34.02\ g\ \cancel{H_2O_2}}{mol\ \cancel{H_2O_2}} \times \frac{100g\ solution}{3\ g\ \cancel{H_2O_2}} = 1006g\ sol$$

The first conversion factor comes from the balanced chemical equation, the second conversion factor is the molar mass of H_2O_2, and the third conversion factor comes from the definition of percentage concentration by mass.

Exercise 10.5.5

Use the balanced chemical reaction for MnO_4^- and H_2O_2 to determine what mass of O_2 is produced if 258 g of 3.00% m/m H_2O_2 is reacted with MnO_4^-.

Answer

7.28 g

Summary

Know how to apply concentration units as conversion factors.

This page titled 10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

10.6: Electrolytes

What is an electrolyte?

Electric current is defined as the movement of electric charges. The substances through which an electric current can flow are called electrical conductors, and the others are electrical nonconductors. Metals are electrical conductors because valence electrons of metal atoms can move around in a piece of metal. Ionic compounds are composed of cations and anions, but the ions in a solid can not move around. Therefore, solid ionic compounds are electrical nonconductors. Pure water does not have a sufficient concentration of ions in it and is an electrical nonconductor. The ionic compounds dissociate into ions when dissolved in water. The solution of ionic compounds in water is an electrical conductor because the ions can move around in the solution, as illustrated in Fig. 5.3.1.

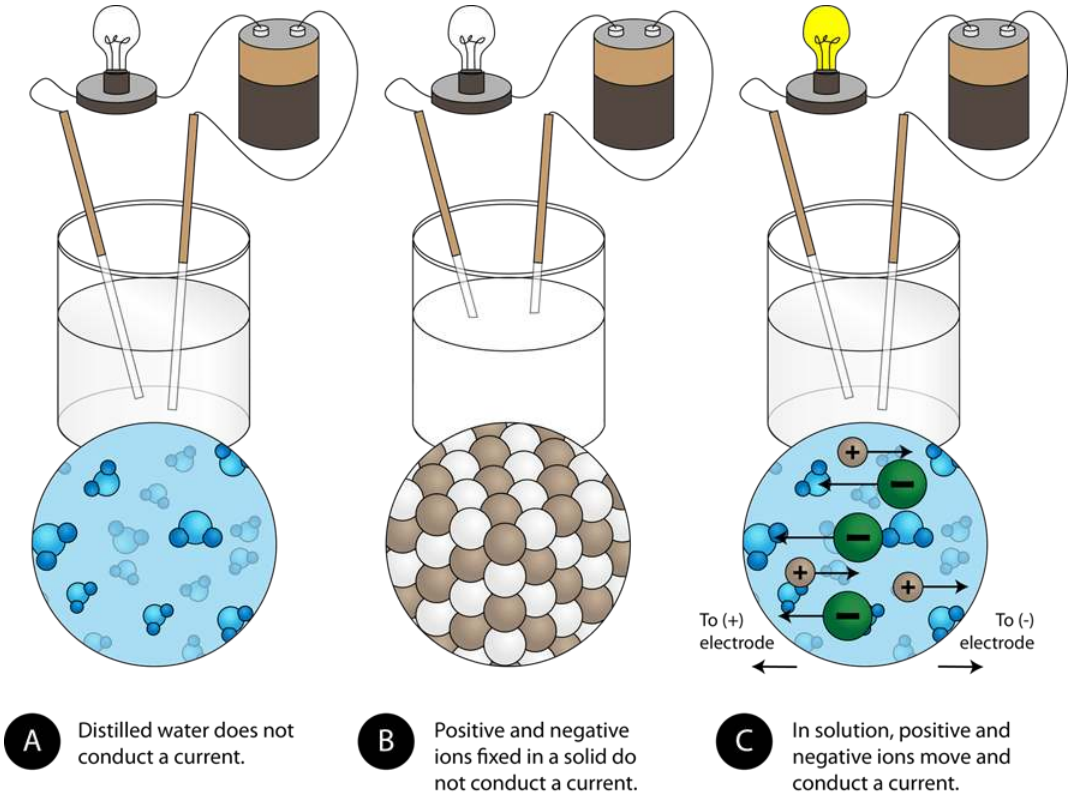


Figure 10.6.1: Pure water (A) and solid ionic compounds (B) are electrical noncondutors, but the solution of ionic compounds in water is an electrical conductor. Source: https://www.hiclipart.com/free-trans...cmeih/download

> Substances that produce electrically conducting solution when dissolved in water (or in another polar solvent) are called **electrolytes**.

All ionic compounds, acids, and bases produce ions in water and are classified are electrolytes.

> Substances that produce an electrically nonconducting solution when dissolved in water are called **nonelectrolytes**.

Molecular compounds other than acids and bases, such as methanol, acetone, sugar, and glucose, remain neutral molecules when dissolved in water. The molecular solutes, other than acids and bases, are nonelectrolytes.

Strong and weak electrolytes

> Substances that almost 100% dissociate into ions when dissolved in water are **strong electrolytes**.
>
> 1. All ionic compounds that are soluble in water are strong electrolytes.
> 2. Strong acids are strong electrolytes.
> 3. Strong bases are ionic compounds and strong electrolytes.

A strong electrolyte does not mean that it is necessarily highly soluble in water. It means that the portion of the solute that dissolves, it also dissociates 100% into ions in water, e.g., all ionic compounds. The solubility $Ca(OH)_2$ is only 0.16 g $Ca(OH)_2$/100 g water at 20 ^oC, but all the dissolved $Ca(OH)_2$ dissociates into Ca^{2+} and OH^- ions.

Strong bases are hydroxides of alkali metals, i.e., LiOH, NaOH, KOH, RbOH, and CsOH, and hydroxides of heavy alkaline earth metals, i.e., $Ca(OH)_2$, $Sr(OH)_2$ and $Ba(OH)_2$, which are strong electrolytes. Strong acids, i.e., HCl, HBr, HI, $HClO_4$, HNO_3, and H_2SO_4, are molecular compounds but are strong electrolytes because they dissociate almost 100% into ions when dissolved in water. For example, HCl almost wholly dissociates into ions when dissolved in water.

$$HCl(g) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_3O^{1+}(aq) + Cl^{1-}(aq)$$

Substances that partially dissociate into ions when dissolved in water are **weak electrolytes**. Weak acids and weak bases are weak electrolytes.

Week acids and week bases, like acetic acid (CH_3COOH) and ammonia (NH_3), are soluble in water, but partially dissociate into ions. For example, if 1-mole acetic acid or 1-mole of ammonia is dissolved in 1 liter of water at room temperature, they establish the following equilibrium between dissolved molecules and dissociated ions:

$$CH_3COOH(l) \xrightarrow{\text{Water}} CH_3COOH(aq) + H_2O(l) \overset{\rightarrow}{\leftarrow} CH_3COO^{1-}(aq) + H_3O^{1+}(aq),$$
$$NH_3(g) \xrightarrow{\text{Water}} NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \overset{\rightarrow}{\leftarrow} NH_4{}^{1+}(aq) + OH^{1-}(aq),$$

where only about 0.4% of the dissolved molecules dissociate into ions, the remaining about 99.6% of molecules remain neutral. Weak acids and weak bases are weak electrolytes.

Fig. 5.3.2 illustrates the difference between nonelectrolytes, strong electrolytes, and weak electrolytes.

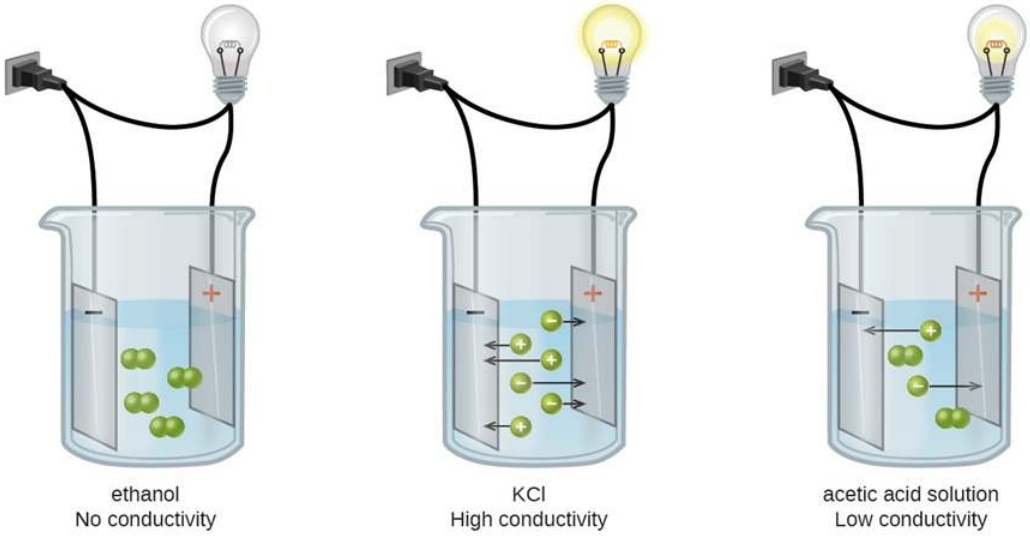


Figure 10.6.2 Illustration of a nonelectrolyte that does not conduct electricity, a strong electrolyte that has high electrical conductivity, and a weak electrolyte that has low electrical conductivity. Source: Karishma50/ (https;//creativecommons.org/licences/by-sa/4.0)

Equivalent

The amount of molecules and atoms is usually measured in moles. Ionic compounds are composed of ions but are overall neutral because the +ve charge is balanced by the –ve charge. Therefore, the mole ratio of cations to anions is not always one to one. For example, NaCl has a one-to-one mole ratio of Na^+ and Cl^-, but $CaCl_2$ has a one-to-two ratio of Ca^{2+} and Cl^-. A new unit, called equivalent (officially abbreviated as Equiv but commonly abbreviated as Eq), is introduced, to differentiate between a mole of ion and a mole of charge on the ion.

The *equivalent* is the amount of a substance needed to react with or supply one mole of hydrogen ions (H^+) in an acid-base reaction, or react with or supply one mole of electrons in a redox reaction. In other words, the number of equivalents of a given ion in a solution is equal to the number of moles of that ion multiplied by its valence.

$$1 \text{ mol } Na^+ = 1 \text{ Eq } Na^+, \text{ but } \quad 1 \text{ mol } Ca^{2+} = 2 \text{ Eq } Ca^{2+}, \text{ and } 1 \text{ mol } Al^{3+} = 3 \text{ Ea } Al^{3+}$$

Similarly,

$$1 \text{ mol } Cl^- = 1 \text{ Eq } Cl^-, \text{ but } \quad 1 \text{ mol } {CO_3}^{2-} = 2 \text{ Eq } {CO_3}^{2-} \text{ and } 1 \text{ mol } {PO_4}^{3-} = 3 \text{ Ea } {PO_4}^{3-}$$

The solutions of electrolytes are overall electrically neutral, i.e., the number of equivalents of cations is equal to the number of equivalents of anions in the solution.

For example, if 1 mole of NaCl is dissolved in water, there is 1 Eq of Na^+ ions and 1 Eq of Cl^- ions in the solution. If one mole of $CaCl_2$ is dissolved in the water there is 2 Eq of Ca^{2+} ions and 2 Eq of Cl^- ions in the solution. Similarly, if 1 mole of NaCl and 1 mole of $AlCl_3$ are dissolved in the water there is 1 Eq of Na^+ ions, 3 Eq of Al^{3+} ions, and 4 Eq of Cl^- ions to balance cations in the water.

Equality gives two conversion factors. For example, the equality 1 mol Ca^{2+} = 2 Eq Ca^{2+} gives the following two conversion factors:

$$\frac{1 \text{ mol } Ca^{2+}}{2 \text{ Eq } Ca^{2+}}$$

and

$$\frac{2 \text{ Ea } Ca^{2+}}{1 \text{ mol } Ca^{2+}}$$

The first conversion factor converts the given amount in equivalents to moles, and the second converts the given amount in moles to equivalents of the ion as explained in the following examples.

Example 10.6.1

a) Calculate mEq of Fe^{3+} in 0.0200 mol of Fe^{3+}? b) if chloride ion is the only anion in the solution, how many mEq of Cl^- are present in the solution?

Solution

a) Given 0.0200 mol Fe^{3+}. Desired mEq Fe^{3+}.

The equality: 1 mol Fe^{3+} = 3 Eq Fe^{3+} gives the conversion factor $\frac{3 \text{ Eq } Fe^{3+}}{1 \text{ mol } Fe^{3+}}$ that converts the given amount in moles to Eq of Fe^{3+}. Another equality: 1 Eq Fe^{3+} = 1000 mEq Fe^{3+} gives the conversion factor $\frac{1000 \text{ mEq } Fe^{3+}}{1 \text{ Eq } Fe^{3+}}$, that converts the Eq of Fe^{3+} to mEq of Fe^{3+}.

Calculations:

$$0.0200 \text{ mol } Fe^{3+} \times \frac{3 \text{ Eq } Fe^{3+}}{1 \text{ mol } Fe^{3+}} \times \frac{1000 \text{ mEq } Fe^{3+}}{1 \text{ Eq } Fe^{3+}} = 60 \text{ mEq } Fe^{3+}$$

Example 10.6.2

An intervenous saline solution contains 145 mEq/L of Na^+. How many moles of Na^+ are in 0.500 L of the solution?

Solution

a) Given: 145 mEq Na^+ /L solution and 0.500 L solution, Desired: ? mol Na^+

Conversion factors needed: The concentration in mEq/L is the first factor for L to mEq conversion, the equality 1 mEq Na^+ = 1 mmol Na^+ givens the second conversion needed for mEq to mmol conversion, and the equality 1000 mmol Na^+ = 1 mol Na^+

given the third conversion factor needed needed for mEq to mol conversion. The three conversion factors are applied one after the other in a single row in the following calculation:

$$0.500\ \cancel{\text{L solution}} \times \frac{145\ \cancel{\text{mEq Na}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{L solution}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mmol Na}^+}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mEq Na}^+}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Na}^+}{1000\ \cancel{\text{mmol Na}^+}} = 0.0725\ \text{mol Na}^+$$

Note how the units of the numerator in one fraction are canceled by the units of the denumerator of the following fraction leaving only the desired units uncancelled that become the units of the answer number.

Electrolytes in body fluids

Fig. 5.3.3 shows the electrolytes and their concentrations commonly found in body fluids. They play an essential role in cell and body functions. For example, sodium ions regulate the water content and play a role in electrical impulse transmission in the nervous system. Potassium ions play a role in maintaining a regular heartbeat and also play a part in electrical impulse transmission. Chloride ions are there to balance the charge. Carbonate ions are involved in maintaining the pH of the blood.

Concentrations of electrolytes in body fluids are not high enough to be reported in a mole or equivalent units. The electrolytes in the body fluids are usually reported in millimoles (mmol) or milliequivalent (mEq) units, where: $1000\ \text{mmol} = 1\ \text{mol}$ and $1000\ \text{mEq} = 1\ \text{Eq}$.

The overall concentration of electrolytes in intravenous fluids given to patients is about the same as of electrolytes in the body fluids. For example, Ringer's lactate solution contains about: 130 mEq/L Na^+, 4 mEq/L K^+, 3 mEq/L Ca^{2+}, 109 mEq/L Cl^-, and 28 mEq/L lactate$^-$. Note that the overall +ve charge (130+4+3= 137 mEq/L) is equal to the overall –ve charge (109+28 = 137 mEq/L).

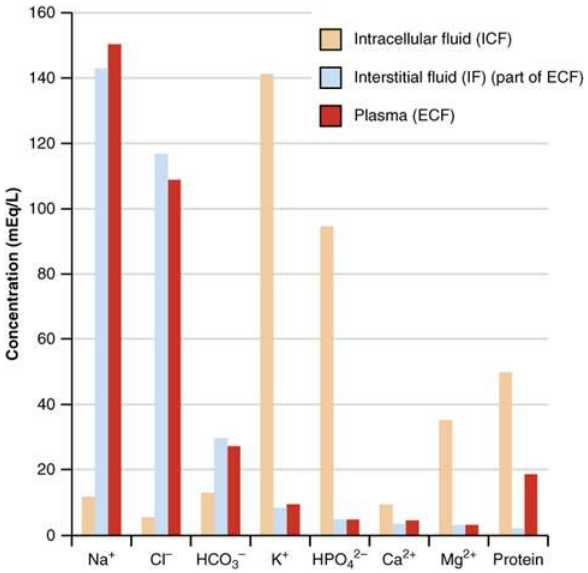


Figure 10.6.3: Concentrations of electrolytes in body fluids. Source: OpenStax College / CC BY (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)

This page titled 10.6: Electrolytes is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Muhammad Arif Malik.

- **5.3: Electrolytes** by Muhammad Arif Malik is licensed Public Domain.

10.7: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes

Learning Objectives

- Define solutes as strong electrolytes, weak electrolytes, or nonelectrolytes.
- Calculate equivalents for an ionic solute.

When some substances are dissolved in water, they undergo either a physical or a chemical change that yields ions in solution. These substances constitute an important class of compounds called electrolytes. Substances that do not yield ions when dissolved are called **nonelectrolytes**. If the physical or chemical process that generates the ions is essentially 100% efficient (all of the dissolved compound yields ions), then the substance is known as a **strong electrolyte**. If only a relatively small fraction of the dissolved substance undergoes the ion-producing process, it is called a **weak electrolyte**.

Substances may be identified as strong, weak, or nonelectrolytes by measuring the electrical conductance of an aqueous solution containing the substance. To conduct electricity, a substance must contain freely mobile, charged species. Most familiar is the conduction of electricity through metallic wires, in which case the mobile, charged entities are electrons. Solutions may also conduct electricity if they contain dissolved ions, with conductivity increasing as ion concentration increases. Applying a voltage to electrodes immersed in a solution permits assessment of the relative concentration of dissolved ions, either quantitatively, by measuring the electrical current flow, or qualitatively, by observing the brightness of a light bulb included in the circuit (Figure 10.7.1).

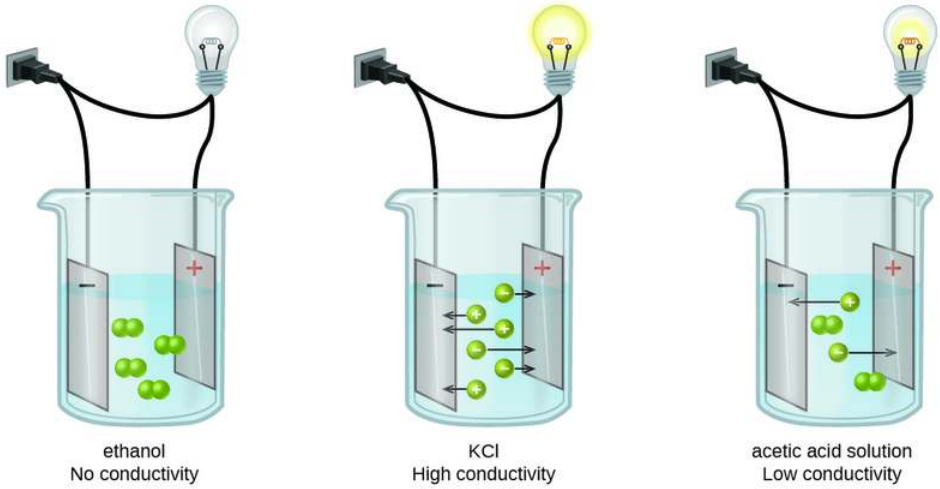


Figure 10.7.1: Solutions of nonelectrolytes such as ethanol do not contain dissolved ions and cannot conduct electricity. Solutions of electrolytes contain ions that permit the passage of electricity. The conductivity of an electrolyte solution is related to the strength of the electrolyte.

Ionic Electrolytes

Water and other polar molecules are attracted to ions, as shown in Figure 10.7.2 The electrostatic attraction between an ion and a molecule with a dipole is called an ion-dipole attraction. These attractions play an important role in the dissolution of ionic compounds in water.

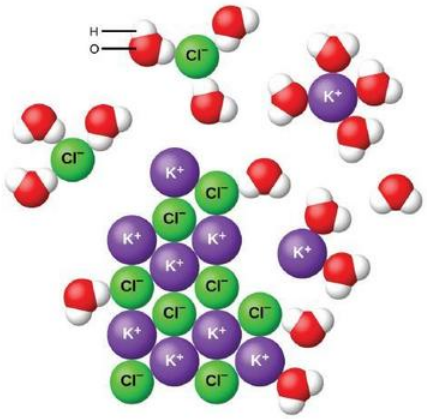


Figure 10.7.2: As potassium chloride (KCl) dissolves in water, the ions are hydrated. The polar water molecules are attracted by the charges on the K^+ and Cl^- ions. Water molecules in front of and behind the ions are not shown.

When ionic compounds dissolve in water, the ions in the solid separate and disperse uniformly throughout the solution because water molecules surround and solvate the ions, reducing the strong electrostatic forces between them. This process represents a physical change known as dissociation. Under most conditions, ionic compounds will dissociate nearly completely when dissolved, and so they are classified as strong electrolytes.

Let us consider what happens at the microscopic level when we add solid KCl to water. Ion-dipole forces attract the positive (hydrogen) end of the polar water molecules to the negative chloride ions at the surface of the solid, and they attract the negative (oxygen) ends to the positive potassium ions. The water molecules penetrate between individual K^+ and Cl^- ions and surround them, reducing the strong interionic forces that bind the ions together and letting them move off into solution as solvated ions, as Figure shows. The reduction of the electrostatic attraction permits the independent motion of each hydrated ion in a dilute solution, resulting in an increase in the disorder of the system as the ions change from their fixed and ordered positions in the crystal to mobile and much more disordered states in solution. This increased disorder is responsible for the dissolution of many ionic compounds, including KCl, which dissolve with absorption of heat.

In other cases, the electrostatic attractions between the ions in a crystal are so large, or the ion-dipole attractive forces between the ions and water molecules are so weak, that the increase in disorder cannot compensate for the energy required to separate the ions, and the crystal is insoluble. Such is the case for compounds such as calcium carbonate (limestone), calcium phosphate (the inorganic component of bone), and iron oxide (rust).

Covalent Electrolytes

Pure water is an extremely poor conductor of electricity because it is only very slightly ionized—only about two out of every 1 billion molecules ionize at 25 °C. Water ionizes when one molecule of water gives up a proton to another molecule of water, yielding hydronium and hydroxide ions.

$$H_2O(l)^+H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \tag{10.7.1}$$

In some cases, we find that solutions prepared from covalent compounds conduct electricity because the solute molecules react chemically with the solvent to produce ions. For example, pure hydrogen chloride is a gas consisting of covalent HCl molecules. This gas contains no ions. However, when we dissolve hydrogen chloride in water, we find that the solution is a very good conductor. The water molecules play an essential part in forming ions: Solutions of hydrogen chloride in many other solvents, such as benzene, do not conduct electricity and do not contain ions.

Hydrogen chloride is an *acid*, and so its molecules react with water, transferring H^+ ions to form hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and chloride ions (Cl^-):



This reaction is essentially 100% complete for HCl (i.e., it is a *strong acid* and, consequently, a strong electrolyte). Likewise, weak acids and bases that only react partially generate relatively low concentrations of ions when dissolved in water and are classified as weak electrolytes. Acids and bases will be explored further in a later chapter.

Equivalents

Concentrations of ionic solutes are occasionally expressed in units called equivalents (Eq). One equivalent equals 1 mol of positive or negative charge. Thus, 1 mol/L of $Na^+(aq)$ is also 1 Eq/L because sodium has a 1+ charge. A 1 mol/L solution of $Ca^{2+}(aq)$ ions has a concentration of 2 Eq/L because calcium has a 2+ charge. Dilute solutions may be expressed in milliequivalents (mEq)—for example, human blood plasma has a total concentration of about 150 mEq/L.

10.7: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.3: Electrolytes** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.
- **9.2: Concentration** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/introduction-to-chemistry-general-organic-and-biological.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: Acids and Bases

11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions
11.2: Acids and Bases
11.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases
11.4: Neutralization
11.5: The pH Scale
11.6: Buffers and Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs
11.7: Acids and Bases in Industry and in Daily Life

11: Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions

Learning Objectives

- Examine properties of acids and bases.

Many people enjoy drinking coffee. A cup first thing in the morning helps start the day. But keeping the coffee maker clean can be a problem. Lime deposits build up after a while and slow down the brewing process. The best cure for this is to put vinegar (dilute acetic acid) in the pot and run it through the brewing cycle. The vinegar dissolves the deposits and cleans the maker, which will speed up the brewing process back to its original rate. Just be sure to run water through the brewing process after the vinegar, or you will get some really horrible coffee.

Perhaps you have eaten too much pizza and felt very uncomfortable hours later. This feeling is due to excess stomach acid being produced. The discomfort can be dealt with by taking an antacid. The base in the antacid will react with the HCl in the stomach and neutralize it, taking care of that unpleasant feeling. Figure $11.1.1$ provides some examples of acids and bases.



Figure 11.1.1 Some examples of common household acids and bases.

Acids

Acids are very common in some of the foods that we eat. Citrus fruits such as oranges and lemons contain citric acid and ascorbic acid, which is better known as vitamin C. Carbonated sodas contain phosphoric acid. Vinegar contains acetic acid. Your own stomach utilizes hydrochloric acid to digest food. Acids are a distinct class of compounds because of the properties of their aqueous solutions as outlined below:

1. Aqueous solutions of acids are electrolytes, meaning that they conduct electrical current. Some acids are strong electrolytes because they ionize completely in water, yielding a great many ions. Other acids are weak electrolytes that exist primarily in a non-ionized form when dissolved in water.
2. Acids have a sour taste. Lemons, vinegar, and sour candies all contain acids.
3. Acids change the color of certain acid-base indicators. Two common indicators are litmus and phenolphthalein. Blue litmus turns red in the presence of an acid, while phenolphthalein turns colorless.
4. Acids react with active metals to yield hydrogen gas. Recall that an activity series is a list of metals in descending order of reactivity. Metals that are above hydrogen in the activity series will replace the hydrogen from an acid in a single-replacement reaction, as shown below:

$$\mathrm{Zn}\,(s) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{ZnSO_4}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(g) \tag{11.1.1}$$

5. Acids react with bases to produce a salt compound and water. When equal moles of an acid and a base are combined, the acid is neutralized by the base. The products of this reaction are an ionic compound, which is labeled as a salt, and water.

Common examples: Lemons, oranges, vinegar, urine, sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid

Bases

Bases have properties that mostly contrast with those of acids.

1. Aqueous solutions of bases are also electrolytes. Bases can be either strong or weak, just as acids can.
2. Bases often have a bitter taste and are found in foods less frequently than acids. Many bases, like soaps, are slippery to the touch.
3. Bases also change the color of indicators. Litmus turns blue in the presence of a base while phenolphthalein turns pink.
4. Bases do not react with metals in the way that acids do.
5. Bases react with acids to produce a salt and water.

Common Examples: Soap, toothpaste, bleach, cleaning agents, limewater, ammonia water, sodium hydroxide.



Figure 11.1.2 Phenolphthalein indicator in presence of base.

Warning

Tasting chemicals and touching them are NOT good lab practices and should be avoided - in other words, don't do this at home.

Summary

- A brief summary of properties of acids and bases are given.
- Properties of acids and bases mostly contrast each other.

Contributors and Attributions

-
- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.
- Wikipedia
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions is shared under a CC BY-NC license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions** is licensed CC BY-NC 4.0.

11.2: Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Identify an Arrhenius acid and an Arrhenius base.
- Identify a Brønsted-Lowry acid and a Brønsted-Lowry base.
- Write chemical reactions between an Arrhenius acid and an Arrhenius base and between Brønsted-Lowry acid and a Brønsted-Lowry base.

There are three major classifications of substances known as acids or bases. The Arrhenius definition states that an acid produces H^+ in solution and a base produces OH^-. This theory was developed by Svante Arrhenius in 1883. Later, two more sophisticated and general theories were proposed. These are the Brønsted-Lowry and the Lewis definitions of acids and bases. The Lewis theory is discussed elsewhere.

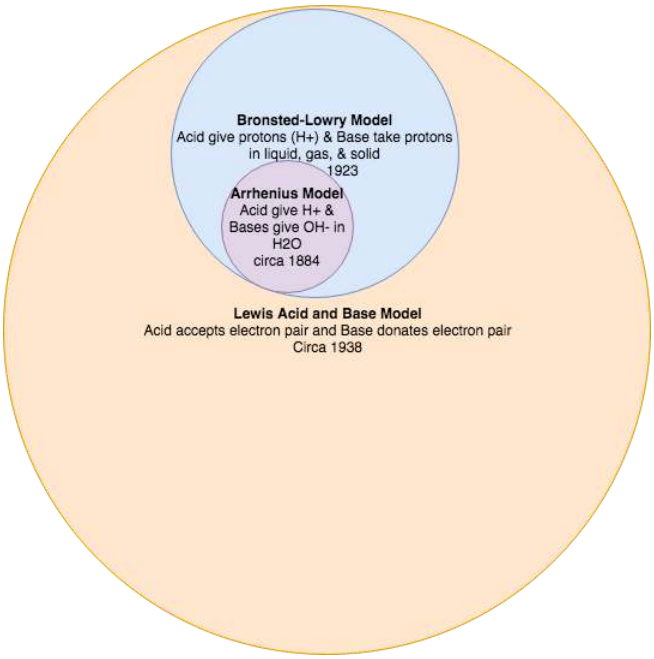


Figure 11.2.1 Acid base reaction theories as superset and subset models.

The Arrhenius Theory of Acids and Bases

In 1884, the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius proposed two specific classifications of compounds, termed acids and bases. When dissolved in an aqueous solution, certain ions were released into the solution. An **Arrhenius acid** is a compound that **increases the concentration of H^+ ions** that are present when added to water. These H^+ ions form the hydronium ion (H_3O^+) when they combine with water molecules. This process is represented in a chemical equation by adding H_2O to the reactants side.

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)}$$

In this reaction, hydrochloric acid (HCl) dissociates completely into hydrogen (H^+) and chlorine (Cl^-) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing H^+ ions into solution. Formation of the hydronium ion equation:

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)}$$

An **Arrhenius base** is a compound that **increases the concentration of OH^- ions** that are present when added to water. The dissociation is represented by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{NaOH\ (aq) \rightarrow Na^+\ (aq) + OH^-\ (aq)}$$

In this reaction, sodium hydroxide (NaOH) disassociates into sodium (Na^+) and hydroxide (OH^-) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing OH^- ions into solution.

> *Arrhenius acids are substances which produce hydrogen ions in solution and Arrhenius bases are substances which produce hydroxide ions in solution.*

Limitations to the Arrhenius Theory

The Arrhenius theory has many more limitations than the other two theories. The theory does not explain the weak base ammonia (NH_3), which in the presence of water, releases hydroxide ions into solution, but does not contain OH- itself. Also, the Arrhenius definition of acid and base is limited to aqueous (i.e., water) solutions.

The Brønsted-Lowry Theory of Acids and Bases

In 1923, Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and English chemist Thomas Lowry independently proposed new definitions for acids and bases, ones that focus on proton transfer. A **Brønsted-Lowry acid** is any species that can donate a proton (H^+) to another molecule. A **Brønsted-Lowry base** is any species that can accept a proton from another molecule. In short, **a Brønsted-Lowry acid** is a **proton donor (PD)**, while **a Brønsted-Lowry base** is a **proton acceptor (PA)**.

> *A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor, while a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.*

Let us use the reaction of ammonia in water to demonstrate the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base. Ammonia and water molecules are reactants, while the ammonium ion and the hydroxide ion are products:

$$\mathrm{NH_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)} \tag{11.2.1}$$

What has happened in this reaction is that the original water molecule has donated a hydrogen ion to the original ammonia molecule, which in turn has accepted the hydrogen ion. We can illustrate this as follows (Figure 11.2.2):

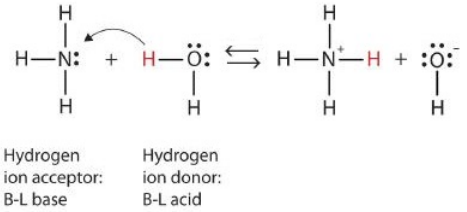


Figure 11.2.2 reaction of ammonia and water.

Because the water molecule donates a hydrogen ion to the ammonia, it is the Brønsted-Lowry acid, while the ammonia molecule—which accepts the hydrogen ion—is the Brønsted-Lowry base. Thus, ammonia acts as a base in both the Arrhenius sense and the Brønsted-Lowry sense.

Is an Arrhenius acid like hydrochloric acid still an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Yes, but it requires us to understand what really happens when HCl is dissolved in water. Recall that the hydrogen *atom* is a single proton surrounded by a single electron. To make the hydrogen *ion*, we remove the electron, leaving a bare proton. Do we *really* have bare protons floating around in aqueous solution? No, we do not. What really happens is that the H^+ ion attaches itself to H_2O to make H_3O^+, which is called the *hydronium ion*. For most purposes, H^+ and H_3O^+ represent the same species, but writing H_3O^+ instead of H^+ shows that we understand that there are no bare protons floating around in solution. Rather, these protons are actually attached to solvent molecules.

The Hydronium Ion

A proton in aqueous solution may be surrounded by more than one water molecule, leading to formulas like $H_5O_2^+$ or $H_9O_4^+$ rather than H_3O^+. It is simpler, however, to use H_3O^+ to represent the hydronium ion.

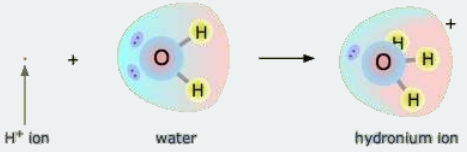


Figure 11.2.3 reaction of hydrogen and water to form hydronium. (CC BY-NC 3.0

With this in mind, how do we define HCl as an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Consider what happens when HCl is dissolved in H_2O:

$$\mathrm{HCl(g) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)} \tag{11.2.2}$$

We can depict this process using Lewis electron dot diagrams (Figure 11.2.4):

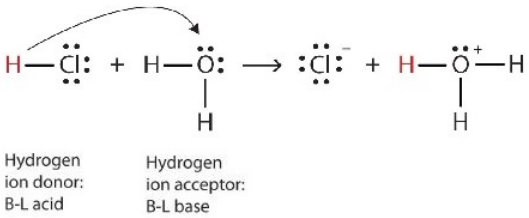


Figure 11.2.4 Lewis electron dot diagram of HCl dissolved in H_2O

Now we see that a hydrogen ion is transferred from the HCl molecule to the H_2O molecule to make chloride ions and hydronium ions. As the hydrogen ion donor, HCl acts as a Brønsted-Lowry acid; as a hydrogen ion acceptor, H_2O is a Brønsted-Lowry base. So HCl is an acid not just in the Arrhenius sense but also in the Brønsted-Lowry sense. Moreover, by the Brønsted-Lowry definitions, H_2O is a base in the formation of aqueous HCl. So the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base classify the dissolving of HCl in water as a reaction between an acid and a base—although the Arrhenius definition would not have labeled H_2O a base in this circumstance.

A summary of the acid-base definitions based on the Arrhenius and Bronstes-Lowry theories is given in Table 11.2.1.

***Table* 11.2.1** *Acid-Base Definitions*

Type	Acid	Base
Arrhenius	H^+ ions in solution	OH^- ions in solution
Brønsted-Lowry	H^+ donor	H^+ acceptor

All Arrhenius acids and bases are Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases as well. However, not all Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases are Arrhenius acids and bases.

Example 11.2.1

Aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) is slightly soluble in water. It has a nitrogen atom that can accept a hydrogen ion from a water molecule just like the nitrogen atom in ammonia does. Write the chemical equation for this reaction and identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.

Solution

$C_6H_5NH_2$ and H_2O are the reactants. When $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton from H_2O, it gains an extra H and a positive charge and leaves an OH^- ion behind. The reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_5NH_2(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5NH_3^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)}$$

Because $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton, it is the Brønsted-Lowry base. The H_2O molecule, because it donates a proton, is the Brønsted-Lowry acid.

Exercise 11.2.1

Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and the Brønsted-Lowry base in this chemical equation.

$$\mathrm{H_2PO_4^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{2-} + H_3O^+}$$

Answer

Brønsted-Lowry acid: $H_2PO_4^-$; Brønsted-Lowry base: H_2O

Exercise 11.2.2

Which of the following compounds is a Bronsted-Lowry base?

a. HCl
b. HPO_4^{2-}
c. H_3PO_4
d. NH_4^+
e. $CH_3NH_3^+$

Answer:

A Brønsted-Lowry Base is a proton acceptor, which means it will take in an H^+. This eliminates HCl, H_3PO_4, NH_4^+ and $CH_3NH_3^+$ because they are Bronsted-Lowry acids. They all give away protons. In the case of HPO_4^{2-}, consider the following equation:

$$HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow PO_4^{3-}(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$$

Here, it is clear that HPO_4^{2-} is the acid since it donates a proton to water to make H_3O^+ and PO_4^{3-}. Now consider the following equation:

$$HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_2PO_4^- + OH^-(aq)$$

In this case, HPO_4^{2-} is the base since it accepts a proton from water to form $H_2PO_4^-$ and OH^-. Thus, HPO_4^{2-} is an acid and base together, making it amphoteric.

Since HPO_4^{2-} is the only compound from the options that can act as a base, the answer is **(b) HPO_4^{2-}.**

Summary

- An Arrhenius acid is a compound that increases the H^+ ion concentration and an Arrhenius base is a compound that increases the OH^- ion concentration in aqueous solution.
- A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor; a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.
- All Arrhenius acids and bases are Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases as well. However, not all Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases are Arrhenius acids and bases.

Contributors and Attributions

- Libretext: The Basics of GOB Chemistry (Ball et al.)
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Libretext: Chemistry for Allied Health (Soult)

11.2: Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.2: Acids and Bases** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

11.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Define a strong and a weak acid and base.
- Recognize an acid or a base as strong or weak.

Strong and Weak Acids

Except for their names and formulas, so far we have treated all acids as equals, especially in a chemical reaction. However, acids can be very different in a very important way. Consider HCl(aq). When HCl is dissolved in H_2O, it completely dissociates into H^+(aq) and Cl^-(aq) ions; all the HCl molecules become ions:

$$HCl \overset{100\%}{\rightarrow} H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a **strong acid**. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a **weak acid**. $HC_2H_3O_2$ is an example of a weak acid:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \overset{\sim 5\%}{\longrightarrow} H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$$

Because this reaction does not go 100% to completion, it is more appropriate to write it as **a reversible reaction**:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$$

As it turns out, there are very few strong acids, which are given in Table 11.3.1. If an acid is not listed here, it is a weak acid. It may be 1% ionized or 99% ionized, but it is still classified as a weak acid.

> *Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a strong acid. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a weak acid.*

Table 11.3.1 Strong Acids and Bases

Acids	Bases
HCl	LiOH
HBr	NaOH
HI	KOH
HNO_3	RbOH
H_2SO_4	CsOH
$HClO_3$	$Mg(OH)_2$
$HClO_4$	$Ca(OH)_2$
	$Sr(OH)_2$
	$Ba(OH)_2$

Strong and Weak Bases

The issue is similar with bases: a **strong base** is a base that is 100% ionized in solution. If it is less than 100% ionized in solution, it is a **weak base**. There are very few strong bases (Table 11.3.1); any base not listed is a weak base. All strong bases are OH^- compounds. So a base based on some other mechanism, such as NH_3 (which does not contain OH^- ions as part of its formula), will be a weak base.

Example 11.3.1: Identifying Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. HCl
b. $Mg(OH)_2$
c. C_5H_5N

Solution

a. Because HCl is listed in Table 11.3.1, it is a strong acid.
b. Because $Mg(OH)_2$ is listed in Table 11.3.1, it is a strong base.
c. The nitrogen in C_5H_5N would act as a proton acceptor and therefore can be considered a base, but because it does not contain an OH compound, it cannot be considered a strong base; it is a weak base.

Exercise 11.3.1

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. RbOH
b. HNO_2

Answer a

strong base

Answer b

weak acid

Example 11.3.2: Characterizing Base Ionization

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of $Ca(OH)_2$ and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Solution

This is an ionic compound of Ca^{2+} ions and OH^- ions. When an ionic compound dissolves, it separates into its constituent ions:

$$Ca(OH)_2 \rightarrow Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)$$

Because $Ca(OH)_2$ is listed in Table 11.3.1, this reaction proceeds 100% to products.

Exercise 11.3.2

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of hydrazoic acid (HN_3) and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Answer a

The reaction is as follows:

$$HN_3 \rightarrow H^+(aq) + N_3^-(aq)$$

It does not proceed 100% to products because hydrazoic acid is not a strong acid.

Summary

- Strong acids and bases are 100% ionized in aqueous solution.
- Weak acids and bases are less than 100% ionized in aqueous solution.

Contributors and Attributions

- Libretext: Beginning Chemistry (Ball et al.)
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

11.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.4: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

11.4: Neutralization

Learning Objective

- Write acid-base neutralization reactions.

What happens when an acid such as HCl is mixed with a base such as NaOH:

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

When an acid and a base are combined, water and a salt are the products. Double displacement reactions of this type are called **neutralization reactions**. We can write an expanded version of this equation, with aqueous substances written in their longer form:

$$\mathrm{H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + Na^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

Removing the spectator ions we get the net ionic equation:

$$\mathrm{H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(l)}$$

When a strong acid and a strong base are combined in the proper amounts - when $[H^+]$ equals $[OH^-]$\) - a neutral solution results in which pH = 7. The acid and base have neutralized each other, and the acidic and basic properties are no longer present.

Salt solutions do not always have a pH of 7, however. Through a process known as **hydrolysis**, the ions produced when an acid and base combine may react with the water molecules to produce a solution that is slightly acidic or basic. We will not go into details here, but generally if a strong acid is mixed with a weak base there the resulting solution will be slightly acidic; if a strong base is mixed with a weak acid the solution will be slightly basic.

Neutralization



***Video* 11.4.1** *Acid-base neutralization reaction.*

Example 11.4.1: propionic acid + calcium hydroxide

Calcium propionate is used to inhibit the growth of molds in foods, tobacco, and some medicines. Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction of aqueous propionic acid ($CH_3CH_2CO_2H$) with aqueous calcium hydroxide [$Ca(OH)_2$].

Solution

Example 11.4.1: steps for problem solving the reaction of propionic acid + calcium hydroxide

Steps	Reaction
Write the unbalanced equation. This is a double displacement reaction, so the cations and anions swap to create the water and the salt.	$CH_3CH_2CO_2H(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3CH_2CO_2)_2Ca(aq) + H_2O(l)$

Steps	Reaction
Balance the equation. Because there are two OH^- ions in the formula for $Ca(OH)_2$, we need two moles of propionic acid, $CH_3CH_2CO_2H$ to provide H^+ ions.	$\underline{2}CH_3CH_2CO_2H(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3CH_2CO_2)_2Ca(aq) + \underline{2}H_2O(l)$

? Exercise 11.4.1

Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction of solid barium hydroxide with dilute acetic acid.

Answer

$$Ba(OH)_2(s) + 2\,CH_3CO_2H(aq) \rightarrow Ba(CH_3CO_2)_2(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l)$$

Applications

In analytical laboratories, chemical methods are used for determining the amounts of acids or bases in foods and household and industrial chemicals.

In , chemical neutralization methods are often applied to reduce the damage that an effluent may cause upon release to the environment.

There are many uses of neutralization reactions that are acid-alkali reactions. A very common use is antacid tablets (section 7.8).

In chemical synthesis of nanomaterials, the heat of neutralization reaction can be used to facilitate the chemical reduction of metal precursors.

Also in the digestive tract, neutralization reactions are used when food is moved from the stomach to the intestines. In order for the nutrients to be absorbed through the intestinal wall, an alkaline environment is needed, so the pancreas produce an antacid bicarbonate to cause this transformation to occur.

Another common use, though perhaps not as widely known, is in fertilizers and control of soil pH. Slaked lime (calcium hydroxide) or limestone (calcium carbonate) may be worked into soil that is too acidic for plant growth. Fertilizers that improve plant growth are made by neutralizing sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) or nitric acid (HNO_3) with ammonia gas (NH_3), making or . These are salts utilized in the fertilizer.

Industrially, a by-product of the burning of coal, gas, may combine with water vapor in the air to eventually produce sulfuric acid, which falls as acid rain. To prevent the sulfur dioxide from being released, a device known as a scrubber gleans the gas from smoke stacks. This device first blows calcium carbonate into the combustion chamber where it decomposes into calcium oxide (lime) and carbon dioxide. This lime then reacts with the sulfur dioxide produced forming calcium sulfite. A suspension of lime is then injected into the mixture to produce a slurry, which removes the and any remaining unreacted sulfur dioxide.

Fluffy Cakes

Q: How do acid-base reactions make cake fluffy?



Figure 11.4.1 Cake with buttercream frosting. Image use with permission (Public domain; Scheinwerfermann)..png

A: Usually cakes include an acidic ingredient (this varies) and sodium bicarbonate, a base. When they react, the proton from the acid is transferred to the bicarbonate, making the weak acid carbonic acid. Carbonic acid is the product of an acid anhydride reaction between carbon dioxide and water. This reaction can be reversed, or carbonic acid can decompose into water and carbon dioxide. Especially at the high temperatures inside a baking cake, this decomposition will happen, and produce carbon dioxide gas. The pressure of the hot gas will form bubbles inside the cake, making it fluffy.

Summary

- Acids and bases combine and produce salt and water.

Contributors and Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)
- Wikipedia

11.4: Neutralization is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.5: Neutralization** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

11.5: The pH Scale

Learning Objectives

- Define pH.
- Determine the pH of acidic and basic solutions.
- Determine the hydrogen (hydronium) ion concentration from pH and vice versa.

Molar concentration values of hydrogen $[H^+]$ can be markedly different from one aqueous solution to another. So chemists defined a new scale that succinctly indicates the concentrations of either of these two ions. This is known as the pH scale. The range of values from 0 to 14 that describes the acidity or basicity of a solution. You can use pH to make a quick determination whether a given aqueous solution is acidic, basic, or neutral.

pH is a *logarithmic* scale. A solution that has a pH of 1.0 has 10 times the [H^+] as a solution with a pH of 2.0, which in turn has 10 times the [H^+] as a solution with a pH of 3.0 and so forth.

Warning: The pH scale has no limits

pH is usually (but not always) between 0 and 14. Knowing the dependence of pH on $[H+]$, we can summarize as follows:

- If pH < 7, then the solution is acidic.
- If pH = 7, then the solution is neutral.
- If pH > 7, then the solution is basic.

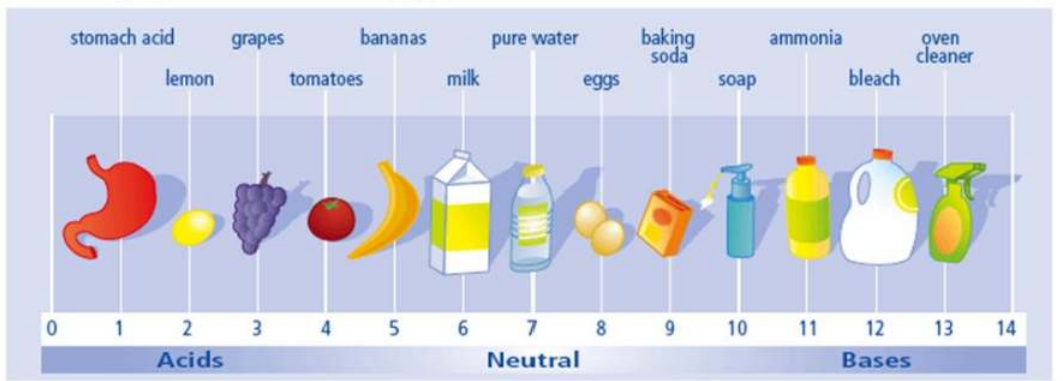


Figure 11.5.1 The pH scale.

Figure $11.5.2$ illustrates the relationship between pH and the hydrogen ion concentration, along with some examples of various solutions. Because hydrogen ion concentrations are generally less than one (for example $1.3 \times 10^{-3}\ M$), the log of the number will be a negative number. To make pH even easier to work with, pH is defined as the ***negative* log of** $[H^+]$, which will give a positive value for pH.

The general formula for determining [H^+] from pH is as follows:

$$[H^+] = 10^{-pH}$$

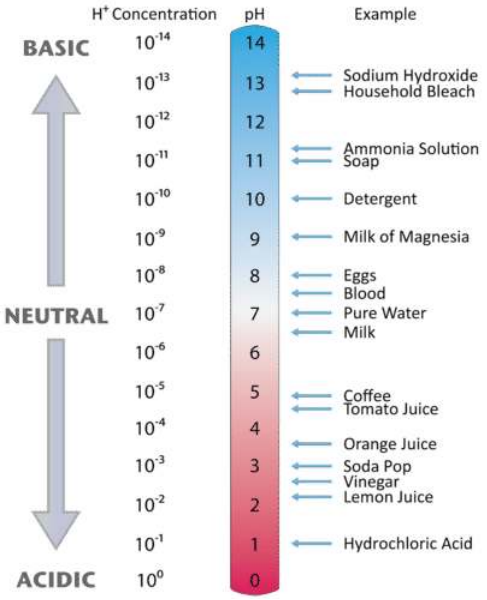


Figure 11.5.2 The pH values for several common materials with corresponding hydrogen ion concentration, [H+] .

Example 11.5.1

Label each solution as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated pH.

a. milk of magnesia, pH = 10.5
b. pure water, pH = 7
c. wine, pH = 3.0

Answer

a. With a pH greater than 7, milk of magnesia is basic. (Milk of magnesia is largely $Mg(OH)_2$.)
b. Pure water, with a pH of 7, is neutral.
c. With a pH of less than 7, wine is acidic.

Exercise 11.5.1

Identify each substance as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated pH.

a. human blood with pH = 7.4
b. household ammonia with pH = 11.0
c. cherries with pH = 3.6

Answer a

basic

Answer b

basic

Answer c

acidic

Table 11.5.1: gives the typical pH values of some common substances. Note that several food items are on the list, and most of them are acidic.

Table 11.5.1 Typical pH Values of Various Substances*

Substance	pH

*Actual values may vary depending on conditions

Substance	pH
stomach acid	1.7
lemon juice	2.2
vinegar	2.9
soda	3.0
wine	3.5
coffee, black	5.0
milk	6.9
pure water	7.0
blood	7.4
seawater	8.5
milk of magnesia	10.5
ammonia solution	12.5
1.0 M NaOH	14.0
*Actual values may vary depending on conditions	

Example 11.5.2:

What is the $[H^+]$ for an aqueous solution whose pH is 6?

Solution

The pH value of 6 denotes that the exponent of 10 is -6. Therefore the answer is

$$[H^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-6} M$$

Exercise 11.5.2

What is the $[H^+]$ for an aqueous solution whose pH is 11?

Answer

$[H^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-11}$ M

Example 11.5.3:

What is the pH of an aqueous solution whose hydrogen ion concentration is 1.0×10^{-7}M? Is the solution acidic, basic, or neutral.

Solution

The hydrogen ion concentration is 1.0×10^{-7}M. The exponent of 10 is -7, which denoted that pH= -(-7) = **7**. The solution is **neutral**.

Exercise 11.5.3

What is the pH of an aqueous solution whose hydrogen ion concentration is 1.0×10^{-3}M? Is the solution acidic, basic, or neutral.

Solution

> The hydrogen ion concentration is 1.0 x 10^{-3}M. The exponent of 10 is -3, which denoted that pH= -(-3) = **3**. The solution is **acidic**.

Summary

To make pH even easier to work with, pH is defined as the ***negative*** **log of** $[H^+]$, which will give a positive value for pH.

pH is usually (but not always) between 0 and 14.

- If pH < 7, then the solution is acidic.
- If pH = 7, then the solution is neutral.
- If pH > 7, then the solution is basic.

Contributors and Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.
-
- Template:OpenStax
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

11.5: The pH Scale is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.6: The pH Scale** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

11.6: Buffers and Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs

Learning Objectives

- Identify conjugate acid base pair.
- Define buffers and know the composition of different buffer systems.
- Describe how buffers work.

Conjugate Acid-Base Pair

In reality, all acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, OH^-, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, NH_4^+:

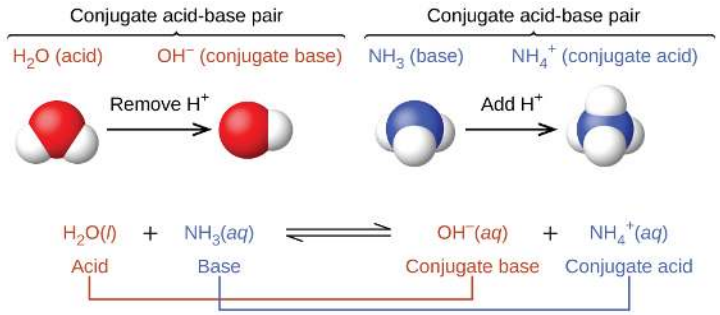
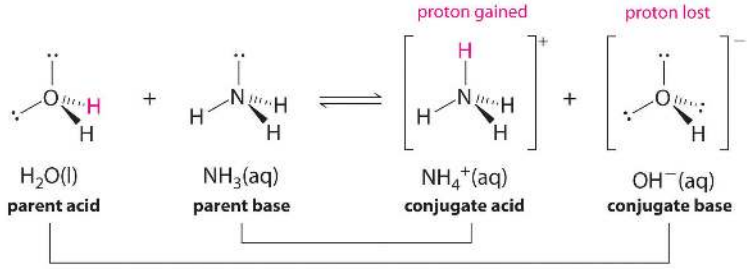


Figure 11.6.2.This figure has three parts in two rows. In the first row, two diagrams of acid-base pairs are shown. On the left, a space filling model of H subscript 2 O is shown with a red O atom at the center and two smaller white H atoms attached in a bent shape. Above this model is the label “H subscript 2 O (acid)” in purple. An arrow points right, which is labeled “Remove H superscript plus.” To the right is another space filling model with a single red O atom to which a single smaller white H atom is attached. The label in purple above this model reads, “O H superscript negative (conjugate base).” Above both of these red and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” To the right is a space filling model with a central blue N atom to which three smaller white H atoms are attached in a triangular pyramid arrangement. A label in green above reads “N H subscript 3 (base).” An arrow labeled “Add H superscript plus” points right. To the right of the arrow is another space filling model with a blue central N atom and four smaller white H atoms in a tetrahedral arrangement. The green label above reads “N H subscript 3 superscript plus (conjugate acid).” Above both of these blue and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” The second row of the figure shows the chemical reaction, H subscript 2 O (l) is shown in purple, and is labeled below in purple as “acid,” plus N H subscript 3 (a q) in green, labeled below in green as “base,” followed by a double sided arrow arrow and O H superscript negative (a q) in purple, labeled in purple as “conjugate base,” plus N H subscript 4 superscript plus (a q)” in green, which is labeled in green as “conjugate acid.” The acid on the left side of the equation is connected to the conjugate base on the right with a purple line. Similarly, the base on the left is connected to the conjugate acid on the right side.

In the reaction of ammonia with water to give ammonium ions and hydroxide ions, ammonia acts as a base by accepting a proton from a water molecule, which in this case means that water is acting as an acid. In the reverse reaction, an ammonium ion acts as an acid by donating a proton to a hydroxide ion, and the hydroxide ion acts as a base. The conjugate acid–base pairs for this reaction are NH_4^+/NH_3 and H_2O/OH^-.



.

Figure 11.6.2. The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid

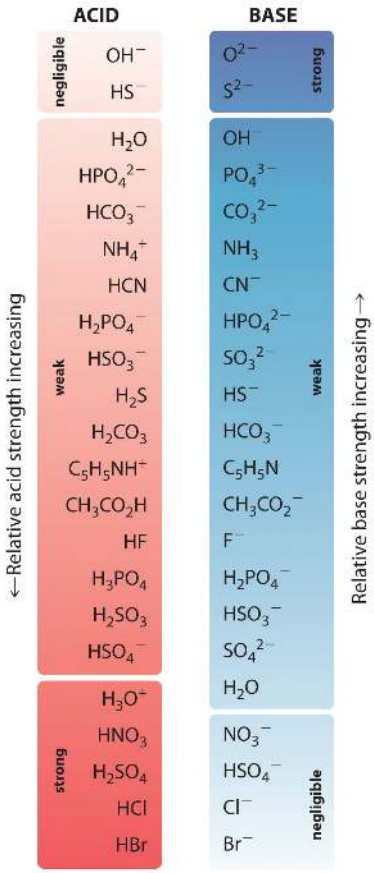


Figure 11.6.3 The Relative Strengths of Some Common Conjugate Acid–Base Pairs

The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

Example 11.6.1

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

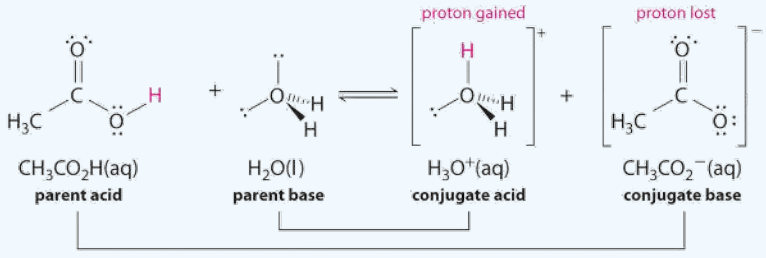
$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-}$$

Solution

Similarly, in the reaction of acetic acid with water, acetic acid **donates** a proton to water, which acts as the base. In the reverse reaction, H_3O^+ is the acid that donates a proton to the acetate ion, which acts as the base.

Once again, we have two conjugate acid–base pairs:

- the parent acid and its conjugate base ($CH_3CO_2H/CH_3CO_2^-$) and
- the parent base and its conjugate acid (H_3O^+/H_2O).



Example 11.6.1 the reaction of acetic acid with water

Example 11.6.2

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$$

Solution

One pair is H_2O and OH^-, where H_2O has one more H^+ and is the conjugate acid, while OH^- has one less H^+ and is the conjugate base.

The other pair consists of $(CH_3)_3N$ and $(CH_3)_3NH^+$, where $(CH_3)_3NH^+$ is the conjugate acid (it has an additional proton) and $(CH_3)_3N$ is the conjugate base.

Exercise 11.6.1

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$NH_2^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + OH^-$$

Answer:

H_2O (acid) and OH^- (base); NH_2^- (base) and NH_3 (acid)

Buffer Solutions

Weak acids are relatively common, even in the foods we eat. But we occasionally encounter a strong acid or base, such as stomach acid, which has a strongly acidic pH of 1.7. By definition, strong acids and bases can produce a relatively large amount of H^+ or OH^- ions and consequently have marked chemical activities. In addition, very small amounts of strong acids and bases can change the pH of a solution very quickly. If 1 mL of stomach acid [approximated as 0.1 M HCl(aq)] were added to the bloodstream and no correcting mechanism were present, the pH of the blood would decrease from about 7.4 to about 4.7—a pH that is not conducive to continued living. Fortunately, the body has a mechanism for minimizing such dramatic pH changes.

This mechanism involves a **buffer**, a solution that resists dramatic changes in pH. Buffers do so by being composed of certain pairs of solutes: either a weak acid plus a salt derived from that weak acid, or a weak base plus a salt of that weak base. For example, a buffer can be composed of dissolved $HC_2H_3O_2$ (a weak acid) and $NaC_2H_3O_2$ (the salt derived from that weak acid). Another example of a buffer is a solution containing NH_3 (a weak base) and NH_4Cl (a salt derived from that weak base).

Let us use an $HC_2H_3O_2/NaC_2H_3O_2$ buffer to demonstrate how buffers work. If a strong base—a source of OH^-(aq) ions—is added to the buffer solution, those OH^- ions will react with the $HC_2H_3O_2$ in an acid-base reaction:

$$HC_2H_3O_2(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \tag{11.6.1}$$

Rather than changing the pH dramatically by making the solution basic, the added OH^- ions react to make H_2O, so the pH does not change much.

If a strong acid—a source of H^+ ions—is added to the buffer solution, the H^+ ions will react with the anion from the salt. Because $HC_2H_3O_2$ is a weak acid, it is not ionized much. This means that if lots of H^+ ions and $C_2H_3O_2^-$ ions are present in the same solution, they will come together to make $HC_2H_3O_2$:

$$H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \rightarrow HC_2H_3O_2(aq) \tag{11.6.2}$$

Rather than changing the pH dramatically and making the solution acidic, the added H^+ ions react to make molecules of a weak acid. Figure 11.6.2illustrates both actions of a buffer.

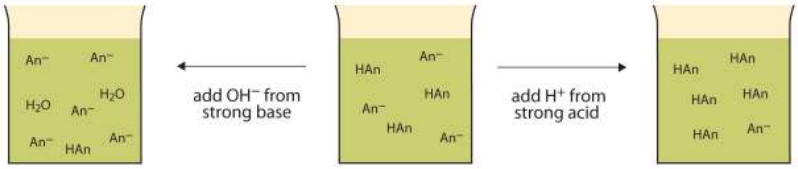


Figure 11.6.4 The actions of buffers. Buffers can react with both strong acids (top) and strong bases (side) to minimize large changes in pH.

Buffers made from weak bases and salts of weak bases act similarly. For example, in a buffer containing NH_3 and NH_4Cl, NH_3 molecules can react with any excess H^+ ions introduced by strong acids:

$$NH_3(aq) + H^+(aq) \rightarrow NH_4^+(aq)$$

while the $NH_4^+(aq)$ ion can react with any OH^- ions introduced by strong bases:

$$NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow NH_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell)$$

Some common buffer systems are listed in the table below.

Table 11.6.1 Some Common Buffers

Table 11.6.1 *Some Common Buffers*

Buffer System	Buffer Components	pH of buffer (equal molarities of both components)
Acetic acid/acetate ion	CH_3COOH/CH_3COO^-	4.74
Carbonic acid/hydrogen carbonate ion	H_2CO_3/HCO_3^-	6.38
Dihydrogen phosphate ion/hydrogen phosphate ion	$H_2PO_4^-/HPO_4^{2-}$	7.21
Ammonia/ammonium ion	NH_3/NH_4^+	9.25

Buffers work well only for limited amounts of added strong acid or base. Once either solute is completely reacted, the solution is no longer a buffer, and rapid changes in pH may occur. We say that a buffer has a certain **capacity**. Buffers that have more solute dissolved in them to start with have larger capacities, as might be expected.

Human blood has a buffering system to minimize extreme changes in pH. One buffer in blood is based on the presence of HCO_3^- and H_2CO_3 [the second compound is another way to write $CO_2(aq)$]. With this buffer present, even if some stomach acid were to find its way directly into the bloodstream, the change in the pH of blood would be minimal. Inside many of the body's cells, there is a buffering system based on phosphate ions.

Example 11.6.3:

Which combinations of compounds can make a buffer solution?

1. $HCHO_2$ and $NaCHO_2$
2. HCl and NaCl
3. CH_3NH_2 and CH_3NH_3Cl
4. NH_3 and NaOH

Solution

1. $HCHO_2$ is formic acid, a weak acid, while $NaCHO_2$ is the salt made from the anion of the weak acid (the formate ion [CHO_2^-]). The combination of these two solutes would make a buffer solution.
2. HCl is a strong acid, not a weak acid, so the combination of these two solutes would not make a buffer solution.
3. CH_3NH_2 is methylamine, which is like NH_3 with one of its H atoms substituted with a CH_3 group. Because it is not listed in Table 11.6.1, we can assume that it is a weak base. The compound CH_3NH_3Cl is a salt made from that weak base, so the combination of these two solutes would make a buffer solution.

4. NH_3 is a weak base, but NaOH is a strong base. The combination of these two solutes would not make a buffer solution.

Exercise 11.6.2

Which combinations of compounds can make a buffer solution?

1. $NaHCO_3$ and NaCl
2. H_3PO_4 and NaH_2PO_4
3. NH_3 and $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
4. NaOH and NaCl

Answer a

Yes.

Answer b

No. Need a weak acid or base and a salt of its conjugate base or acid.

Answer c

Yes.

Answer d

No. Need a weak base or acid.

Food and Drink Application: the Acid that Eases Pain

Although medicines are not exactly "food and drink," we do ingest them, so let's take a look at an acid that is probably the most common medicine: acetylsalicylic acid, also known as aspirin. Aspirin is well known as a pain reliever and antipyretic (fever reducer).

The structure of aspirin is shown in the accompanying figure. The acid part is circled; it is the H atom in that part that can be donated as aspirin acts as a Brønsted-Lowry acid. Because it is not given in Table 11.6.1, acetylsalicylic acid is a weak acid. However, it is still an acid, and given that some people consume relatively large amounts of aspirin daily, its acidic nature can cause problems in the stomach lining, despite the stomach's defenses against its own stomach acid.

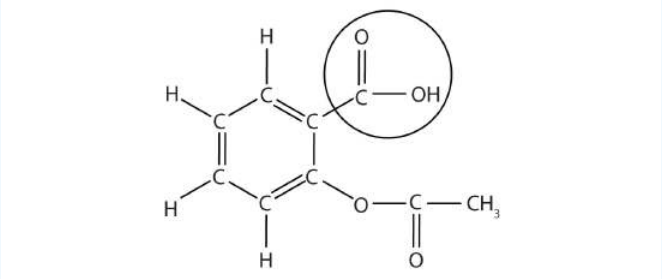


Figure 11.6.5: The Molecular Structure of Aspirin. The circled atoms are the acid part of the molecule.

Because the acid properties of aspirin may be problematic, many aspirin brands offer a "buffered aspirin" form of the medicine. In these cases, the aspirin also contains a buffering agent—usually MgO—that regulates the acidity of the aspirin to minimize its acidic side effects.

As useful and common as aspirin is, it was formally marketed as a drug starting in 1899. The US Food and Drug Administration (FDA), the governmental agency charged with overseeing and approving drugs in the United States, wasn't formed until 1906. Some have argued that if the FDA had been formed before aspirin was introduced, aspirin may never have gotten approval due to its potential for side effects—gastrointestinal bleeding, ringing in the ears, Reye's syndrome (a liver problem), and some allergic reactions. However, recently aspirin has been touted for its effects in lessening heart attacks and strokes, so it is likely that aspirin will remain on the market.

Summary

- A buffer is a solution that resists sudden changes in pH.
- Reactions showing how buffers regulate pH are described.

Contributors and Attributions

-
- TextMap: Beginning Chemistry (Ball et al.)
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)

11.6: Buffers and Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.7: Buffers and Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.
- **12.8: Buffers** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

11.7: Acids and Bases in Industry and in Daily Life

Learning Objective

- Know the many uses of common acids and bases.

Antacids: A Basic Remedy



Figure 11.7.1. Antacids are available over the counter and are taken by mouth to quickly relieve occasional heartburn, the major symptom of gastroesophageal reflux disease and also indigestion. Treatment with antacids alone is symptomatic and only justified for minor symptoms.

Antacids contain alkaline ions that chemically neutralize stomach gastric acid, reducing damage and relieving pain. For example, Tums is a very commonly used antacid that can be bought over the counter. Other antacids, such as Alka Seltzer, work in similar ways. Below, show the mechanism and products for reaction in which calcium carbonate (the active ingredient in Tums) neutralizes HCl in a simple proton transfer reaction.

$$CaCO_3\,(s) + HCl\,(aq) \rightarrow H_2CO_3\,(aq) + CaCl_2\,(aq)$$

Following this acid-base reaction, carbonic acid quickly degrades into CO_2 and H_2O.

$$H_2CO_3\,(aq) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)$$

***Figure* 11.7.1** *A comparison of a healthy condition to GERD. I*

mage used with permission (Cc BY-SA 4.0; BruceBlaus .

Under the generic name algeldrate, aluminium hydroxide is used as an antacid. Aluminium hydroxide is preferred over other alternatives such as sodium bicarbonate because $Al(OH)_3$, being insoluble, does not increase the pH of stomach above 7 and hence, does not trigger secretion of excess stomach acid. Brand names include Alu-Cap, Aludrox, Gaviscon, and Pepsamar. In 2016 Gaviscon was one of the biggest selling branded over-the-counter medications sold in Great Britain, with sales of £62 million. It reacts with excess acid in the stomach, reducing the acidity of the stomach content, which may relieve the symptoms of ulcers, heartburn or dyspepsia. Such products can cause constipation, because the aluminum ions inhibit the contractions of smooth muscle cells in the gastrointestinal tract, slowing peristalsis and lengthening the time needed for stool to pass through the colon. Some such products are formulated to minimize such effects through the inclusion of equal concentrations of magnesium hydroxide or magnesium carbonate, which have counterbalancing laxative effects.

Antacids are distinct from acid-reducing drugs like H_2-receptor antagonists or proton pump inhibitors and they do not kill the bacteria *Helicobacter pylori*, which causes most ulcers. Ranitidine (Zantac), famotidine (Pepcid AC), and cimetidine (Tagamet) are in a class of medications called H_2 blockers. It decreases the amount of acid made in the stomach and are used to treat ulcers; gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), a condition in which backward flow of acid from the stomach causes heartburn and injury of the food pipe (esophagus); and conditions where the stomach produces too much acid, such as Zollinger-Ellison syndrome. These over-the-counter medications are used to prevent and treat symptoms of heartburn associated with acid indigestion and sour stomach. Omeprazole (Prilosec) also works by decreasing the amount of acid made in the stomach and is in a class of medications called proton-pump inhibitors.

Acids and Bases in Industry and at Home

Common Acids

It should not be hard for you to name several common acids, but you might find that listing bases is just a little more difficult. Here's a partial list of some common acids, along with some chemical formulas:

Table 11.7.1 Common Acids and Their Uses

Chemist Name	Common Name	Uses
hydrochloric acid, HCl	muriatic acid (used in pools) and stomach acid	Used in cleaning (refining) metals, in maintenance of swimming pools, and for household cleaning.
sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4		Used in car batteries, and in the manufacture of fertilizers.
nitric acid, HNO_3		Used in the manufacture of fertilizers, explosives and in extraction of gold.
acetic acid, $HC_2H_3O_2$	vinegar	Main ingredient in vinegar.
carbonic acid, H_2CO_3	responsible for the "fiz" in carbonated drinks	As an ingredient in carbonated drinks.
citric acid, $C_6H_8O_7$		Used in food and dietary supplements. Also added as an acidulant in creams, gels, liquids, and lotions.
acetylsalicylic acid, $C_6H_4(OCOCH_3)CO_2H$	aspirin	The active ingredient in aspirin.

Hydrochloric Acid

Hydrochloric acid is a corrosive, strong mineral acid with many industrial uses. One of the most important applications of hydrochloric acid is in the pickling of steel, to remove rust or iron oxide scale from iron or steel before subsequent processing. Another major use of hydrochloric acid is in the production of organic compounds, such as vinyl chloride and dichloroethane for PVC. Other organic compounds produced with hydrochloric acid include bisphenol A for polycarbonate, activated carbon, and ascorbic acid, as well as numerous pharmaceutical products. Other inorganic compounds produced with hydrochloric acid include road application salt calcium chloride, nickel(II) chloride for electroplating, and zinc chloride for the galvanizing industry and battery production.

Sulfuric Acid

Sulfuric acid is a very important commodity chemical, and indeed, a nation's sulfuric acid production is a good indicator of its industrial strength. World production in the year 2004 was about 180 million tonnes, with the following geographic distribution: Asia 35%, North America (including Mexico) 24%, Africa 11%, Western Europe 10%, Eastern Europe and Russia 10%, Australia and Oceania 7%, South America 7%. Most of this amount (≈60%) is consumed for fertilizers, particularly superphosphates, ammonium phosphate and ammonium sulfates. About 20% is used in chemical industry for production of detergents, synthetic resins, dyestuffs, pharmaceuticals, petroleum catalysts, insecticides and antifreeze, as well as in various processes such as oil well acidicizing, aluminium reduction, paper sizing, water treatment. About 6% of uses are related to pigments and include paints, enamels, printing inks, coated fabrics and paper, and the rest is dispersed into a multitude of applications such as production of explosives, cellophane, acetate and viscose textiles, lubricants, non-ferrous metals, and batteries.



Figure 11.7.2: Drops of concentrated sulfuric acid rapidly decompose a piece of cotton towel by dehydration. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Toxic Walker).

Because the hydration of sulfuric acid is thermodynamically favorable (and is highly exothermic) and the affinity of it for water is sufficiently strong, sulfuric acid is an excellent dehydrating agent. Concentrated sulfuric acid has a very powerful dehydrating property, removing water (H_2O) from other compounds including sugar and other carbohydrates and producing carbon, heat, steam. Sulfuric acid behaves as a typical acid in its reaction with most metals by generating hydrogen gas (Equation ???).

Nitric Acid

Nitric acid (HNO_3) is a highly corrosive mineral acid and is also commonly used as a strong oxidizing agent. Nitric acid is normally considered to be a strong acid at ambient temperatures. The main industrial use of nitric acid is for the production of fertilizers. Nitric acid is neutralized with ammonia to give ammonium nitrate. This application consumes 75–80% of the 26 million tonnes produced annually (1987). The other main applications are for the production of explosives, nylon precursors, and specialty organic compounds.



Figure 11.7.3: Second degree burn caused by nitric acid. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Alcamán).

Table 11.7.2 *Common Bases and Its Uses*

Some Common Bases	Uses
sodium hydroxide, NaOH (lye or caustic soda)	Used in the manufacture of soaps and detergents and as the main ingredient in oven and drain cleaners.
potassium hydroxide, KOH (lye or caustic potash)	Used in the production of liquid soaps and soft soaps. Used in alkaline batteries.
magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$ (milk of magnesia)	Used as an ingredient in laxatives, antacids, and deodorants. Also used in the neutralization of acidic wastewater.
calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$ (slaked lime)	Used in the manufacture of cement and lime water. Also, added to neutralize acidic soil.
aluminum hydroxide	Used in water purification and as an ingredient in antacids.
ammonia, NH_3	Used as a building block for the synthesis of many pharmaceutical products and in many commercial cleaning products. Used in the manufacture of fertilizers.

Sodium Hydroxide

Sodium hydroxide, also known as lye and caustic soda, is an inorganic compound with formula NaOH.

It is a popular strong base used in industry. Around 56% of sodium hydroxide produced is used by industry, 25% of which is used in the paper industry. Sodium hydroxide is also used in the manufacture of sodium salts and detergents, pH regulation, and organic synthesis. It is used in the Bayer process of aluminium production. In bulk, it is most often handled as an aqueous solution, since solutions are cheaper and easier to handle.

Sodium hydroxide is used in many scenarios where it is desirable to increase the alkalinity of a mixture, or to neutralize acids.



Figure 11.7.4 Sample of sodium hydroxide as pellets in a watchglass. (Public Domain; Walkerma).

Calcium Hydroxide

Calcium hydroxide (traditionally called slaked lime) is an inorganic compound with the chemical formula $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$. It is a colorless crystal or white powder. It has many names including hydrated lime, caustic lime, builders' lime, slaked lime, cal, or pickling lime.

One significant application of calcium hydroxide is as a flocculant, in water and sewage treatment. It is also used in fresh water treatment for raising the pH of the water so that pipes will not corrode where the base water is acidic, because it is self-regulating and does not raise the pH too much.

It is also used in the preparation of ammonia gas (NH_3), using the following reaction:

$$Ca(OH)_2 + 2NH_4Cl \rightarrow 2NH_3 + CaCl_2 + 2H_2O$$

Another large application is in the paper industry, where it is an intermediate in the reaction in the production of sodium hydroxide. Because of its low toxicity and the mildness of its basic properties, slaked lime is widely used in the food industry:

Ammonia

Ammonia is a compound of nitrogen and hydrogen with the formula $\mathrm{NH_3}$ and is a colorless gas with a characteristic pungent smell. It is the active product of “smelling salts,” and can quickly revive the faint of heart and light of head. Although common in nature and in wide use, ammonia is both caustic and hazardous in its concentrated form.

Globally, approximately 88% (as of 2014) of ammonia is used as fertilizers either as its salts, solutions or anhydrously. When applied to soil, it helps provide increased yields of crops such as maize and wheat. 30% of agricultural nitrogen applied in the US is in the form of anhydrous ammonia and worldwide 110 million tonnes are applied each year. Ammonia is also a building block for the synthesis of many pharmaceutical products and is used in many commercial cleaning products.

Summary

Common acids and bases have many and various uses in industry and in daily life.

Contributors and Attributions

-
- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.
- Wikipedia
- TextMap: Chemistry-A Molecular Approach (Tro)

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)
- MedlinePlus

11.7: Acids and Bases in Industry and in Daily Life is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.8: Acids and Bases in Industry and in Daily Life** is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

Index

A

acids
11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions
anion
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
atomic mass unit
3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
atomic theory
3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

B

balanced chemical equation
7.6: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions
Balancing a Chemical Equation
6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations
bases
11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions

C

cation
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
change phase
1.9: States of Matter
chemical change
1.12: Basic Definitions
chemical properties
1.12: Basic Definitions
chemical property
1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
coefficient
7.6: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions
Coefficients and Subscripts
6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations
compound
1.12: Basic Definitions
concentrated
10.2: Definitions
concentration
10.2: Definitions
10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations
10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors
concentration units
10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors
conservation of energy
1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
conservation of mass
1.11: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter
conversion factors
10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors
crisscross method
5.4: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds

D

democritus
3.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms
3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory
density
2.9: Density
dilute
10.2: Definitions
dilution
10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations
dilution equation
10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations
dimensional analysis
2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

E

electromagnetic spectrum
4.2: The Electromagnetic Spectrum
electron
3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
electron configuration
4.4: Electron Configurations
element
1.12: Basic Definitions
endothermic process
1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change
Exceptions to the Octet Rule
8.4: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds
exothermic process
1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

H

heterogeneous mixture
1.12: Basic Definitions
homogeneous mixture
1.12: Basic Definitions

I

ions
4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
isotopes
3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

M

mass percentage
10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration
matter
1.3: What is Matter?
1.12: Basic Definitions
metal
1.12: Basic Definitions
mixtures
1.12: Basic Definitions
molality
10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration
molarity
10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration
10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations
moles of solute
10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations

N

neutron
3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
noble gas configuration
4.4: Electron Configurations
nonmetal
1.12: Basic Definitions

P

percentage composition by mass
10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration
phase
1.12: Basic Definitions
physical change
1.12: Basic Definitions
physical properties
1.12: Basic Definitions
physical property
1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties
potential energy
1.6: Energy
proton
3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

Q

qualitative
10.2: Definitions
quantitative
10.2: Definitions

R

relative abundances
3.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms
resonance
8.5: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule
rounding
2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations

S

scienfitic notation
2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers
semimetals
1.12: Basic Definitions
significant figures
2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision
2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations
solubility
10.2: Definitions
solute
10.2: Definitions
solvent
10.2: Definitions
Stability of Isotopes
3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies
state
1.12: Basic Definitions
stock solution
10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations
Stock system
5.6: Naming Ionic Compounds
substance
1.12: Basic Definitions
supersaturated
10.2: Definitions

T

temperature

1.8: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

U

unit conversions

2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

units

10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors

units of energy

1.6: Energy

unsaturated

10.2: Definitions

W

work

1.6: Energy

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Normandale Community College Chem 1020 Introductory Chemistry

Webpages: 103

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CK-12 License: 43.7% (45 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 27.2% (28 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 10.7% (11 pages)
- Undeclared: 9.7% (10 pages)
- Public Domain: 2.9% (3 pages)
- Unknown License: 1.9% (2 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 1% (1 page)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 1% (1 page)
- CC BY-SA 3.0: 1% (1 page)
- CC BY-NC 4.0: 1% (1 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)

By Page

- Normandale Community College Chem 1020 Introductory Chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: The Chemical World - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.2: The Scientific Method - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: What is Matter? - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.4: Classification of Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.6: Energy - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.8: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.9: States of Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.10: Phase Changes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.11: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.12: Basic Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 2: Measurement and Problem Solving - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.1: Taking Measurements - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.8: Units Raised to a Power - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.9: Density - *CK-12 License*
  - 3: Atoms and Elements - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.3: The Nuclear Atom - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.7: Chemical Elements and Symbols - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies - *CK-12 License*

- 3.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms - *CK-12 License*

- 4: Electrons in Atoms and the Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
  - 4.1: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation - *CK-12 License*
  - 4.2: The Electromagnetic Spectrum - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.3: Electronic Structure of Atoms - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.4: Electron Configurations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.5: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
  - 4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.7: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model - *CK-12 License*
- 5: Molecules and Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.1: Compounds Display Constant Composition - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.2: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.3: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.4: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.5: Nomenclature- Naming Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.6: Naming Ionic Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.7: Naming Molecular Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.8: Naming Acids - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.9: Nomenclature Summary - *CK-12 License*
- 6: Chemical Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 6.1: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.2: The Chemical Equation - *CK-12 License*
  - 6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 6.4: Classifying Chemical Reactions - *CK-12 License*
- 7: Chemical Composition - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.1: Prelude to Chemical Composition - How Much Sodium? - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 7.2: Counting Nails by the Pound - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 7.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.4: Counting Molecules by the Gram - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 7.5: Chemical Formulas as Conversion Factors - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.6: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 7.7: Making Molecules- Mass-to-Mass Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 7.8: Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8: Chemical Bonding - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 8.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 8.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared - *Unknown License*
  - 8.4: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds - *Unknown License*
  - 8.5: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule - *CK-12 License*
- 9: Molecular Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 9.1: Molecular shapes –Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory - *Public Domain*
  - 9.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 9.3: Polar Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 9.4: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 10: Solutions - *Public Domain*
  - 10.1: Prelude to Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.2: Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.6: Electrolytes - *Public Domain*
  - 10.7: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11: Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 11.2: Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.4: Neutralization - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.5: The pH Scale - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.6: Buffers and Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.7: Acids and Bases in Industry and in Daily Life - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Normandale Community College Chem 1020 Introductory Chemistry

Webpages: 103

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CK-12 License: 43.7% (45 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 27.2% (28 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 10.7% (11 pages)
- Undeclared: 9.7% (10 pages)
- Public Domain: 2.9% (3 pages)
- Unknown License: 1.9% (2 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 1% (1 page)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 1% (1 page)
- CC BY-SA 3.0: 1% (1 page)
- CC BY-NC 4.0: 1% (1 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)

By Page

- Normandale Community College Chem 1020 Introductory Chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: The Chemical World - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.1: Chemicals Compose Ordinary Things - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.2: The Scientific Method - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: What is Matter? - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.4: Classification of Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.6: Energy - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.7: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.8: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.9: States of Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.10: Phase Changes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.11: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.12: Basic Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 2: Measurement and Problem Solving - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.1: Taking Measurements - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.8: Units Raised to a Power - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.9: Density - *CK-12 License*
  - 3: Atoms and Elements - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.1: Cutting Aluminum until you get Atoms - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.2: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.3: The Nuclear Atom - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.4: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.7: Chemical Elements and Symbols - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies - *CK-12 License*

- 3.9: Atomic Mass - The Average Mass of an Element's Atoms - *CK-12 License*

- 4: Electrons in Atoms and the Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
  - 4.1: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation - *CK-12 License*
  - 4.2: The Electromagnetic Spectrum - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.3: Electronic Structure of Atoms - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.4: Electron Configurations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.5: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
  - 4.6: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.7: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model - *CK-12 License*
- 5: Molecules and Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.1: Compounds Display Constant Composition - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.2: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.3: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.4: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.5: Nomenclature- Naming Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.6: Naming Ionic Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.7: Naming Molecular Compounds - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.8: Naming Acids - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.9: Nomenclature Summary - *CK-12 License*
- 6: Chemical Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 6.1: Evidence of a Chemical Reaction - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6.2: The Chemical Equation - *CK-12 License*
  - 6.3: How to Write Balanced Chemical Equations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 6.4: Classifying Chemical Reactions - *CK-12 License*
- 7: Chemical Composition - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.1: Prelude to Chemical Composition - How Much Sodium? - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 7.2: Counting Nails by the Pound - *CC BY-SA 3.0*
  - 7.3: Counting Atoms by the Gram - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.4: Counting Molecules by the Gram - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 7.5: Chemical Formulas as Conversion Factors - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.6: Making Molecules- Mole-to-Mole Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 7.7: Making Molecules- Mass-to-Mass Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 7.8: Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8: Chemical Bonding - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 8.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 8.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared - *Unknown License*
  - 8.4: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds - *Unknown License*
  - 8.5: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule - *CK-12 License*
- 9: Molecular Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 9.1: Molecular shapes –Valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory - *Public Domain*
  - 9.2: Polar Covalent Bonds and Electronegativity - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 9.3: Polar Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 9.4: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 10: Solutions - *Public Domain*
  - 10.1: Prelude to Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.2: Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.3: Quantitative Units of Concentration - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.4: Dilutions and Concentrations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 10.6: Electrolytes - *Public Domain*
  - 10.7: Ions in Solution - Electrolytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 11: Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.1: Acids and Bases - Experimental Definitions - *CC BY-NC 4.0*
  - 11.2: Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.4: Neutralization - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.5: The pH Scale - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.6: Buffers and Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.7: Acids and Bases in Industry and in Daily Life - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*